



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary	عردات الرئيسية	المنا
weekend مطلة نهاية الأسبوع	aquarium معرض الأحياء المائية	مرکز ریاضی sports centre
funfair لملاهى	planetarium مبنى القبة السماوية	football stadium استاد كرة القدم
bowling alley مالة البولينج	متحف museum	wheel عجلة
exhibition معرض	مولفین dolphin	مذكرة/يومية diary

Additional Vocabulary		Ğ.	شردات الإضاف	اله ———	
photos	صور فوتوغرافية	tennis	التنس	birthday	عيد ميلاد
area	منطقة	Which places.	أى الأماكن؟ ?.		

Language	Expressions a	بيرات اللعوي	σīli)
watch >	a football match پشاهد مباراة کرة قدم		bowling يذهب للعب البولينج
have >	breakfast/ dinner يتناول الإفطار/ العشاء	go 🕨	يذهب للسباحة swimming
	a haircut على قصة شعر	meet 🕨	my best friend المفضَّل my best friend
	a maths lesson لديه حصة رياضيات	play 🕨	يلعب التنس tennis

Prepositions	ف الجر	בעני
look at the stars ينظر إلى النجوم	ride on the big wheel یرکب عجلة الملاهی	ما نوع؟ ? What kind of
at the restaurant في المطعم	listen to music يستمع إلى الموسيقي	on the other side of على الجانب الآخر من

Words and Opposites			الكلمات وعكسها				
am	صباخا	pm	مساءً	regular	منتظم	irregular	غيرمنتظم

بف الأفعال غير المنتظمة Conjugations of Irregular Verbs				
Present	1 1 mg - 1 mg - 1 mg	Past simple	Past participle	
ride	يركب	rode	ridden	
see	يرى	saw	seen	
go	يذهب	went	gone	
find out	يكتشف	found out	found out	
write	يكتب	wrote	written	
have/has	يملك/ يتناول	had	had	
meet	يقابل	met	met	
swim	يسبح/ يعوم	swam	swum	

Language Notes

but

ولكن (للتعبير عن التناقض)

• I wanted to go to the funfair, but my brother wanted to go to his favourite restaurant.

On Sunday, we went to the planetarium, but it was closed.

SO

لذلك (تعبر عن النتيجة)

I love my brother, so we went to his favourite restaurant.

Check Point

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. Adel was very ill, he went to hospital.
 - a) but

- b) so
- c) because
- d) as

- 2. Kamal is short, he plays basketball.
 - a) because
- b) although
- c) so

d) but

Write it right

How to write about your weekend كيفية الكتابة عن عطلتك الأسبوعية.

- Last weekend, I went to (المكان)
- I went with my family/(الأشخاص الذين نمبت معمم).
- We went by (وسيلة المواصلات)
- (الأفعال التي قمت بها)] -
- My father (الأفعال التي قام بها)
- We went back home (الوقت)
- We had (صفة) time.

Writing tips

Use capital letters at the beginning of sentences, names, the pronoun "I" and famous places.

استخدم الحزوف الكبيرة مع بداية الجملة وأسماء الأشخاص والضمير الأساكن الشميرة.

Example

"My last weekend"

Last weekend, I went to the funfair. I went with my family. We went there by car. My father bought us tickets. There were a lot of interesting games. I rode on the big wheel. I felt afraid, but it was fun. My brother went on a ride. He was really happy. My little sister swam in a small plastic swimming pool. My father and mother went for a walk. We all had a wonderful time. We decided to go there again very soon. We went back home late at night. It was fun.

Now,	your	turn:
------	------	-------

حان دورك الآن:

"A place you visited at the weekend"	_
I visitedlast weekend	red.
	es.
	41
440-927777	

Reading ___

pre-reading question:

. Where did you go last weekend?

1. Read the answers to Ziad's questions and answer these questions:

SB page 2



What did you do last weekend (1)?

I watched a football match.



- العطلة الأسبوعية (1)
- (2) Size
- معرض (3)
- الدلافين (4)
- البولينج (5)



I rode on the big wheel (2).

I saw an exhibition (3) about dolphins (4).





Hooked at the stars.

I went bowling (5).





I played tennis.

Post-reading question:

- Where did Ziad's friends go last weekend?



Listening

Pre-listening question:

- When did they go to the restaurant?

2. Listen to Dina talk about her birthday. Tick (✓) the correct diary:

SB page 3



- المتحف (1)
- تماثيل (2)
- الملاهي (3)
- Dina: It was my birthday last Saturday, so I went to the museum⁽¹⁾ with my mum and sister, and we saw some old statues⁽²⁾.

 We learned a lot.
- مبنى القبة السماوية (4)
- معرض الأحياء المائية (5)





In the evening, I wanted to go to the funfair⁽³⁾, but my brother wanted to go to his favourite restaurant. I love my brother, so we went to the restaurant. We went there four months ago for his birthday, too! And two days ago, on Sunday, we went to the planetarium⁽⁴⁾, but it was closed.



So, we took a bus to the aquarium (5) on the other side of town. It was fantastic, I saw a shark!

Post-listening question:

-Where did Dina's brother want to go?

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the corre	ct answer from a, b,	, c or d:	
1. Let's go on the big	wheel at the	this weekend!	WB
a) alley	b) stadium	c) funfair	d) aquarium
2. I loved the fish, bu	ıt I didn't see any wh	ales at the	WB
a) funfair	b) museum	c) aquarium	d) planetarium
3. It was great at the		won 2-0!	WB
a) football stadiur	m b) bowling	c) planetarium	d) funfair
4. My brother likes t	o bowling	at the weekend.	
a) go	b) ride	c) take	d) meet
5. He usually	a haircut twice a	month.	
a) takes	b) has	c) looks	d) goes
6. I write what happ	oens every day in my	AARDEÚSERGOURDOSEURSEN O	
a) story	b) dairy	c) diary	d) book
7. My class went to	the and loo	oked at the stars.	
a) stadium	b) planetarium	c) museum	d) aquarium
8.1 my be	est friend three days a	ago.	
a) kept	b) had	c) met	d) took
9. Last week, I saw	a/anabout	dolphins.	Maria de la constante de la co
a) museum	b) funfair	c) stadium	d) exhibition
10. We decided to p	lay basketball at the	sports	₩B
a) match	b) wheel	c) funfair	d) centre
11. I went for	last weekend.		-
a) swimming	b) swim	c) a swimming	d) a swim
12. I my m	aths lessons yesterda	ny.	
a) went	b) had	c) met	d) rode







زمن الماضى البسيط Past simple tense

 We use the past simple tense to talk about actions that started and ended in the past.

Usage الاستخدام Form التگوین

نستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن حدث تم في الماضي وانتهي.

التصريف الثاني للفعل + Subject

- She visited her uncle yesterday.
- I went to the museum last night.

Subject + didn't + inf. Subject + wasn't/weren't + صفة/اسم

Negative

- I didn't listen to music last night.
- النفى

- My father wasn't at home yesterday.

Read and correct the underlined words:

- Zeyad doesn't meet his friend yesterday.

1. Yes/No questions:

Did + subject + inf.?

Was/Were + subject + صفة/اسم ?

Question السؤال

- Did you watch TV last night?
 - Yes, I did. No, I didn't.
- Were you at the sports centre yesterday?
 - Yes, I was. No, I wasn't.

2. Wh-questions:

Q. word (اداة استفهام) + did + subject + inf.?

Q. word (أداة استفهام) + was/were + subject +?

When did Dina's family go to the restaurant?
 Dina's family went to the restaurant last Friday.

When was Ramy's birthday?
 Ramy's birthday was in October.

Read and correct the underlined words:

- What did you doing last weekend?

			٩
 	 	 	J

2. Past time expressions

تعبيرات الوقت الماضى

We use past time expressions to say when something happened:

نستخدم تعبيرات الوقت الماضي لنقول متى حدث شيء ما:

Time Expressions for the Past Tense

last (الماضى)	ago (aic)	yesterday (امس)	i n (فی)
last night	10 minutes ago	yesterday	in 2008
last week	an hour ago	yesterday morning	in 2010
last weekend	3 days ago	yesterday afternoon	in 2018
last month	a week ago	yesterday evening	in October
last year	a month ago	yesterday night	in April
last Monday	a year ago		

Examples:

- I went to the museum last week.
- I went bowling three days ago.

- I went to Aswan in 2017.

- I had a haircut yesterday.

🖊 استخدام (this morning) مع زمن الماضي.



- I had breakfast this morning.



Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 year, I	spent my holiday in	Paris.	
a) In	b) Ago	c) Last	d) Yesterday
2. I have	my dinner last night		
a) didn't	b) wasn't	c) don't	d) am not
3. What	you do last weekend	?	WB
a) do	b) does	c) did	d) were
4. I used my comp	uter morni	ng.	
a) next	b) ago	c) yesterday	d) tomorrow
5. Hebu	s to the city last weel	k.	
a) took	b) takes	c) is taking	d) take
6. I went to Englan	nd on holiday three y	ears	. 7
a) ago	b) last	c) next	d) for
7. The weather	fine this morn	ing. It's hot now.	
a) was	b) did	c) is	d) does
8. I met my wife	1983.		
a) at	b) ago	c) last	d) in
9. When I was a bo	y, I to scho	ol every day.	
a) am walking	b) walking	c) walk	d) walked
10 you at	the museum last nig	ht?	Q
a) Are	b) Do	c) Did	d) Were
Read and corre	ct the underlined w	ords:	
1. I don't see Habib	()		
2. We didn't get ho	()		
3. Where were you	()		
4. They didn't playe	()		
5. My last English le	esson was <u>ago an hou</u>	ur.	() WB
6. Who did write th	is email?		()
			The second secon



Ask and answer questions about past events

السؤال والإجابة عن أحداث في الماضى

Situation

ما يقال في هذا الموقف

Response

جملة الرد



- When did you have breakfast? متى تناولت الإفطار؟

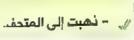
*I had my breakfast this morning.

- تناولته هذا الصباح.



-Where did you go last weekend? أين نمبت العطلة الأسبوعية الماضية؟

*I went to the museum.







- When did you meet your best friend? متى قابلت أفضل صديق لك؟

*I met my best friend 2 hours ago.

- قابلته منذ ساعتين.





- When was Dina's birthday? متى كان عيد ميلاد دىنا؟

*It was in October.

🔊 اُس - کان مٰی شمر اُکتوبر،







(A) Complete the following dialogue:

Salwa: Hi, Doaa. How was your weekend?

Doaa : It (1)...... great!

Salwa: What (2)......you do last weekend?

Doaa : I went to the funfair with my cousin. We had a great time.

Salwa: (3)...... did you go there?

Doaa: At about 8 am.

Salwa: Fantastic! (4)..... the weather OK?

Doaa : Yes, it was fine.

Salwa: So, what was the best thing about the trip?

Doaa : Well, I (5)...... on the big wheel.

(E) Complete the following dialogue:

Aya : Hello my friends, what did you all do last weekend?

Donia : I went bowling in the (1)......centre.

Asmaa : I (2) tennis.

big wheel.

Samy : I watched a (4)..... at the stadium.

Kareem: I went to the planetarium and looked at the (5)......

Aya: What about you, Salma?

Salma : I stayed home.

Aya : Oh no. Why?

Salma : My mother was ill.



SB pages 4 & 5, WB page 71

Vocabulary

Key-Vocabu	lary	Control of the second	فردا تهالرئي	الم	
nervous	عصبی/متوتر	move (d) to	ينتقل إلى	school ur	niform زی مدرسی موحد
school cante مدرسة	en مقصف (كانتين) الد	swimming pool	حمام سباحة	dark	ظلام/مظلم

-Additional V	ocabulary	TEN.	क्षित्रों हिन् <mark>योक्त</mark>		
Alexandria	الإسكندرية	hope (d)	يامل	friendly	وبود
together	معًا	page	صفحة	great	عظيم
fantastic	رائع	really	حقًا	enjoy (ed)	يستمتع ب
history	التاريخ	most (of)	معظم	aged	بالغ من العمر

ALanguag	e Expressions	वादिक	il allizid	
go	▶ shopping	يدهب للتسوق	homework	يؤدى الواجب المدرسي
play/ wate	یاضیة sports یاضیة	do يلعب ايشاهد ألعابًا ر	things	يضعل أشياء
make	▶ a decision	يتخذ قرازا	activities	يؤدى أنشطة



Prepositions	ada sa San a sa s	and a property of the second o	ف الجر	200	
next to	بجوار	decide to + inf.	يقرر أن	help with	يساعد في
move to	ينتقل إلي	frightened of	خائف من	on a birthday	في عيد ميلاد
drive from to	 يقود من إل	at the end of	فى نماية	in the morning	في الصباح

Words and Opposit	es	الكلمات وعكسم	
start school ببدأ الدراسة	finish school ینهی الدراسة	before مبل	after 381
the same نفس الشيء	different مختلف	hungry جوعان	full نامعان

تصریف الأفعال غیر المنتظمة dobiind عیر المنتظمة Conjugations of Irregular Verbs						
	Present	Past simple	Rast participle			
mean	يعنى	meant	meant			
feel	يشعر	feit	felt			
take	يأخذ/يستغرق	took	taken			
drive	يقود/يسوق	drove	driven			
buy	یشتری	bought	bought			
know	يعرف	knew	known			
sit	يجلس	sat	sat			

Language Notes

take + (وقت) + to + inf.

يستفرق

• It took three hours to drive from our old house in Cairo to the new one.

شخص + for + شیء + buy

يشتري ... ل

Mum and I went shopping to buy a new school uniform for me.

called

الذي پسمې/ پدعې

I sat next to a boy called Sami.

feel + adi.

Adam felt nervous before he started his new school.

Who with?

مع من؟

- Who did you go shopping with?
 - I went shopping with my dad.

Check Point



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. I went to the supermarket to buy some groceries my mother.
 - a) on

b) in

c) for

d) at

- 2. My best friend, Ali, is very kind.
 - a) call
- b) called
- c) to call
- d) calls
- 3. The homework was very difficult, so Inervous.
 - a) felt
- b) failed c) filled

d) fell



Reading

Pre-reading question:

White Sea Achieva in the Riouge ?

1. Read Adam's diary. What do you think the word nervous means and why does Adam feel this?

SB page 4

Sunday 8th May

Yesterday, our family moved to (1) our new house in Alexandria. It took three hours to drive from our old house in Cairo.

ينتقل إلى (1)

- زي مدرسي (2)
- (3) ودود
- عصبی/متوتر (4)
- يقصف المدرسة (5)
- رائع (6)
- حمام سبلحة (7)

Monday 9th May

This morning, Mum and I went shopping to buy a new school uniform (2) for me. I hope students are friendly (3) in my new school!



Tuesday 10th May

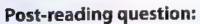
Today, I went to my new school. I was quite nervous (4), but I sat next to a boy called Sami and he was friendly. We had lunch together in the school canteen (5).



3. Read another page from Adam's diary. What is great?

Monday 16th May

What a fantastic (6) weekend! I went to Sami's house on Saturday and we played football in the park. I don't usually like football, but all his brothers wanted to play. It was a lot of fun! On Sunday, Mum helped me with my homework. Then, Dad and I went to the sports centre. It is great, there is a really big swimming pool (7),



- When did they go to the sports centre?

Language

1. Complete Nahla's diary with the correct past tense form of the verbs in brackets.

WB page 71

I had a fantastic weekend! It was my friend Dalia's birthday and her family took us to some exciting places. In the morning, we went to the funfair. I didn't go on the big wheel, but I enjoyed my time there. In the afternoon, we visited a museum. We saw some very old statues. I remembered all the things that our teacher taught us in history! In the evening, I ate at Dalia's house and I came home very late!

Life Skills

- 1. Do all the people in your family always want to do the same things? } - هل كل الأشخاص بعائلتك يريدون فعل نفس الأشياء
- 2. What do you do when people want to do different things? ماذا تفعل عندما يريد أشخاص فعل أشياء مختلفة؟
 - a. Say you only want to do what you want to do.
 - b. Decide to do what most of you want to do.
 - c. Work with your group to add a third option.
- 3. Read about Sara's family. Where should they go and what activities should they do in the morning and the afternoon on Sara's birthday? Work in pairs and make a decision.
 - Mum likes playing sports, but she does not like watching sports.
 - Nadia, aged five, is frightened of the dark. She cannot swim. She loves animals.
 - Dad likes science. He likes to eat out.
 - Sara likes history and she likes playing games.



- They should go to the swimming pool.
 - * No, they can't go there because Nadia can't swim.







Vocabulary Exercises

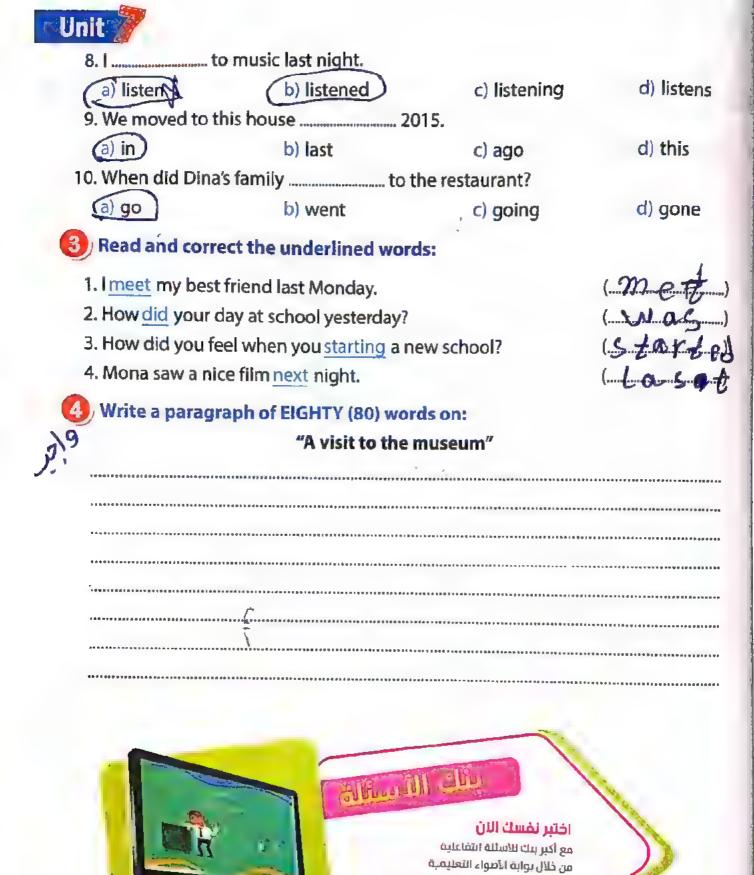
Choose the cor	rect answer from a, b,	c or a:	
1. My brother like	s swimming, so he goe	s to the swimming	twice
a week.			
a) hall	b) pool	c) gym	d) aquarium
2. My father's frien	d bought a new house. H	le to it t	wo months ago.
a) moved	b) rode	c) stayed	d) swam
3. I can't see anyth	ning because it's very	prophahan prophen north and	
a) cold	b) light	c) dark	d) hot
4. At school, child	ren like to buy many thir	ngs from the school	álag a deiná áide a 13 34 donéal i Posouvô d
a) canteen	b) library	c) lab	d) hall
5. Students should	d wear their	when they go to sc	hool.
	b) playground		d) uniform
6. We can't talk to	our father when he is ve	ETY	
a) nervous	b) good	c) dark	d) happy
7. Most children a	re of dogs	5.	
a) brave	b) bad	c) frightened	d) good
8. My father has a	car. He always	me to school.	
a) rides	b) drives	c) goes	d) gives
9. We	our last weekend whe	en we went to the funf	air.
a) saw	b) bought	c) enjoyed	d) looked
10. I had a	weekend. It was a	lot of fun.	
a) terrible	b) bad	c) fantastic	d) boring
11. My new friend is v	ery He help	s me not to feel nervous	in my new school.
a) friendly	b) unfriendly	c) busy	d) lazy
12. I took two hours	my Englis	sh homework.	
a) do	b) to do	c) does	d) to doing
13. My sister, Habiba	, always helps my mothe	rthe ho	ousework. 🏩
a) at	b) by	c) of	d) with

Lessons

a) circle

General Exercises

Complete the following dialogue: Basma : Hello, Habiba! How are you? Basma : I am fine, too. I decided to visit the (2) 2 7 1 1 7 1 70 LL C p. m Habiba: Oh, last autumn I visited it with my family. Basma: Nice! But why (3).......you visit the museum? Habiba: Because I like historical places. Habiba: | saw many statues. Basma : Did you enjoy your visit? Habiba: Yes. It (5)......a fantastic visit. Have a nice time! Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1. Yesterday was fantastic. |a football match for Mohammed Salah. d) climbed (a) watched b) went c) visited 2. We can see lots of statues in the d) funfair b) aguarium (c) museum a) stadium 3. |a maths lesson yesterday. c) made d) had b) was a) went 4. Itten minutes to walk to school. d) has c) spends (b) takes) 5. Today, I went to my new school. I was quite I didn't know anyone there. d) bad (c) nervous b) happy a) good 6. Most children are of the dark. (b) frightened d) sad c) happy a) scary 7. We went to the sports to play sports. (d) centre c) music b) middle



ادخل على: www.aladwaa.com



SB pages 6, 7 & 8, WB pages 72 & 73

Vocabulary

Key Vocabula	Ty - Comment	The second section of the sect	والحراب الرائيسي	mile-	
interview	حوار/ مقابلة	sailor	بخار	işland	جزيرة
adventure story	قصة مغامرة /	nearby	مجاور/ قريب	trumpet	بوق
storm	عاصفة	dead	ميت	band	فرقة موسيقية
musician	موسيقار/ عازف	prefer (red)	يفضل		
stressed	مضغوط	terrible	رهيب/ فظيع		
	Types of music		وسيقى	أنواغ الم	
jazz	موسيقي الجاز	opera	الأويرا	classical	كلاسيكي
рор	موسيقى البوب	rock	موسيقى الروك	traditional	تقليدى

المغردات الطافية Additional Vocabulary معردات الطافية							
type/ kind	نوع	notebook	كراسة <i>ا د</i> فتر	person	شخص		
discuss (ed)	يناقش	diary entry	سجل اليوميات	arrive (d)	يصل		
one day	ذات يوم	alone	بمفرده	coconut	جوزة الهند		
delicious	لنيذ	rain (ed)	تمطر	cave	كمف		
warm	داقئ	rocks	صخور	What date?	ما تاريخ؟		



Language Expressions	and the second s	التعتيرات النغوية	
play ▶ the piano	يعزف البيانو	you all	أنتم جميعًا
hav opinions about	لدية آراء عن	make ▶ sure	عاكد

Prepositions	Andrew Williams	and the second section of the second section (sec	هروت البعر		
talk about	يتكلم عن	write down	يدون	مانوع؟ 1 What type of?	
in each + اسم مفرد	في كل	share with	يشارك مع	without بيون	
on the island	على الجزيرة	happen to	يحدث ل	walk along يمشى بامتداد	
on the beach	على الشاطئ	look for	يبحث عن	through a jungle خلال الأدغال	

Words and Opposites គ្រោះស្រីទន្ល ខ្លាំងង៉ង់រ							
rise	يرتفع	fall	لحبط	remember	يتذكر	forget	ينسى
cold	بأرد	hot	ا ب حار	wet	مبلل	dry	جاف

Cor	njugations of Irregula	r Verbs	تضريف الأفعال عير المنتظمة
	Present	Past simple	/ Past participle
learn	متعلم	learned/learnt	learned/learnt
forget	اینسی	forgot	forgotten
sink	ينوص	sank	sunk
find	عجرا	found	found

Language Notes

like best

یحب اگثر شیء

Marvin likes jazz music best.

learn + to + inf.

يتعلم أن

He learned to play the piano when he was young.

Check Point

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
- 1. You should learn close the door softly.
 - a) at

- b) on
- c) in
- d) to

- 2. My brother likes computer games
 - a) better
- b) best
- c) good
- d) worse





Listening ___

Pre-listening question:

What type of music do you like?

1. Listen to an interview with the musician Marvin Allstar.
Which four types of music do they talk about?

SB page 6



Interviewer: Marvin Allstar is a famous musician(1). He writes

songs and plays(2) in a band(3). Hello, Marvin,

what type (4) of music do you like?

Marvin : Hello. Well, I like jazz (5) music best. I play

the trumpet (6) in a jazz band.

Interviewer: The trumpet? When did you learn to play

the trumpet?

Marvin : Oh, when I was about 12. I learned the piano

first when I was four, and I moved on to the

trumpet at 12. I like the sound of the trumpet.

Interviewer: Amazing! Do you like pop(7) music?

Marvin : No, I don't, and I don't like rock(8) music. But I quite like

traditional (9) music.

Post-listening question:

- When did Marvin learn to play the trumpet?

يعزف (2)

فرقة موسيقية (3)

توع (4)

موسيقي الجاز (5)

بوق (6)

موسيقي البوب (7)

موسيقي الروك (8)

موسيقي تقليدية (9)

SB page 8



Reading

Pre-reading question Who is the writer of Robinson Crysoe

1. Read about Robinson Crusoe. What did Crusoe want to find?

Robinson Crusoe is an adventure story (1) by Daniel Defoe. Robinson Crusoe was a sailor (2). One day his ship sank because there was a really terrible storm (3). Crusoe swam to a nearby island (4), but there

were no other people there. Crusoe wrote a diary (5) of what happened to him on the island.

قصة مغامرة (1)

- بخار (2)
- عاصفة رهيبة (3)
- جزيرة قريبة (4)
- سط/مفكرة (5)
- بمفرده (6)
- جوزة الهند (7)
- لتيذ (8)
- كمف (9)
- دفئ (10)
- غابة (١١)
- صفور (12)

18th December

l arrived on the island four days ago. Today, I walked along the beach again, but I saw nobody and I think I am alone (6). This afternoon I found a dead fish and ate it, but it was not nice. Although I am hungry, I don't want to eat another dead fish!



19th December

I found a coconut⁽⁷⁾ on the beach today. It was delicious ⁽⁸⁾. It rained last night and I was cold and wet, so today I went to look for a cave⁽⁹⁾. I want a warm⁽¹⁰⁾ place to sleep. I walked through a jungle ¹¹⁾ and there were some rocks⁽¹²⁾, but no caves.



20th December

I found a cave!!

Post-reading question:

- Do you think that Robinson Crusoe was happy on the island? Why? Why not?



Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the co	rrect answer from a, b	, c or d:	
1. He is a great		ano well.	
a) waiter	b) musician	c) sailor	d) worker
2. My uncle plays	the piano in a famous	nanvousioùinebesetet d	
a) bend	b) band	c) pond	d) pound
3. My father likes	to listen tom	usic. He likes old songs	
a) traditional	b) pop	c) jazz	d) rock
4. He likes workir	ng on ships. He wants to	be a	
a) waiter	b) seller	c) customer	d) sailor
5. My mother alw	ays advises me to buy t	hings fromsh	nops.
a) nearing	b) nearby	c) nearest	d) nearly
6. Most young pe	ople read stor	ies. They are exciting.	
a) culture	b) sad	c) bad	d) adventure
7. Crusoe's ship sa	ank because of a terrible	t viceupposovictoppristin ii	
a) island	b) storm	c) jungle	d) heat
8. The police foun	d a man by th	e sea. They didn't knov	v who he was.
a) did	b) died	c) dead	d) die
9. Crusoe's ship	and he swam to	a nearby island.	
a) thank	b) sank	c) fell	d) dropped
10. It rained last nig	tht and I was cold and	occorded in the second occupant of the second occupant oc	
a) wait	b) wet	c) dry	d) hot
11. Robinson Crusoe	is a story Dan	iel Defoe.	
a) with	b) by	c) for	d) of
2. I enjoy walking .	the beach.		
a) with	b) long	c) a long	d) along

How was your weekend?



Ask and answer about favourite music

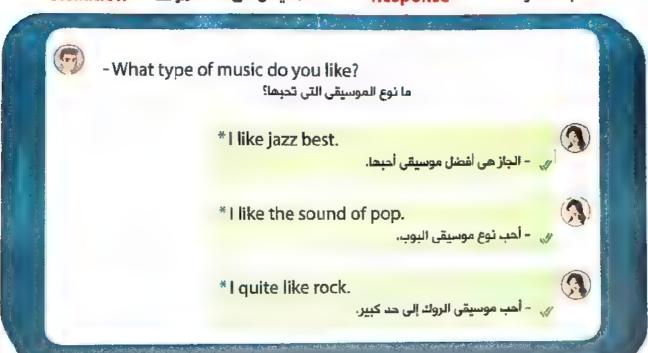
السؤال والإجابة عن الموسيقى المفضلة

Situation

ما يقال في هذا الموقف

Response

جملة الرد



Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed: Hello, Ahmed. What did you do yesterday?

Sami : I listened to (1).....

Ahmed : Really! Do you (2) _____ music?

Sami : Yes, of course.

Ahmed: What (3)..... of music do you like?

Ahmed:1(5)......like jazz.

Sami : Jazz is not my favourite.

Ahmed: Who's your favourite musician?

Sami : Marvin Allstar.





Questions

How to form a question:

كيفية تكوين السؤال:

Types of questions

أتواغ الأستلة

أولاً: السؤال بمعنى هل (Yes/No question): (هو عبارة عن سؤال يبدأ بفعل مساعد أو فعل ناقص)

Yes/No questions

الأفعال المساعدق Helping verbs

الأفمال الناقطة Modal verbs

Am / Is / Are / Was / Were /

Do / Does / Did /

Have / Has / Had

Can / Could / Will / Would /

Shall / Should / Must /

May / Might

We form (Yes/No) questions by:

نكوِّن السؤال بمعنى (هل) عن طريق:

1. Moving the helping verb to the beginning of the sentence:

١. تقديم الفعل المساعد على الفاعل:

"Verb" to be"

الجملة Sentence		السۋال Question	Answer الإجابة
Ali is watching TV.	•	Is Ali watching TV?	Yes, he is. / No, he isn't.
I'm okay.		Are you okay?	Yes, I am. / No, I'm not.
They are teachers.		Are they teachers?	Yes, they are. / No, they aren't.

(Am / Is / Are) يتبعها الفاعل ثم اسم أو صفة أو فعل مضاف إليه (ing).



	_	-		_	
	B	Section 4			- 69
21	A 1 7 18	POLIC	200	-	200
UP A TOP OF	اللا المستعد		E. P. 301	110	

الجملة Sentence	السؤال Question	الإجابة Answer
I have got a phone.	► Have you got a phone?	Yes, I have. / No, I haven't.
He has got a jacket.	► Has he got a jacket?	Yes, he has. / No, he hasn't.

(Have / Has) يتبعها الفاعل ثم التصريف الثالث للفعل (P.P.).



How was your weekend?

2. Moving the modal verb to the beginning of the sentence:

٢. تقديم الفعل الناقص على الفاعل:

الجملة Sentence	السؤال Question	الإجابة Answer
They will arrive tomorrow.	▶ Will they arrive tomorrow?	Yes, they will. No, they won't.
She would like juice.	Would she like juice?	Yes, she would. No, she wouldn't.
Ican swim.	Can you swim?	Yes, I can. No, I can't.
Sami should study hard.	► Should Samistudy hard?	Yes, he should. No, he shouldn't.

3. The **present simple** and the **past simple** have **no** helping verb. We form questions by adding the helping verbs Do/Does for the present simple and Did for the past simple:

٣. الجمل في زمن المضارع أو الماضي البسـيط، لا تحتوي على فعل مسـاعد، لذلك نسـتخدم (Do/Does) مع المضارع البسيط، ونستخدم (Did) مع الماضي البسيط،

4. Verb "to do" الجملة Sentence		السؤال Question	الإجابة Answer
They live in Cairo.		Do they live in Cairo?	Yes, they do. / No, they don't.
Ahmed likes English.	•	Does Ahmed like English?	Yes, he does. / No, he doesn't.
Aya made a cake.	•	Did Aya make a cake?	Yes, she did. / No, she didn't.

(Do / Does / Did) يتبعها الفاعل ثم مصدر الفعل،



The voice usually rises at the end of the question.

يرتفع الصوت عادة في نهاية السؤال بـ (هل).





- يتكون السؤال بأداة استفهام كالتالي:



- لدرس أدوات الاستفهام التالية:

Question	word	Usage	Question	word	Usage
What	ما/ ماڈا	للسؤال عن غير العاقل	How	کیٹ	للسؤال عن الوسيلة والطريقة أو الشعور
What time	ما الوقت	ً للسؤال عن الوقت	How many	کم عدد	للسؤال عن العدد
Which	أى/ أيهما	للتخيير	How much	كم كمية	لنسؤال عن الكمية
When	متی	للسؤال عن الزمن	How long	كم مدة	للسؤال عن المدة
Where	این	للسؤال عن المكان	How often	كم مرة	للسؤال عن عدد المراث
Why	لماذا	للسؤال عن السبب	Who	من	للسؤال عن العلقل

- هناك جمل يكون بها فعل مساعد أو ناقص فيتم تكوين السؤال كالتابي:

Sentence	Question
Mona was at the cinema yesterday.	-When was Mona at the cinema?
1'd like to have fish.	-What would you like to have?
They were playing football at the club.	-Where were they playing football?

How was your weekend?

إذا كانت الجملة ليس بها فعل مساعد نشتق (do / does) إذا كانت الجملة في زمن المضارع البسيط:

- Ola goes to school on foot.
- How does Ola go to school?
- Lalways play tennis on Mondays.
- How often do you play tennis?

أما إذا كانت الجملة في زمن الماضي البسيط نستخدم (did):

- Salma bought a new laptop last week.
- When did Salma buy a new laptop?
- My family went to Alexandria last summer.
- Where did your family go last summer?

لاحظ التحويلات الآتية:

Note	Question	Answer	
you (فاعل → I / We	- How do you go to school? - How do you go to school, boys?	I go to school by bus.We go to school by bus.	
you (مفعول) → me / us	What did Mr Ali give you,Bido?What did Mr Ali give you,girls?	He gave me a prize.He gave us presents.	
your → My / Our	- What's your name? - What's your father's job, children?	- My name's Basmala.- Our father is a teacher.	
are you → I am / We are	- Where are you going? - Where are you going, boys?	- I am going to school.- We are going to school.	
were you -> I was / We were	- What were you doing, Ali? - What were you doing, boys?	- I was studying. - We were playing.	



Language Exercises

Choose the control of the control	ne correct answer from a, b, c of	, ci.	
1. A:	do you like fruit? B: I like fruit b	ecause it's good fo	orme. WB
a) Who	b) Why	c) What	d) Where
	you play tennis? B: I play	it on Fridays.	
a) are	b) did	c) do	d) were
	often does he play tennis? B: H	le plays tennis twic	e a week.
a) What	b) Which	c) When	d) How
4. A:	you like jazz? B: No, I don't like	jazz, but I like pop.	WB
a) Are	b) Do	c) Did	d) Have
5. A:	your English teacher? B: Mr Wa	lid is my English te	acher.
a) Who's	b) Who	c) How	d) How is
6. A:	you ride a bike? B: No, but I car	n fly a kite.	
a) Were	b) Are	c) Have	d) Can
7	do you come to school? B: I come	to school by bus.	WB
a) When	b) Why	c) How	d) Who
8. A:	sits next to you? B: Nader sits n	ext to me.	
a) Who	b) Who is	c) Who does	d) Who has
Read and	f correct the underlined words:		
1. A: What ti	me is it? B: It <u>was</u> quarter past ten	. () SB
2. A: When o	did you go to the sports centre? B:	: I go there four day	/s ago.
		(
3. A: Have yo	ou got a new jacket? B: No, I <u>don't</u>	. (
4. A: Can she	e swim? B: Yes, <u>we</u> can.	()
_	George feel? B: He's okay.	(·····)
	notel near the beach?	()
7. Why <u>you բ</u>	ohoned me?	()

Lessons 3 & 4

General Exercises

1 Listen and choose	the correct answer	from a, b, c or d: وعاب)	(نص الاستماع في نهاية الــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــ
1. What is the text al	oout?		
a) Sports.	b) Music.	c) Art.	d) History.
2. What type of mus	ic do the old like?		
a) Soft.	b) Slow.	c) Soft or slow.	d) Loud or soft.
3. What type of mus	ic do the young like	?	
a) Soft.	b) Slow.	c) Soft or slow.	d) Loud or fast.
4. A: What is music?	B: It's a way to calm	and	
a) play	b) work	c) taste	d) relax
2 Read the following	ng, then answer the	questions:	
Robinson Crusoe	is an adventure stor	y by Daniel Defoe. Rob	inson Crusoe was
		aw one of his friends or	
		ded the ship. At the sea,	
		mself alone on an island	
_		years until <u>he</u> found so	
made a boat. Cruso	e spent thirty-five ye	ars on the island. One o	lay an English ship
arrived. He went ba	ck to England with a	man called Friday.	
A) Answer the follow	ing questions:		
1. What's the passa	ge about?	9901971 - + 1 4 7 900 10 9 900 4 0 4 4 4 4 1 1 1 1 1 2 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4	**************************************
2. What kind of stor	y is Robinson Crusoe	7	144 } 11 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1
3. Who went back t	o England with Crus	oe?	
B) Choose the correct	answer from a, b,	ord:	
4. The underlined p	ronoun " <u>he</u> " refers to	***************************************	
a) Defoe	b) Crusoe	c) Friday	d) his friend
5. Crusoe spent	years with hi	s friends on the island.	
a) nine	b) twenty-six	c) thirty-five	d) eight
6. The word boarde	d means		
a) sank	b) drove	c) got on	d) got off



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1. My father likes traditional music d) the better c) better b) best a) good 2. My older brother has a/an for a new job. d) review b) interview a) meeting 3. There are many of music like jazz, rock and pop. d) types b) notes a) sounds 4. My sister doesn't like toher toys with us. d) give c) share b) take a) have 5. Crusoe wrote a of what happened to him on the island. d) book c) song b) diary a) dairy 6. ! lost my pen, so I tried to lookit. d) in b) after c) at a) for 7. Ais a hole inside a mountain. d) cave c) hill b) valley 8. Where did youlast weekend? d) goes c) went b) going 9. A: Do you have a maths lesson today? B: Yes, do. c) we d) you b) she a) they 10. A: you got a phone? B: Yes, of course. c) Do d) Are b) Did a) Have Read and correct the underlined words: 1. A: Do you go to the park? B: No, I didn't. (..... 2. A: Do you happy? B: Yes, I am. (.....) 3. A: What music did he like? B: He likes pop. (.....)

4. A: Who goes with you? B: My mum went with me.

Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on: "A story you liked"

**************************************	***************************************



SB pages 9 & 10, WB pages 74 & 75

Vocabulary

Key Vocabula	ry.	ă.	فردات الرئيس	الما	
olives	زيتون	pepper	فلفل	theatre	المسرح
go downstairs	ينزل للأسفل	whiteboard	سبورة بيضاء	have a barbecue	ع لبية حفل شواد
windy	كثير الرياح	hope (d)	يأمل	musical instrum	ent آلة موسيقية
	Important adjectives		امة	مفات ه	
great	عظيم	terrible	فظيع / كريه	interesting	شيق
fantastic	رائع	ОК	لا باس به	bad	سيئ

Additional V	ocabulary	Shire and the state of the state of			
baby brother	أخ رضيع	so tired	متَعَبِ جِذُا	laptop	لاب توب
feelings	مشاعر	thoughts	أفكار	opinions	آراء
include (d)	يتضمن/يشمل	doodles	رسومات	What happened?	ماذا حيث؟

dang	uage Expre	SSIONS	اللعوية		
do	► maths h	omework يؤدى ولجب الرياضيات المنزلي	stop	working	يتوقف عن العمل
take	▶ a selfie	يلتقط صورة شخصية	drop	► the phone	يسقط الهاتف

Prepositions	حزوف الحر	
for breakfast	من أجل/على الإفطار try to + inf.	يحاول أن
in the afternoon	plan to + inf.	يخطط أن
with olives	بالزيتون	



Words and Opposit	06		الكلمات وعكتمه		
expensive غالى الثمن	cheap	رخيص	downstairs الطابق الأسفل	upstairs	الطابق العلوى

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Pres	ent	Past simple	Past participle
wake up	يوقظ	woke up	woken up
lose	يفقد/يخسر	lost	lost
break	يكسر	broke	broken

Language Notes

although

على الرغم من (للتعبير عن التناقض)

- The pizza was really good, although it was cheap.
- It was OK on Saturday, although I had lots of homework.

لأن (توضح السبب)

- My weekend was terrible because my team lost 5 2.
- His ship sank because there was a terrible storm.

Check Point

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. I went to my school yesterday, I was tired.
 - a) but b) so
- c) because
- d) although
- 2. Yesterday, I my homework in the evening.
 - a) did

- b) liked
- c) had
- d) walked
- 3. Last Friday, we went to the museum, but it was
 - a) open
- b) happy
- c) started
- d) closed



How to write about a terrible / fantastic day کیفیة الکتابة عن قضاء یوم به أحداث سیئة / رائعة

- Yesterday was a (صفة) day.
- I woke up at (الساعة).
- I went to school late / on time.
- I could / couldn't do my homework because it was really easy / difficult.
- My teacher was / wasn't angry with me.
- I was happy / unhappy.

Writing tips

A paragraph has:

- a topic sentence
- supporting sentences
- a concluding sentence

يجب أن تحتوى الفقرة على:

- جملة رئيسية
- جمل داعمة للموضوع
- · جملة تلخيصية (تلخص الفكرة الرئيسية للفقرة)

Example

A terrible day

Yesterday was Sunday. I had a terrible day. I got up at seven thirty in the morning. I got dressed and packed my school bag. I missed the school bus because I was late. I took a taxi to school. I arrived at school very late. My teacher was very angry with me. He asked me for my homework, but I forgot my notebook. I felt really sad. I went back home at three o'clock. My little brother had a fever. We took him to the hospital and finally he got better. I was worried about him. When we went back home, it was night and I couldn't do my homework. What a terrible day!

your turn:	ورك الآن:
36 4	"A good day you had"
Yesterday, wa	s a good day.
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	A MANAGEMENT OF THE PROPERTY O
00 min a fa a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a	**************************************

Pre-listening question:

- How was Hisham's weekend?

- Listen to three people talk about their weekend.Match the person to the photos.
- SB page 9

1) Woman: Hi, Lina. How was your weekend?

Lina : Oh, it was terrible (1).

Woman : Oh dear, what happened?

Lina : I watched a football match at the stadium.

It was terrible because my team lost 5–2. Then, I took a selfie but I dropped my

mobile phone and it broke.

Woman : Oh dear!

2)

Man : Hi, Hisham. How was your weekend?

Hisham: It was great because I went to the bowling

alley⁽²⁾ with my cousins. Then we went to a pizza restaurant. I had a pizza witholives ⁽³⁾

and pepper(4). The pizza was really good,

although it was expensive.

3)

Woman 2: Hi, Judy. How was your weekend?

Judy: It was OK on Saturday, although I had lots

of homework. But I went to the theatre (5) in

the evening.

Post-listening question:

- Why was Lina's weekend terrible?







فلفل (4)

المسرح (5)







Pre-reading question:

Why did Dalia go to the shop?

1. Read Dalia's diary and the writing tips. What was her opinion of the terrible day? Why?

SB page 10

Sunday 13th August

Today was a terrible (1) day! My baby brother (2) woke (a) me up at 5 am! I (b) was so tired (3) then. I went downstairs (4) for breakfast, but we had no milk or bread. So Mum asked me to go to the shop, but it was closed (5) because it was only 6.30 am!

Then^(c) I tried to do my maths homework, but my laptop stopped working and I lost all my work. We planned to have a barbecue⁽⁶⁾ in the afternoon, but it was very windy⁽⁷⁾. We could not have it! I **hope**^(d) tomorrow will be a better day!





أخ رضيع (2)

مرهق (3)

نزل للإسفل (4)

مغلق (5)

حفلة شواء (6)

كثير الريح (7)



Post-reading question:

-Why couldn't Dalia do her homework?

Writing tips

- a. Use the past tense (most of the time).
- b. Use the first person (I or We).
- c. Write things in the order that they happened.
- d. Talk about your feelings, hopes, thoughts and opinions.
- e. Include pictures and doodles.



Ь

Lesson



Pre-listening question: - What did Khaled do last week?

3. What do you think the people said in the following situations? Use expressions from Exercise 2. Then listen and check your answers.

WB page 74

1)

: I went to my cousin's house last weekend. It was fantastic because Judy we played all my favourite games!

2)

Khaled: I read a book by my favourite writer last week. It was OK, although it was not her best book.

3)

Marwa: My father drove us to the park on Saturday. It took an hour to go two kilometres! It was terrible because there were so many cars.

4)

: We read an English book at school today. It was very good, although Hany I didn't understand every word!

Post-listening question: - How long did it take to go to the park?

Reading

1. Read Amir's diary and complete with capital letters, full stops or WB page 75 exclamation marks (!).

Saturday 13th July

Today was a fantastic day. First, I got up at 5 am and had breakfast. Then, I got in the car with my family and we drove to Siwa. Although it was a very long journey, I enjoyed reading my favourite book



in the car. We arrived very late, but it is a beautiful place. We planned to look around, but we stayed in the hotel because we were all very tired. I think tomorrow will be very interesting.

Lesson



	vocabular y	Keruses	
Choose the corre	ct answer from a, b, c	or d:	
1. The piano is a mu	sical		
a) equipment	b) machine	c) instrument	d) whiteboard
2. You can fly your k	ite when it's		
a) windy	b) sunny	c) hot	d) cold
3. I couldn't buy any	juice because the sho	p was	
a) cheap	b) high	c) open	d) closed
4. I dropped my mo	bile phone and it	working.	
a) finished	b) stopped	c) ended	d) changed
5. I had a nice pizza	olives and pe	epper.	
a) on	b) of	c) at	d) with
6. I watched a wond	lerful play for Adel Ema	m in the	
a) theatre	b) museum	c) gym	d) temple
7. We planned to	a barbecue in t	he afternoon but it w	as very windy.
a) make	b) take	c) have	d) eat
8. Yesterday was a te	errible day because I	my mobile.	
a) went	b) lost	c) missed	d) finished
9. We dow	nstairs to study in a qu	iet place.	
a) have	b) take	c) see	d) go
10. I can't buy this tak	olet. It's too		
a) cheap	b) wonderful	c) nice	d) expensive
11. In my th	ne match was exciting.		
a) opinion	b) think	c) view	d) sight
12. Our classroom ha	s many things	the whiteboard.	
a) containing	b) including	c) opening	d) closing

b) including

a) containing





Responding to past events

الرد على أحداث فى الماضى

ما يقال في هذا الموقف Situation

Response

جملة الرد



 We cannot use (very) with strong adjectives (e.g. terrible, fantastic) but we can use (really): It was really terrible!



- لا يمكن استخدام (very) مع الصفات القوية بينما يمكننا استخدام (really).

How was your weekend?



A Complete the following dialogue	A	Complete	the following	dialogue:
-----------------------------------	---	----------	---------------	-----------

: What did you do last weekend, Mohaned? Rami Mohaned: Oh, I had a great time! Rami Mohaned: I went to the football stadium with some friends. : That sounds like fun. What (2)_____ Rami the match like? Mohaned: It was (3)...... interesting. What about you? Did you go anywhere? : No, I (4)......go anywhere all weekend. Rami I just stayed home. : I studied for the English test.

B Complete the following dialogue:

Mohaned: Our English test? I forgot all about that!

Lessons 5%6

General Exercises

The state of the s
1 Complete the following dialogue:
Aya : Hello, Asmaa. How are you?
Asmaa : Hi, Aya, I'm fine.
Aya : How (1)your last weekend?
Asmaa : It was (2)
Aya : Really! Where (3)you go?
Asmaa: My father took us to a nice restaurant.
Ava : (4)
Asmaa : It was (5)delicious. What about you?
Aya : I stayed home.
Asmaa : Oh. How terrible!
2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
1. Today was aday! I got up late, I didn't have my breakfast and I misse
the school bus.
a) fantastic b) good c) terrible d) scared
2. Theis a musical instrument.
a) trumpet b) tablet c) laptop d) mobile phon
3. Iall my toys when I was on the beach.
a) went b) did c) lost d) missed
4. My mother always wakes me at six am.
a) to b) at c) on d) up
5. I couldn't do my homework because my laptopworking.
a) started b) stopped c) began d) went
6. We always what to do at the weekend.

c) plan

d) climb

b) make

a) travel

How was your weekend?

7. I usually	downstairs for br	eakfast with my grai	ndparents.
a) go	b) say	c) visit	d) travel
8. MARIEMENTE IT WE	as a very long journey	, l enjoyed it.	
a) As	b) Because	c) Although	d) But
9. Our weekend wa	as fantastic	we played all our f	avourite games!
a) but	b) because	c) although	d) however
10. The English boo	k was very good	I didn't unde	rstand every word!
a) although	b) because	c) and	d) so
3 Read and corre	ct the underlined wo	ords:	
1. The shop was cle	osed because it is only	y 6.30 am.	()
2.1 didn't go to sch	nool <u>although</u> it was F	riday.	()
3. He didn't pass th	ne exam <u>because</u> he s	tudied hard.	(
4. A: Where <u>is</u> your	uncle live? B: He live	s in Tanta.	()
Write a paragra	ph of EIGHTY (80) w	ords on:	
	"A day you will	never forget"	
************************		,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	
		D110045540000000000000000000000000000000	
		P0 10-44-44-4-10-10-4-10-4-10-4-10-4-10-4	
\$	***************************************	> > 4 × 5 × 6 × 6 × 6 × 6 × 6 × 6 × 6 × 6 × 6	
****************************	144 22 1 0 1 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2	**************************************	***************************************
************************	***************************************		
401010101010101010101010101010101010101		~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~	

) OU 1 W	



Videoscript 🕟

SB page 8

- There are lots of different styles (1) of music such as classical (2), jazz and opera.

Did you know that people first watched the famous opera Aida, by Giuseppe Verdi, in Cairo in 1871?

Hakim is a very popular⁽³⁾ singer. He sings to modern and traditional music. This style of music is called Geel. Hakim is famous in Egypt and other countries around the world.

You can often hear music at weddings (4) and other celebrations (5).

Egypt also has a lot of traditional music.

You can hear it from Alexandria to Aswan.

In traditional music, you can hear instruments (6) like drums and the nev (7). The ney is a type of flute.

Another traditional instrument is the qanun⁽⁸⁾. This is a string⁽⁹⁾ instrument that you play with your fingers.

You can also hear the violin⁽¹⁰⁾ and the oud⁽¹¹⁾. The oud is similar to the guitar⁽¹²⁾, but it usually has more strings.

You can also hear these instruments in many other countries.

Do you like music? What styles of music do you like?

- (1) انواع
- موسيقي كلاسيك (2)
- محبوب (3)
- حفلات الزفاف (4)
- احتفالات (5)
- آلات موسيقية (6)
- آلة التاي (7)
- ألة القانون (8)
- وتر (9)
- ألة الكمنجة (10)
- آلة العود (11)
- الجيتار (12)





Vocabulary

Vocabulary		شرذات	all*	
weekend العطلة الأسبوعية	planetarium	مبنى القبة السماوية	football stad	ium ملعب كرة القدم
funfair الملاهي	museum	متدف	wheel	عجلة
bowling alley صالة البولينج	dolphin	الدولفين	school unifo	rm زی مدرسی موجد
exhibition معرض	move(d) to	ينتقل إلى	dark	ظلام/ مظلم
مصبی/ متوتر nervous	swimming po	حمام سباحة ا٥٥	dead	ميت
school canteen مقصف (كانتين) المدرسة	musician	موسيقار/ عازف	prefer (red)	يفضل
interview حوار/ مقابلة	stressed	مضغوط	terrible	رهيب/ فظيع
قصة مغامرة adventure story	sailor	بځار	island	جزيرة
علصفة storm	nearby	مجاور/ قريب	classical	كلاسيكى
jazz موسيقى الجاز	opera	الأوبرا	traditional	تقليدى
pop موسيقى البوب	rock	موسيقى الروك	have a barbe	cue لديه حفل شواء
go downstairs ينزل للأسفل	whiteboard	سبورة بيضاء	musical instr	ument آلة موسيقية
windy کثیر الریاح	, hope(d)	يأمل	band	فرقة موسيقية
معرض الأحياء المائية aquarium	sports centre	مرکز ریاضی	theatre	المسرح



Language

Past simple tense

رمن الماضي البسيط

Form

التكوين

- التصريف الثاني للفعل + Subject
- Mona watched a nice film last night.
- They had a fantastic weekend in the aquarium.

Past Simple Expressions

Key words الكلمات

الدالة

- في الماضي in the past - منذ ago - منذ in the past - في الماضي in the past - أمس (in 2010))

2. Questions

Yes/No questions:

Helping verb + subject + complement?

- Are you a teacher?
- Yes, I am.

2 Q word questions

Q. word + helping verb + subject + complement?

• When did you go to school?



1. Ask and answer questions about past events:

- When did you have breakfast?
- Where did you go last weekend?
- When was Dina's birthday?

2. Responding to past events:

- How was your weekend?
- What was the (food) like?

- السؤال والإجابة عن أحداث في الماضي:
- I had my breakfast this morning.
- I went to the museum.
- It was in October.

الرد عنى أحداث في الماضي:

- It was great/fantastic!/terrible.
- It was OK.



Based on Unit 7

Listen and choose the	correct answer fro	om a, b, c or d: الكتاب	الص الاستماع في نهاية
1. Who is Daniel Defoe?			
a) A waiter.	b) A trader.	c) A writer.	d) A worker.
2. What was Crusoe's job	?		
a) A baker.	b) A sailor.	c) A doctor.	d) A teacher.
3. Where did Crusoe swi			n = .1.
a) To an island.	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	c) To his house.	d) To work.
4. A: Why did the ship si	nk? B: Because of .	***********************	
a) rain	b) a storm	c) the sun	d) cold
2. Complete the follow	ing dialogue:		WB
Mona: Do you like class	sical music, Dina?		
Dina : Yes, I (1)			
Mona: When (2)	ус	ou last go to a concert?	
Dina: I last went to a d			
Mona: (3)	you got	a ticket for the concert	on Saturday?
Dina: Yes, I have!			
Mona : Can (4)			
Dina : Yes, you can. Ar	e you happy about	that?	
Mona: Yes, 1 (5)	113	s fantastic.	
Dina: OK. That's great			

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Dear Dalia,

I can't believe my trip is almost over. I came to Easter Island just two weeks ago. I was with a group from my school. We stayed with families that live on the island. We studied the stone statues, called Moai, and the cave paintings. I really learned a lot. I'm tired, but I loved every minute of my trip. It was a very interesting trip. I hope you'll come with me next time.

Take care.

Margaret

PS: On Easter Island, Iorana means "Hello."



A) Answer the following questions:

1. When did Marga	ret go to Easter Island?	ar regressives in the second	98 04001 - 141 014 411 41 42 14 15 15 15 15 15 15 15 15 15 15 15 15 15
2. Do you think Ma	rgaret enjoyed her trip	? Why?	
3. What does the u	nderlined pronoun "We	e" refer to?	
B) Choose the correct	t answer from a, b, c o	or d:	***************************************
4. Margaret went w	vith her		
a) family	b) classmates	c) cousins	d) sister
5. Moai is a name fo	or some	on Easter island.	
a) paintings	b) friends	c) families	d) statues
6 Wro	ote this text.		
a) Margaret	b) Dalia	c) Easter	d) lorana
Choose the correl	ect answer from a, b,	c or d:	
1. I like playing foot	tball, so I asked my fath	ner to join a/an	
a) funfair	b) aquarium	c) sports centre	d) planetarium
2. Ia	haircut last Tuesday.		
a) had	b) went	c) did	d) met
3. Yesterday, my far	nily to a	new house in Alexand	lria.
a) had	b) stayed	c) visited	d) moved
4. Most students ar	e usually	. just before exams.	
a) scary	b) nervous	c) tiring	d) ugly
5. Nadia,	five, is frightened o	of the dark.	
a) age	b) old	c) aged	d) young
б. What did you do	Sara's bi	rthday?	
a) at	b) on	c) in	d) of
7. Peter likes jazz	best. He p	lays the guitar.	
a) music	b) sport	c) match	d) art

How was your weekend?

8.1b	owling this morning.		
a) go	b) gone	c) went	d) going
9, When did Dina's	family t	he restaurant?	
a) visiting	b) visits	c) visited	d) visit
10. It was terrible	my team	ost 5–2.	SB
a) although	b) because	c) so	d) but
Read and correc	t the underlined wo	rds:	
1. A: When did you	visit the museum? B:	Two days last.	(
2. <u>Do</u> you got a nev	v school bag?		(
3. She went to scho	ol <u>because</u> she felt ill		(*************************************
4. How did your las	t weekend?		()
6 Write a paragrap	oh of EIGHTY (80) wo	ords on:	
	"How you spent y	our last weekend"	•
**************************	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,		
****************************	\$\$\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\		***************************************
#07#@)}}{	·		>>+===================================
•••••			
		****************	***************************************
**********************	***************************************		
*************************	######################################		
		To do	
	حاوات	السمال الله	
		لديك سؤال في أي مادة؟	
		مكنك طرح أستُلتك لال خدمة اسأل الأضواء	
	W	على: www.aladwaa.com	ادفل



SB pages 12 & 13, WB page 77

Vocabulary

Lesson

Key Vocahul	ary	m 1/2004	·····································	هردات الرييسية	all		
amazing	مدهش	مذهل/	bridge	چسر/کوبری	city		مدينة
pyramid		هرم	tower	برح	tunne		نفق
country/coun	tries	بلد بلاد	metre (m)	متر	kilom	etre (km)	كيلومتر
			Question wo	rds with "How"			
How wide?	ن/اتساع؟	کم عرض	How long?	كم طول/كم المدة؟	How c	leep?	كم عمق؟
How high?	اع؟	کم ارتما	How old?	كم عمر؟	How r	nany?	کم عدد؟
			Numbers as	nd their words			
hundred		مائة	thousand	الم	millio	า	مليون
more than	ı	اکثر من	just under	مقط تحت اقل بقليل	about		م حوالی
Additional	(paint	ları					_
guess (ed)			يخمن	building			مىنى/يئاء
measuremen	t		قياس	measure (d)			يقيس
Preposition		يو در		ي راه ي			
around			حول	on page			في صفحة
examples of			أمثلة لـ	under the gr	round		تحت الارض
Werds and C)pposit	egi		العات و وقدها			
wide	واسع	narro	ضيق W	high	عال	low	منخفض
under	تحت	above	فوق ع	long	طويل	short	قصير



Language Notes

يشعر بـ

feel + adj.:

Adam felt nervous before he started his new school.

hundred - thousand - million

لا تجمع هذه الكلمات إذا جاء قبلها رقم

• I have five hundred pounds.

لكن يتم جمعه إذا لم يأت قبلها أرقام.

Thousands of tourists visit Egypt every year.

Measurements:

القياسات

How + adj

• How old are you?

I'm twelve years old.

• How deep is Lake Baikal in Russia?

- It's 1, 642 metres deep.

• How high is the Great Pyramid?

- It's 146 metres high.

• How long is the River Nile?

- It's 6650 kilometres long.

Reading numbers:

قراءة الأرقاص

- 435,000: four hundred and thirty-five thousand
- 37, 000,000 : thirty-seven million
- 37, 435,191: thirty-seven million, four hundred and thirty-five thousand, one hundred and ninety-one

When we do not want to give an exact number, we can also say:

عندما لا نريد إعطاء رقم دقيق، يمكننا أن نقول أيضًا:

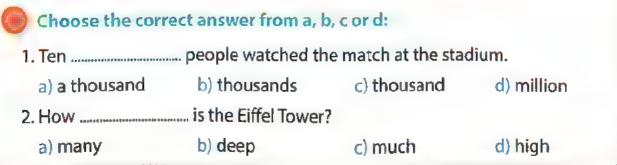
حوالي about / أقل بقليل Just under / أكثر من more than

- 192 = more than one hundred and ninety
- 179 = just under one hundred and eighty
- -2,003 = about two thousand

The amazing world around us

important places		باكن مهمة
المكان Place	Country / City البلد / المدينة	مقاییس Measurements
The Tahya Masr Bridge کوبری تحیا مصر	Egypt مصر	- It's about 67, 36 metres wide - It's about 25, 000 metres long
The Great Pyramid الهرم الأكبر	Giza - Egypt الجيزة /مصر	- It's 146 metres high.
The Cairo-Alexandria desert road طريق القاهرة الإسكندرية الصحراوي	مصر Egypt	- it's 220 kilometres long.
Lake Baikal بحيرة بايكال	Russia روسیا	- It's 1, 642 metres deep.
Abraj Al-Bait Clock Tower برج ساعة أبراج البيت	Saudi Arabia السعودية	- It's 601 metres high.
The Luxor Temple معبد الأقصر	مصر Egypt	- It's just under 3, 500 years old
The Pyramid of El Castillo هرم آل کاسٹیو	Chichen Itza تشيتشن إيتزا المكسيك Mexico	- It's 30 metres high.
The Leaning Tower of Pisa برج بیزا المائل	ltaly ايطاليا	- It's just under 850 years old.
The Gotthard Tunnel نفق جوتھارد	Switzerland سويسرا	- It's 2,300 metres under the ground.

Check Point

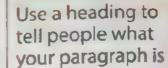




How to write about an important building بعلم گیفیة الگتابة عن مبنی مهم

- (سانا) has a lot of important places.
- The (حسر) is one of the most important buildings.
 - It took (عدد سبو) to build.
- It opened in (السنة) .
 - It's (🛶) metres high/tall.
- It has (وصف لمبنى).
 - It's a wonderful building.





Derivative Law

about.

استخدم عنو با ليتبر الناس عن موضوع عقرياً

The Cairo Tower

Egypt has many amazing places. You can visit some of these places in Cairo like the Cairo Tower and the Egyptian Museum. The Cairo Tower is one of the most famous buildings in Egypt. It took five years to build. It opened in 1961. It is 187 metres tall and stands next to the Nile. There is a restaurant at the top. It moves, so you can see all of the city below. There are 24 windows on each floor of the building. If you want to climb to the top, there are 2,500 stairs! At night, the colours on the tower change. It is a wonderful building!

Now,	vour	turn:
14041	1	

حان دورك الأن:

"The Great Pyramio"
Egypt has many interesting places.
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
er
THE PERSON OF THE SHIPPING PRINT SPING SELECTION OF THE PERSON OF THE PE
THE SAME THE THE CONTROL OF SUPPLIES AND ADDRESS OF THE SAME OF THE SAME AND ADDRESS OF THE SAME OF TH
a a special days a state of the first of the second of the



Pre-listening question:

How many people live in Tokyo?

- 2. Listen and check your answers to Exercise 1.
 - a. The Pyramid of El Castillo in Chichen Itza is 30 metres high.
 - b. The Tahya Masr bridge is about 540 metres long.
 - c. More than 37,500,000 people live in Tokyo, Japan.
 - d. The Leaning Tower of Pisa is just under 850 years old.
 - e. The Gotthard Tunnel in Switzerland is 2,300 metres under the ground.

4. Listen and check your answers to Exercise 3.

1

- How long⁽¹⁾ is the Cairo-Alexandria desert road?
 It's 220 kilometres long.
- 2
- How deep⁽²⁾ is Lake Baikai in Russia?
 It's 1, 642 metres deep.

3

- How high⁽³⁾ is Abraj Al-Bait Clock Tower in Saudi Arabia?
 - It's 601 metres high.



- How old⁽⁴⁾ is the Luxor Temple?
 - It's just under 3, 500 years old.



- How many⁽⁵⁾ people live in Cairo?
 - More than 20 million people.

Post-listening question:

- What do you know about Abraj Al-Bait Clock Tower?

SB page 13



- كم طول (1)
- كم العمق(2)
- كم الارتفاع (3)
- كم العمر (4)
- كم العدد (5)









Choose the co	rrect answer from a, b, c	or d:	
1. We enjoyed ou	urselves last holiday. It wa	5	
a) ugly	b) boring	c) amazing	d) terrible
2. The tower is 14	46 metres		WB
a) high	b) long	c) deep	d) old
3. The bridge is a	bout 25, 000 metres	***************************************	(MB)
a) tall	b) high	c) deep	d) long
4than	37, 500, 000 people live in	n Paris.	ANB-
a) Old	b) About	c) Under	d) More
5. Egypt is a grea	tin Africa.		
a) city	b) town	c) village	d) country
6. People use a	to cross over a riv	ver.	
a) bridge	b) fridge	c) tower	d) tunnel
7. A is a	hole just under the grou	nd.	
a) bridge	b) tunnel	c) pyramid	d) cave
8. We t	hings by using the metre	or the kilometre.	
a) weigh	b) count	c) measure	d) guess
9. It's 2.3 kilomet	resunder the gi	round.	
a) high	b) deep	c) wide	d) old
10. A: Where is	Baikal? B: It's in Ru	ssia.	
a) Lake	b) Sea	c) Tower	d) Bridge
11. The Luxor Tem	ple is just 3,500	years old.	
a) on	b) more	c) between	d) under
12. A: How	is the Nile after Aswan	? B: It's 2, 500 metres.	
a) tall	b) long	c) much	d) high





Ask and answer about measurements

السؤال والإجابة عن القياسات

Situation

ما يقال في هذا الموقف

جملة الرد



- How long is the Cairo-Alexandria desert road? كم طول طريق القاهرة الإسكندرية الصحراوي؟

* It is 220 kilometres long.

🔬 ೄ - إنه ۲۲۰ كيلو مترًا.





- How deep is Lake Baikal?

- كم عمق بحيرة بايكال؟



🔊 📞 – إنما ١٦٤٢ مترًا.





- How old is the Luxor Temple?

كم عمر معيد الأقصر؟



* It's just under 3, 500 years old. إنه أقل من ٢٥٠٠ عام بقليل- ____



- How many people live in Cairo? كم عدد الناس الذين يعيشون في القامرة؟







- How wide is the Tahya Masr Bridge?

کم عرض کوپری تجیا مصر؟

* It's about 67.36 metres wide.

رر - حوالي ٦٧,٣٦ متر.





Speaking Exercises

Complete the following dialogue:

Mazen: Hello, Ahmed. Where did you go last holiday?

Mazen: Where (2).....it?

Ahmed: The Cairo Tower is next to the Nile.

Mazen : How (3)...... is it?

Ahmed: I think it's about 187 metres tall.

Mazen : How old is it?

Ahmed: It's more than fifty-nine years (4)......

Mazen: (5)...... many floors are there in the

Cairo Tower?

Ahmed: There are sixteen floors. There is a restaurant on the 14th floor.





Lesson SB page

hey Vocabul	lly	in the second	فردات الرث	الم	
	In	nportant adjectives	ات هامة	مة	
crowded	مزيحم	empty	فارغ	low	منځفض
modern	حدیث/عصری	narrow	ضيق	noisy	مباحب/كثير الضوضاء
old	قديم/كبير السن	quiet	ھادئ	tall	طویل
wide	واسع	far	<u> </u>	easy	سمل
big	كبير	high	عالِ	near	قريب
		Places	أماكن		
the Pyramids o	of Giza أهرامات الجيزة	the 6 th October b بير	oridge کوبری ٦ أکتو	Mount Kilir	manjaro جبل کلیمنجارو
the Al Hamra To	ower برح الحمراء	the Red Pyramid	الهرم الأحمر	the Amazo	n نهر الأمازون
the Nile River	نهر النيل	Mount Everest	جبل ايفرست	forest	غالة
the Shanghai T	ower , برج شنغمای	Qasr El Nil Bridge ننیل	د کوپری قصر ا		
		Countries and cities	للاد ومدن	1	
Brazil	البراريل	Brasilia	برازيليا	Kuwait	الكويت
Thailand	تايلاند	Bangkok	بانگوك	China	الصين

Additional Vuo	abulary	فردات الإضافية	اله	
dictionary	centre قاموس	مركز	visitor	زاير
the countryside	popula الريف	سکان tion	tourist	سائح
traffic	correct حركة لمرور	بطريقة صحيحة ا		



Prepositions	Annual Control		Joyl 1		
crowded with		far from	بعید من	compare with	يقارن بـ
at Giza		easy for	سمل ن	the capital of	عاصمة
		the centre of	Cairo		
away from	بعيداً عن		وسط القاهرة		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال فير المتبطعة

Control of the Contro	Present	Rast simple	Past participle	
know	يعرف	knew	known	
think	يعتقد/يفكر	thought	thought	

Language Notes

make + obj. + adj.

يجعل

• This story made us happy.

the

تستخدم مع الأماكن الشهيرة

the Shanghai Tower

the Red Pyramid

Check Point



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. I visited the PyramidsGiza.
 - a) for

b) to

- c) at
- d) with
- 2. My mother bought me a present which me very happy.
 - a) sold

- b) thought
- c) told
- d) made

- 3. Paris is the capital France.
 - a) on

b) at

- c) by
- d) of



Pre-listening question:

Adder the administration of collect the artists of the september on all monor of the life to the properties of

3. Listen and check your answers to Exercise 2.

How much do you know about pyramids? Let's compare⁽¹⁾ two pyramids in Egypt. The Great Pyramid⁽²⁾ of Giza is 146 metres tall. It's taller than the Red Pyramid⁽³⁾, which is 105 metres tall. But the Red Pyramid is further away from the centre of Cairo, so it's less crowded⁽⁴⁾ with visitors. Because it's less crowded, it's also quieter.







- يقارن (1)
- المرم الأكبر (2)
- الغرم الأمعر (3)
- مزيحم (4)
- برج شنغمای (5)
- برج الحمراء (6)
- عولصم (7)
- تعداد السكان (8)

Now let's compare two very tall buildings. The Shanghai Tower⁽⁵⁾ in China is 632 metres tall. The tower first opened in 2015. The Al Hamra Tower ⁽⁶⁾ in Kuwait is 412.6 metres tall. The building first opened in 2011. So, the Shanghai Tower is taller and more modern than the Al Hamra Tower in Kuwait.



Finally, we're going to compare two capital cities⁽⁷⁾. Bangkok became the capital of Thailand about 600 years ago, so it's much older than Brasilia. Brasilia is a modern city. The Brazilians built it in 1960. More people live in Bangkok than Brasilia. The population⁽⁸⁾ of Bangkok is more than 10 million. The population of Brasilia is about four and a half million.





So, how did you do? Did you get the answers correct?

Post-listening question:

- What's the capital city of Brazil?





Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c o	ord:					
1. Cairo's streets are ve	1. Cairo's streets are very It takes long to go to any place.						
a) easy	b) far	c) crowdeu	w,g				
2. We need to buy son	2. We need to buy some more water. This bottle is						
a) empty	b) crowded	c) tall	d) old				
3. Be careful you don't	hit your head on the	door. It is very	. WB				
a) busy	b) high	c) low	d) long				
4. Only people and bike	es can go down that roa	nd because it is very	······································				
a) long	b) narrow	c) wide	d) low				
5. My house isn't far	my school.						
a) at	b) in	c) on	d) from				
6. It's very difficult to o	drive your car in the	of Cairo.					
a) centre	b) tower	c) hall	d) wall				
7. The teacher was an	gry because all the stu	dents were very	WAS A				
a) deep	b) empty	c) long	d) noisy				
8. Many com	ne to Egypt to see its a	mazing places.					
a) visitors	b) pyramids	c) tours	d) partners				
9. The teacher asked ι	ıs toa quiz.						
a) work	b) do	c) make	d) say				
10. A: What's the	of Brazil? B: It's Br	asilia.					
a) city	b) centre	c) capital	d) town				
11. The Shanghai Tower, the Al Hamra Tower and the Cairo Tower are famous							
a) buildings	b) cities	c) centres	d) countries				
12. We can't swim acros	s the river here becau	se it is very	WB				
a) wide	b) low	c) narrow	d) crowded				
13. Theis very	y slow. We'll be late.						
a) population	b) pollution	c) traffic	d) centre				

The amazing world around us



Comparative of adjectives

مقاربة الصد

· We use comparative adjectives to compare two things, people or places.

نستخدم مقارئة الصفات لمقارنة بين شيئين. شخصين أو مكانين.

يجب أن نعرف أن الصفات حسب النطق تنقسم إلى:

- صفات قصيرة (Short adjectives) وهي تنطق على مقطع واحد (One syllable):

(high-big-tall-old-wide-nice-hot)

- صفات طويلة (Long adjectives) وهي تنطق على مقطعين أو اكثر (Two or more syllables):

(modern- crowded- amazing- wonderful- interesting)

Comparative of adjectives

لعمل مقارنة بين اثنين مختلفين إذا كانت الصفة ذات مقطع واحد adj. + er + than

- Mount Everest is higher than Mount Kilimanjaro.
- -The Nile River is longer than the Amazon.

إذا كانت الصفة بها أكثر من مقطع ... less أقل + adj. + than أكثر من مقطع ...

- Cairo is more crowded than Aswan.
- -The dog is less dangerous than the lion.

Read and correct the underlined words:

- The white tablet is expensive than the black one.

(.....)

(large-largerthan)

١ - الصفة القصيرة العنتمية بـ 6 نضيف لها ٢ فقط للمقارنة بين اثنين:



(noisy - noisier than) :e

٢- الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ ٧ وقبلها حرف ساكن نقلب (٧) إلى (١) ثم نضيف ٤٢:

٣- بعض الصفات القصيرة المنتهية بحرف ساكن وقبله حرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الأخير + er : (hot - hotterthan

Read and correct the underlined words:

-The blue bag is <u>heavy</u> than the red one.

(.....)

Common Exceptions

استثناءات شائعة

(good) better

- I'm better than Ali at maths.

(bad) worse

-Today's weather is worse than yesterday's.

(far)

further

-Which pyramid is further from the centre of Cairo?





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mona is	. than her sister.		d) as mulot
a) quieter	b) quiet	c) quietest	d) as quiet
2. Ice skating is	skiing.		
a) safest	b) the safest	c) safer than	d) safer
3. Football is more p	opularhand	Ibali.	n al
a) this	b) that	c) than	d) then
4. Which month is	, January or Ju	ne?	
a) cold	b) colder	c) colder than	d) as cold
5. Tennis is less dang	gerousfootb	all.	NA
a) this	b) that	c) then	d) than
6. Which building is	modern?		AND
a) least	b) the more	c) most	d) more
7. Who is ,	you or your sister?		
a) old	b) oldest	c) older	d) older than
8. London is far from	n the seaside, but Oxfo	ord is	
a) far	b) more far	c) more further	
9. Which bridge is	, the 6th Octobe	r bridge or the Qasr E	Nil Bridge?
a) long	b) longer	c) longest	d) longer than
10. Things are going	from bad to	•	
a) worser	b) worse	c) more worse	d) more bad
Read and correc	t the underlined wor	ds:	
1. French is difficult	than English.		()
2. That mountain w	as <u>more high</u> than we	thought.	(management) (WB)
3. The museum is us	ually <u>crowded</u> on a Sato	urday than a Sunday.	() WB
	ea is good than a holida		()
5. The weather this	summer is even <u>bad</u> t	han last summer.	()



How to ask and answer questions to make comparisons

كيفية السؤال والإجابة لعمل مقارنات

Situation

ما يقال في هذا الموقف

Response

جملة الرو



- Which pyramid is taller, the Great Pyramid of Giza or the Red Pyramid?
 - أي هرم هو الأطول، الهرم الأكبر بالجيزة أم الهرم الأحمر؟

* I think the Great Pyramic of Giza is taller. 🦽 - أعتقد أن الهرم الأكبر بالجيزة أطول.

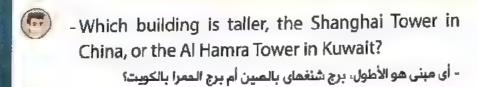




- Which pyramid is further from the centre of Cairo? أي هرم أبعد عن وسط القاهرة؟
 - * I think the Red Pyramid is further. رر - أعتقد أن الهرم الأحمر أبعد.



- Which one is more crowded with visitors? أي هرم أكثر ازدحامًا بالزوار؟
 - * I think the Great Pyramid of Giza is more crowded. 🦽 - أعتقد أن الهرم الأكبر بالجيزة أكثر ازدحامًا.



* I think the Shanghai Tower in China is taller. 🥡 - أعتقد ان برج شنغماي بالصين أطول.





Speaking Notes

نستخدم (Which) بمعنى أي / أيهما للتخيير كالتالي:

Which is (adj. + er) / (more / less+ adj.),?

- Which is easier, English or maths?
- Which is less interesting, football or squash?

Speaking Exercises

Complete the following dialogue: Maryam: How do you like living in a big city? : I like it more than living in the (1)..... Maria There are many things that make it better. Maryam: Oh, really? Can you give me some examples? : Well, it is (2) interesting out in the city than Maria it is in the countryside. Maryam: Yes, but the city is more dangerous (3)...... the countryside. :That's true. People in the city aren't very friendly. Maria Maryam: Which is (4)....., the city or the countryside? :The city is busier than the countryside, but the countryside is slower Maria than the city. Maryam: I think that's a good thing! :Oh, I don't. The countryside is much (5)...... Maria boring than the city.

Lessons 1 A 2

General Exercises

Complete the following dialogue	2:	
Tourist : Hello, can you speak English	n?	
Tamer : Yes, (1)		l help you?
Tourist: I want to know some inform	nation about some pla	ces.
Tamer: Sure. What would you like t	o know?	
Tourist: Where is the Cairo Tower ar	nd (2)	***************************************
tall is it?		
Tamer: It is by the Nile. It's 187 m (3		
Tourist: Which one is taller, the Great	at Pyramid of Giza or th	ne Cairo Tower?
Tamer : The Cairo Tower is (4)		
Pyramid is about 147 m tall		
Tourist: When did the Cairo Tower of	open?	in 1061
Tamer: I think it (5)		IN 1901.
Choose the correct answer from	a, b, c or d:	
1. Cairo is the of Egypt.		0
a) centre b) capital	c) city	d) town
2. The Tahya Masrgoes of	over the Nile in Cairo.	:WB
a) Pyramid b) Tunnel	c) Tower	d) Bridge
3. The Channel goes unde	r the sea between Engl	and and France. WB
a) Pyramid b) Bridge	c) Tower	d) Tunnel
4. Howis the sea?		A) was made
a) tall b) high	c) deep	d) many
5. The Great Pyramid of Giza is crow	ded visito	rs.
a) in b) with	c) of	d) at
6. My school is from my	home.	al) as a safe
a) near b) far	c) between	d) next
		83

Unit (6)		
7. We use a to know the mea	ning of new words.	
a) whiteboard b) diary	c) dictionary	d) notebook
8. Which one is with visitors		SB
a) crowded than	b) more crowded to	han
c) more crowded	d) crowded	
9. My mobile phone is mode	rn than yours.	SB
a) least b) the more	c) most	d) more
10. My tablet is 5000 pounds, but Adel's	tablet is only 3000	pounds. His tablet is
• 16116614414641464146444		
a) as expensive b) most expensive	c) more expensive	d) less expensive
Read and correct the underlined wo	ords:	
1. My sister thinks she's fast than me.		(,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,)
2. Do you think films are good than boo	ks?	()
3. Is your father <u>old</u> than your mother?		()
4. Which building is more tall, the Shang	hai Tower, or the Al	Hamra Tower?
		()
Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) w	ords on:	•
"A famous plac	e vou visited"	
A latitous piac	e you visited	
***************************************	***************************************	***************************************
**************************************	B4 B14 6 I 4 I B 1 6 B4 1 h 4 p p m 1 1 p 4 p p 4 o 1 4 p p 6 b 4 s	
***************************************		440000000000000000000000000000000000000
	***************************************	***************************************
411211149199999994444444444449914994449941941	4 16 4 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	***************************************
**************************************		**************************************
\$2\$\$9\$(4E2)200000000000000000000000000000000000	955/d====00019d8==0916?dp&bqeEb:bA+++++	
\$692741740714090001177,4001511666166621;646666147991744057000011101110111011	<pre><pre><pre></pre></pre></pre>	
**************************************		***************************************



SB pages 16, 17 & 18, WB pages 79 & 80

Vocabulary

Key Vocabi	hary		عردال الرئيسا		_
suspension	ً مُعلق	cross (ed)	يعبر/يمر على	across	ر
glass floor	أرضية زججية	achieve (d)	ينجز/يحقق	achievement	عاز
TV show	برنامج تلفزيونى	famous	مشمور	polite	إفت

Additional Vocatulary	المناذات الاشمية				
describe (d) فصف	Etruscan shrew حيوان صغير يشبه الفر	no way مستحيل			
ice skating التزحلق على الجليد بلوح التزلج	land animal حيوان برى	Warraq Island جزيرة الوراق			
mountain climbing تسلق الجبل	رياضة التزلج على الجليد skiing	اخشی/یوسفی I'm af <mark>raid</mark>			

Language Expressions	Carlotte Mary Mary	1,372 [13,3]	
I'm not sure	لست متأكد	the same as	نفس الشيء مثل

Prepositions	The state of the s	d'ii
at sunset وقت الغروب	يعتقد بشأن think about/of في	a view of منظر اـ
رأيى in my opinion	رأى في opinion of/about في	فخور بـ proud of
on TV التلفزيون	طريقة لـ a way of + V+ing في	



-Words and	Opposit	8.5		amfreg Childle	
beautiful	جميل	ugly	قبيح	cneap	expensive die
safe	آمن	dangerous	خطير	شعبی/محبوب popular	unpopular غير محبوب

Conjugations of bregular Verbs dobition in June 1				
A. A. Carlo	Present	Past simple	Past participle	
build		يېنى built	built	
feel		felt يشعر	felt	

Language Notes help + (inf. / to + inf.) More than 4,000 people helped to build (build) the Tahya Masr Bridge. start + (V + ing / to + inf.) Istarted to do (doing) my homework. enjoy + (V + ing) Many people enjoy walking across the bridge. The best time to + inf. The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset.

Write it right

How to write about "The Tahya Masr Bridge" "عيفية الكتابة عن كوبرى "تحيا مصر"

- Egypt is a great country.
- -We should be proud of our great country.
- The Tahya Masr Bridge is the world's widest suspension bridge.
- More than (عدد الأشخاص) people helped to build it.
- -They started building it in (سنة البدء).
- It opened in Cairo in (وقت الافتتاح).
- It is (العرض) metres wide. It's (الطول) metres long.
- It is the greatest project in Egypt.

Writingtips

Use vocabulary that's relevant to the topic. You can brainstorm the vocabulary you will use before starting writing.

- استخدم المفردات التي تلائم الموضوع.
- يمكنك التمكير في المفردات المناسبة قبل بدء الكتابة.

Example

The Tahya Masr Bridge

Egypt is a great country. It has lots of great achievements. We should be proud of that. One of the newest and greatest achievements is the Tahya Masr Bridge. It's the world's widest suspension bridge. It's a great project. More than 4,000 people helped to build it. They started building it in 2014. It opened in May 2019. It is 67.36 metres wide. It's 540 metres long. It crosses the Nile's Warraq Island. Many people enjoy walking across the glass floor of the bridge. The Tahya Misr Bridge is the greatest project in Egypt.

your turn:	ورك الأن:
Egypt has m	any interesting places.
	29744491 170375439144933 Märwenere (1991 1444
((And a p p phých to the transport of a phycé fely w mak hád y p dy d'a) y hal d v	
-, ру уфффикио о руфф ў фам валалиння востання ростання раза	
de my numbra de dede pod pode sor șe șe ja arranția șe du arredune	
	and the state of t



Reading and listening

Pre-reading question:

How wide is the Tanya Masr Bridge?

4. Read about the Tahya Masr Bridge and answer the questions.

SB page 16



- معلق (1)
- جزيرة الوراق (2)
- عبر (3)
- أرضية زجاحية (4)
- غروب الشمس (5)
- منظر جمیل (6)

The world's widest suspension (1) bridge opened in Cairo in May 2019. It is 67.36 m wide and 540 m long.

More than 4,000 people helped to build it. They started building it in 2016. They finished it in 32 months.

The bridge crosses the Nile's Warraq Island¹². More than 100,000 people live on the island.

Many people enjoy walking across⁽³⁾ the bridge. It has a glass floor ⁴⁾, so you can see the river under your feet! The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset⁽⁵⁾, for a beautiful view⁽⁶⁾ of the city.

Post-reading question:

- How long did it take to build the bridge?

esson

Reading

2. Complete the text with the superlative form of the words in brackets.

WB page 79

You probably know that whales are the biggest animals in the world, but did you know that they are also the noisiest?



A whale can hear another whale 160 km away. Did you know that the fastest animal in the world is a bird? It can fly at more than 300 km/h.

حيوان بري (1)

حيوان صاير يشبه الفأر (2)

Insects are the most dangerous animals in the world. They make more people ill than any other animal.

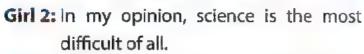
Finally, the smallest land animal(1) is the Etruscan shrew(2). It looks like a mouse and is the same size as a bee!

Listening ___

Pre-lineauro quastano d'anticolo, so distributo

1. Listen and complete the sentences.

Girl 1: Which subject do you think is more difficult, English or science?



Boy 1: I think Dahab has the most beautiful beach in Egypt. Do you?

Boy 2: I agree. It's also the least crowded.

Girl 3: What's your opinion of ice skating(1)? Do you agree that it's more dangerous than mountain climbing (2)?



Boy 3: What do you think about the new TV show?

Boy 4: I think it's the funniest show on TV right now.

Post-listening question: - Which is easier English or maths?

SB page 18



التزلج على الجليد (1)

تسلق الجيال (2

اخشی آئنی 🕄)

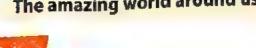




Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the corr	ect answer from a, i	b, c or d:	
1. You can enjoy th	e glass in t	he Tahya Masr Bridge	
a) floor	b) ground	c) land	d) roof
2. People	rivers over bridges.		
a) walk	b) go	c) cross	d) climb
3. The Tahya Masr B	Bridge is the world's	widestbrid	ge.
a) expression		c) information	d) discussion
4. Mohammed Sala	h is the most	Arab footballer.	
a) nervous	b) popular	c) dangerous	d) modern
5. You can enjoy wa	alking on the Tahya	Masr Bridge	sunset.
a) in	b) on	c) of	d) at
6. My father usually	watches TV	in the evening.	
a) signals	b) apps	c) shows	d) radios
7. When you give y	our opinion about so	omething, you should	disagree
	b) wrongly		d) rudely
8 my opi	nion, Egypt is a grea	t country.	
a) On	b) Of	c) About	d) In
9. I can't buy this ca	r because it's very	lt costs a lot	of money.
a) cheap	b) narrow	c) expensive	d) dangerous
10. Ugly is the oppos			
a) safe	b) beautiful	c) high	d) noisy
11. I think that Basket		ular sport, but my bro	The second secon
a) agrees	b) disagrees		d) not sure
12. Old, quiet, tall, lo			
a) subjects	b) objects	_	d) nouns
-		during his life	The state of the s
a) anvironments	h) achievements	c) advertisements	d) measurements

The amazing world around us





The superlative of adjectives

مترعة التاركين التاني

- We use superlative adjectives to compare more than two things.
 - نستخدم صيغة التفضيل العليا لمقارنة أكثر من شيئين.
 - عند المقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين مع الصفات القصيرة نستخدم:

est + الصفة القصيرة + est

Superlative of Marie Hilliam un bijftbert وافت ومجووعا

لعمل مقارنة ىىن أكثر من اثنین مختلفين ... the + adj. + est إذا كانت الصفة ذات مقطع واحد

- He is the fastest of all.
- Ali is the tallest boy in our class.

إذا كانت الصفة بها أكثر من مقطع ... إذا كانت الصفة بها أكثر من مقطع ... إذا

- Salah is the most popular Arab footballer.
- Maths is the least difficult subject.

Read and correct the underlined words:

-This car is expensive car in Egypt.

(large - the largest)

١ - الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ ⊖ نضيف لها 5t فقط:

٢- الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ ٧ وقبلها حرف ساكن نقلب (y) إلى (i) ثم نضيف est: (y) إلى المنتهية بـ ٧ وقبلها حرف ساكن المنتهية بـ ٧ وقبلها المنتهية بـ ١ وقبلها المنتهية بـ ٧ وقبلها المنتهية بـ ١ وقبلها المنتهية بـ ٧ وقبلها المنتهية بـ ١ وقبلها المنتها المنتهية بـ ١ وقبلها المنتها المنته

٣- بعض الصفات القصيرة المنتمية بحرف ساكن وقبله حرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الأخير + est: (hot - the hottest

Read and correct the underlined words:

- Elephants are big animals.

(.....)

Common Exceptions

استثناءات شائعة

(good) the best - Sami is the best student in class.

(bad)

the worst

-Today's weather is the worst.

(far)

the furthest - The Red Pyramid is the furthest from the centre of Cairo.



Language Exercises

Choose the correct	anewor	from	a. b.	c or d:
Choose the correct	answer	HOME	ca, my	COI GI

1. Who ispe	rson in your family?		
a) tall	b) tallest		d) taller
2. In my opinion, my n	num isco	ok in the world.	
a) good	b) better	c) best	d) the best
3. You probably know	that whales are	animals in th	e world. WB
a) the biggest	b) biggest	c) the bigger	d) bigger
4. Did you know that	whales are the	animals in the	world? WB
a) noisy	b) noisiest		d) most noisiest
5. Did you know that	fastest ani	mal in the world is	a bird? WB
a) the	b) the most	c) the more	d) the least
6. She bought	cake in the shop.		
a) biggest	b) the biggest	c) the most big	d) big
7. Who is sir	nger in your country	?	
a) famous	b) least famous	c) most famous	d) the most famous
8. My sister is	person in my fami	ily.	
	b) the young	c) the youngest	d) the younger
9. The Nile is			
a) the longest	b) the longer	c) longest	d) longer
10. Going for a meal in			
a) the best	b) best	c) the most good	d) the more good
11. Hala's wearing her.		ıy.	
a) more new	b) newer than	c) newest	d) the newest
Read and correct (the underlined wo	rds:	
1. We bought most ex	pensive house in th	ne city,	()
2. In my opinion, histo			,
3. I think motorbikes a			,
4. My neighbours are			(handelelelelelelelelelelelelelelelelelelel
5. Dina is the <u>clever</u> gi			()

The amazing world around us



Asking about and giving opinion السؤال عن وإبداء الراي

Situation

ما يقال في هذا الموقف

Response

جملة الرد



Which subject do you think is more difficult, English or Arabic? أي مادة مي أصعب في رأنك؛ اللغة العربية أم اللغة الإنجليزية؟

*In my opinion, English is the most difficult of all. فى رأيى اللغة الإنجليزية هي الأصعب على الإطلاق<mark>.</mark>





What's your opinion of the Tahya Masr Bridge? ما رأيك في كويري تحيا مصر؟

* I think the Tahya Masr Bridge is the greatest project in Egypt. - اعتقد أن كوبري تحيا مصر هو أعظم مشروع في مصر.







Do you agree that science is easier than maths? هل تتفق أن العلوم أسمل من الرياضيات؟

* I don't agree with you.







What do you think about the new TV show? ما رأيك في العرض التلفزيوني الجديد؟

* I think it's the most popular show on TV now! أعتقد أنه العرض الأكثر شعبية على التلفزيون الآن.



عدم الاتفاق في الرأى مع شخص آخر

Situation

ما يقال في هذا الموقف

Response

حملة الرد



* I don't feel the same as you about that. انا لا أشعر بنفس ما تشعر به. 🔻 🛷 🦪



* I'm sorry, but I don't have the same opinion. 🥒 - أنا آسف ولكن ليس لدى نفس الرأي.



* I'm not sure about that.

📞 – أنا غير متأكد بخصوص ذلك.







Shearing Exercises	
Complete the following dialogue:	
Mona : Hi, Ahmed. I didn't see you all day.	
Ahmed: Hello, Mona. I was busy with my best friends. Mona: So Ahmed, (1)	do you think
Mona : So Anmed, (1)	•
makes a good friend? Ahmed: Well, I (2)	a friend is someone
who is fun to be with.	
	inle?
Mona : Hmfun to be with? Can you give me an exam	
Ahmed: I like friends who like to go out and have fun to	getner.
Mona : I'm (3)	l don't agree with that.
Ahmed: (4) my opin	nion, it is the best way
to spend our time.	
Mona : So You mean a friend has to like the same thin	gs as you, don't you?
Ahmed: No not really, just that they have a (5)	character.
Life Skills	
Remember that it is important to be polite when you g	jive your opinion.
، التعبير عن رأيك.	تذكر أنه يجب أن تكون مهذبًا عند
Tick (\checkmark) the polite ways of disagreeing with someone.	
ذبة للاختلاف في الرأي مع شخص ما.	اكتب علامة (صح) في الطرق المها
 I don't feel the same as you about that. 	
2. You are WRONG!	
3. In my opinion,	
4. I'm sorry, but I don't have the same opinion.	

Work in pairs. Give your opinion about something. Disagree politely.



What? No way!

I'm not sure about that.

What's the best book you can think of?

* In my opinion, it's Gulliver's Travels.



Lessons 3 g 4

General Exercises

1 Listen and choos	e the correct answer from	n a, b, c or d: الكتاب	(نص الاستماع في نم
1. How many peop	le helped to build the Ta	hya Masr Bridge?	
a) 40.	b) 400.	· ·	d) 40,000.
2. How long did it t	take to finish?		
a) 32 months.	b) 23 months.	c) 13 months.	d) 30 months.
3. In which month	did they open it in 2019?		
a) In April.	b) In March.	c) In May.	d) In June.
4. How long is it?			
a) 514 m.	b) 450 m.	c) 540 m.	d) 504 m.
Read the follow	ing, then answer the q	uestions:	
The 382-metre-	long Qasr al-Nil Bridge,	with its two lion statue	es at each end,
crosses over the Ni	ile. It's 10.5 metres wide.	There was a bridge in i	ts place, Gezira
Bridge, in 1872, bu	it the bridge became to	o busy, so Cairo needed	d a bigger one.
King Fuad opened	Qasr al-Nil Bridge in 193	3. The bridge took abou	t thirty months
to complete, durir	ng that time ferries, boa	ts and feluccas once	again were the
main transport to t	the island, crossing from	the east side of the Nile	e in front of the
Semaramis Hotel to	o the other side of Zama	lek. Many people like to	walk along the
bridge in the even	ings. You can walk acros	s it from the east side t	o Gezira Island.
There are wonderfu	ul views of the river from	the bridge.	
A) Answer the follow	ring questions:		
1. What does the u	nderlined word "one" re	fer to?	74410011D4411LLLLLLLLLLLLLLLLLLLLLLLLLLLL
2. Who built Qasr a	ıl-Nil Bridge?	***************************************	1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1
3. What is the nam	e of the hotel mentione	d in the passage?	94 144 9 GF 9 D D 94 I BB 11 4 H A H H H Y 9 5 F 2 5 9 6 D 9 6 I 4
B) Choose the correc	t answer from a, b, c o	rd:	
	e is m wide.		
a) 105	b) 382	c) 10.5	d) 115
	ca" is similar to a	•	•
a) small boat	b) big boat	c) small ship	d) big ship
· ·	about to con		
a) two years	b) two and a half year	-	d) four years
4/ 4/14/	and a nan yea	5 C/ tillee years	a,, car,



6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There is a bridge	the river.		0
a) cross	b) across	c) course	d) a course
2. I don't like that toy	. It's very		
	b) modern	c) ugly	d) good
	to your friends.		
a) polite	b) impolite	c) bad	d) ugly
4. What's your	of our new Englis	h teacher?	
a) view	b) opinion	c) sight	d) show
5. The Tahya Masr Brid	ge has afloo	r, so you can see the ri	ver under your feet!
a) wood	b) metal	c) glass	d) gold
6. Evening comes wh	nen sets.		
a) sunrays	1.4	c) sunrise	d) the sun
7. Many people enjo	y the beautiful	of the Nile.	
a) opinion			d) cave
8. The day	y at the market is Frida	y.	WANTE
a) busy	b) busiest	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	d) most busy
9. Some of the	buildings in the w	orld are also the mos	t beautiful. (WB)
a) most old	b) more old	c) oldest	d) older
10. Basmala is one of .	people I kno	ow.	
a) the friendly	b) the most friendly	c) the friendliest	d) friendly
Read and correct	the underlined word	S:	
1. This is the better re	estaurant I know.		()
2. Who has the faster			(,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
	I. She looks even <u>bad</u> t	han last week.	()
4. Friends are import	ant than money.		()
Write a paragraph	n of EIGHTY (80) word		
	"The Tahya Mas	r Bridge"	
	. 0 1 4 6 7 7 7 1 4 11 1 4 5 4 5 4 1 1 1 2 4 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5	*******************************	***********************************
***************************************		*******************************	
*********			***************************************
#40 00 BGA1306 === 1 × 1000 100 b1 1 h4 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1			doc crirove
*******************************		*************************	*************

SB pages 19 & 20, WB pages 81 & 82

Lesson	SB pages 1
5&6	Vanabulary
	Vocabulary

دات الرئيسية	المقر
historical objects نیاء تاریخیة	کنز treasure کنز
design (ed)	يرحب ب welcome (d) يرحب ب
entrance عمل	
رز (۱۰۰ عام) century	قيم/ دو قيمة
column 294	دراجة بارية motorbike عا
يل الإرشاد guide book	کاتب writer
car park وقف السيارات	مشمس sunny مو
the Karnak Temple ىدالكرنك	the Hypostyle Hall مع
Habu Temple والم	ه Germany العانيا
collection تموعة	للغة الهيروغلىفية hieroglyphics مج
ررشید the Rosetta Stone	المحكمة الكبرى the Great Court حج
isteryl De	
during	ومع ذلك however أثثا
main idea رة رئيسية	لإنترنت the internet فك
ورة مياه fountain	نام expressions نام
1	historical objects design (ed) مممه entrance محله century (مله ۱۰۰۱) معهم guide book معهم car park معابرات the Karnak Temple معهم بد هابو حالكرنك Habu Temple معهم collection معهم during معهم

يقضى اجازة

يعرض أرء

▶ a holiday

show > opinions

have

get busier	تصبح أكثر ازدهامًا
make ▶ notes	يدون ملاحظات



Prepositions			وت الجر	الا	
popular for	مشھور ب	lateron	لاحقا/في وقت لاحق	similar to	مشابه ل
popular with	محبوب لدی	allow to	يسمح بان	reason for	بېښ ل
		space for	مساحة ل	(be) able to + inf.	يكون قادرًا أن
expect to	1		1 1 1 1 1	refer to	يشير إلى
look after	یعتنی ب	for the first	للمرة الأولى time	Jeici Co	

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs عبر المسلمة عملانية الأسعال عبر المسلمة					
	resent	Past simple	Past participle		
teach	يُعلم/ يُحرس	taught	taught		
have/has	يمتلك/ لديه	had	had		
show	يعرض/ يبين/ يوضح	showed	shown		

Language Notes

However

ومع ذلك (تستخدم للتمبير عن التناقض في المعني)

He is very strong. However, he can't carry this box.

فعل مفرد + اسم جمع + one of

واحد من

One of the most beautiful parts of the museum is the entrance.

Check Point



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. Mona got up early., she went to school late.
 - a) So
- b) As

- c) However
- d) Because

- 2. One of the windowsold.
 - a) looks
- b) look
- c) looking
- d) are looking

Write It right

How to write about "Historical places in Egypt"
- كنفية الكتابة عن "الأماكن التاريخية في مصر

- Egypt has many historical places which tourists like to visit.
- -These places are in many cities like (اسماء المدن).
- -The (اسم المكان) has a lot of historical objects.
- -The (السنة) welcomed its first visitors in (السنة).
- -There are other places like (اسم أماكن أخرى).

A paragraph is a group of related sentences that present one topic or one idea.

PROPERTY.

العقرة هي مجموعة الحمل التي تقدم موضوعًا او فكرة واحدة



Historical places in Egypt

Egypt has a lot of historical places which tourists like to visit. These places are in many cities like Cairo, G za, Aswan Luxor. The Egyptian Museum has a lot of historical objects. They are the most valuable treasures. The Grand Egyptian Museum welcomed its first visitors in 2019. One of the most beautiful parts of the museum is the entrance, with its big plants and statues. There are other places like the Valley of the Kings in Luxor, the Karnak Temple and the Habu Temple.

Now.	vour	turn:
1444	,	

حان دورك الأن:

"The Karnak Temple"				
Egypt has many h	storical places.			
-	The state of the s			
,				
C 45° (#1 UEF = P			
, ,				



Reading ____

Pre-reading question: - When did the oldest museum in Cairo open?

2. Read the text. What is the main idea of the article?

SB page 19

The Grand Egyptian Museum

- 1) The oldest museum in Cairo opened in 1835. There were more than 160,000 of Egypt's most valuable treasures (2) on display (3). However, the museum did not have space (4) for 100,000 other objects. In 2002, there was a competition (5) to design a bigger and more modern museum. The competition had 1,557 designs from more than 80 different countries.
- 2) The Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM) welcomed its first visitors (6) in 2019. It is further from the city centre than the old
- museum, but only two kilometres from the pyramids at Giza. It has more space for valuable objects⁽⁷⁾, more people can see them and it is able to look after the objects really well.
- 3) One of the most beautiful parts of the museum is the entrance (8), with its big plants and statues (9). The biggest is that of Ramses II, which is 12-metres high.
- 4) Moving these objects from the old museum in Tahrir to complete the Grand Egyptian Museum is not easy.

It is expected to take many years of hard work.

Post-reading question: - Where is the Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM)?





- المتحف المصرى الكبير (1)
- كنوز قيمة (2)
- العرض (3)
- فراغ (4)
- منافسة/مسابقة (5)
- زائرون (6)
- أشياء قيمة (7)
- مدخل (8)
- تماثيل (9)

Reading

Pre-reading question: Describe the Hypostyle Hall

2. Read the text again and answer the questions.

We had a wonderful holiday in Egypt. These are my opinions about three of the most interesting places.

The Valley of the Kings⁽¹⁾ in Luxor is one of the most popular places for tourists to visit. We went early because that is the quietest time. My brother said, "This is fantastic⁽²⁾!" I am sure it gets busier later on during the day.



SB page 20

- وادي الملوك (1)
- منعش (2)
- معبد الكرنك (3)
- قاعة الأعمدة (4)
- مترمربع (5)
- معبدهایو (6)

The biggest place we went to was the Karnak Temple (3). My favourite part was the Hypostyle Hall (4), a 5,000-square-metre (5) "room" with 134 stone columns. I think it was more crowded than the Valley of the Kings.



In my opinion, the best and quietest place we visited was Habu Temple⁽⁶⁾. It has columns similar to those at Karnak, but because it is less crowded, you can study them for longer.



Post-reading question:

- What do you think of Habu Temple?



Lesson

Reading



1. Complete the text with the superlative form of these adjectives.

WB page 81

The British Museum

The British Museum (1) in London is the oldest public (2) museum in the world. It opened in 1759 and now has more than 13 million objects. About six million visitors go there every year.



- المتحف البريطاني (1)
- عام (2)
- مجموعة (3)
- اللقة الميروغليفية (5)
- المحكمة الكبري (6)

The museum has the biggest collection of Egyptian objects outside Egypt. One of its *most important* objects is the Rosetta Stone 4). This arrived at the museum in 1802. The writing on the stone is in three different languages. This allowed people to understand ancient Egyptian hieroglyphics (5) for the first time.

In my opinion, the most beautiful part of the museum is the Great Court (6). Its big glass room makes it the largest covered square in Europe. It opened in 2000, so it is also the *most modern* part of the museum.

Reading



Al Azhar Park is the largest and the most beautiful park in Cairo. It is much larger than the small park near my house.

That park has a few trees and plants and I enjoy going there after school. You can spend an hour or two in that



WB page 82

park, but you can spend a lot of time at Al Azhar Park. The trees there are taller and it has more plants. It also has fountains, a lake and cafés, too. I like going there because there is space for all our family to have a big picnic at the weekends! My sister always says, "I love it here".

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the corre	ct answer from a, b, c	or d:	
1. The Egyptian Mus	eum is full of a lot of "	objects.	
a) ugly	b) adventurous	c) historian	d) historical
2. There are a lot of o	lothes on	in the shop by my ho	
a) display	b) opinion	c) design	d) style
	at school.		
a) column	b) expression	c) competition	d) punctuation
4. We should	our visitors and ı	meet them in a friend	
a) finish	b) welcome	c) design	d) leave
5. My father leaves h	is car in the car	managani seceso - t	
a) break	b) brake	c) bark	d) park
6. The weather is	today. You s	hould take your sung	lasses.
	b) noisy		
7. The British muse	um has the biggest .	of Egypti	an objects outside
Egypt.			
	b) suspensions		
8. The Valley of the h	(ings in Luxor is one o	f the most	places for tourists
to visit.			
a) scary	b) bad	c) popular	d) boring
9. I will visit my uncl	e today. Later	, I'll meet my frie	nds.
a) on	b) in	c) at	d) of
0. Tourists try to fin	d a to ge	t enough informatio	on about the places
they are visiting.			
	b) guide book	c) souvenir	d) postcard
	language of ancient l	Egyptians.	
a) Hieroglyphics		c) Arabic	d) French
2. "GEM" stands for			(6)
a) The temple at A		b) The Valley o	f the Kings
c) The Karnak Ten			gyptian Museum
C) 1110 1900 1000 1000		u/ me orano z	3/1

Lessens 516

General Exercises

and a comment of	Abrilla and a second			
(Com	plete the follow	wing dialogue:		
Anas	:Welcome to E	gypt. Is this your first	visit to Egypt?	
Tourist	: Thank you. Ye	s. And I'm very happy	here.	_
Anas	: (1)	, gq y 20 x ng 444.	places did you v	risit here?
Tourist	: I visited the P	yramids and the Gran	d Egyptian (2)	***************************************
Anas	:Wow! Fantast	, ic. How (3)		will you stay
	in Egypt?			
	: I'll stay for two			
Anas	: (4)	266 b644 e4 0) (60 g 1) () y a 20 4 1 27 A 1 3 1 4 5 1 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2	you going to visit	other cities?
Tourist	: Yes, sure. I'm g	going to visit Luxor.		
Anas		vill you visit there?		
Tourist	: I'll visit the Ka	rnak (5)		11014 Þ
Anas	: Have a nice ti	me in Egypt.		
Choo	se the correct	answer from a, b, c o	rd:	
1. A	is a peri	od of one hundred ye	ears.	
a) de	cade	b) century	c) month	d) week
2. I wen	t to the Grand E	gyptian Museum and	saw many	there.
a) trea	asures	b) subjects	c) competitions	d) musicians
3. What	is your reason .	coming late	e?	
a) of		b) at	c) for	d) with
4. I can't	put this book i	n my bag. There isn't e	enough	for it.
a) pied	ce	b) spice	c) peace	d) space
5. We bo	ught a new ho	use with a big	d was post colors of	
a) hole	2	b) cave	c) entrance	d) hill
6. My gra	andfather alway	/s gives me	advice. It is very ι	ıseful.
a) help		b) valuable	c) terrible	d) ugly
_		ng stories. He wants t	o be a	

b) worker

c) writer

d) waiter

a) teacher

The amazing world around us

a) young b) more young c) younger d) the youngest 9. Mountain climbing is
a) the more b) more c) most d) the most 10. Which is difficult subject at school? a) the most b) the more c) most d) more 3 Read and correct the underlined words: 1. My grandmother is the older in our family. 2. You are safe here than there.
10. Which is
a) the most b) the more c) most d) more Read and correct the underlined words: 1. My grandmother is the <u>older</u> in our family. 2. You are <u>safe</u> here than there.
3 Read and correct the underlined words: 1. My grandmother is the <u>older</u> in our family. 2. You are <u>safe</u> here than there. (
1. My grandmother is the <u>older</u> in our family. (
2. You are <u>safe</u> here than there. ()
3. It is the large shop in our town.
4. Boody is good than Sandy.
Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:
"The Grand Egyptian Museum"

\$

114044148750014841534549454448744487444444448714555145551417411441144744615041447451405150419444190160419441901
The second secon
Control of the Contro
مجموعة مختارة من المقالات المميزة
مل خلال مدونة الأضواء ادخل على: www.aładwaa.com
WWW.Biddings



Videoscript >

- Do you know about the seven wonders(1) of the ancient world?

People thought that they were the most fantastic buildings in the world. Many of them were in or near Egypt.

For many centuries⁽²⁾, this Lighthouse of Alexandria⁽³⁾ was the tallest building ever made.

The sea was dangerous for boats because there were a lot of rocks near Alexandria. The lighthouse warned⁽⁴⁾ boats about the rocks. This was a very important invention⁽⁵⁾.

We use similar technology today. We still use lighthouses to warn boats about rocks. Boats are safer now thanks to the work of the ancient Egyptians.

The Hanging Gardens of Babylon⁽⁶⁾ were probably in modern day Iraq. These were beautiful gardens around a huge palace⁽⁷⁾.

The Statue of Zeus⁽⁸⁾ was in ancient Greece⁽⁹⁾. This was believed to be the biggest statue in the world. Another wonder of the world was the Colossus of Rhodes⁽¹⁰⁾. This was another big statue in ancient Greece.

The Ancient Greeks also built the Temple of Artemis⁽¹⁾... and the Tomb of Mausolus.

Time and earthquakes⁽¹²⁾ destroyed⁽¹³⁾ most of these wonders of the world.

After an earthquake in Alexandria, they built Fort Qaitbay at the same place as the Lighthouse of Alexandria and used many stones from the same building.

Today, only the Great Pyramid of Giza remains. Experts believe that this was the first ancient wonder because it is older than the others.

Every year, millions of people come to see the pyramids of Egypt. They are some of the most visited tourist attractions. (4) anywhere.

For many people, the Great Pyramid of Giza is also a wonder of the modern world. Which building do you like the best? Why?

SB page 20

- عجائب (1)
- قرون (2)
- منارة الإسكندرية (3)
- يحذر (4)
- (5) létrole
- حداثق بابل المعلقة (6)
- قصر شخم (7)
- تمثال زيوس (8)
- اليونان (9)
- تمثال رویس (10)
- معبد ارتمیس (11)
- زلازل (12),
- يدمر (13)
- عوامل جذب (14)

Unit 8 Review

Vocabulary

Key Vocab	ulari)	nakad B. B. B. B. B. Janes in Kangpula <u>n mangkatan</u>	نرزاد الإنرسة		
amazing	مذهل/منهش	bridge	جسر/ <mark>کوب</mark> ری	tunnel	نفق
pyramid	هرم	tower	برج	kilometre (km)	كيلومتر
country/cou	بلد/بلاد ntries	metre (m)	متر	How deep?	کم عمق٬
How wide?	كم عرض/اتساع؟	How long?	كم طول/كم المدة؟	How many?	كم عدد؟
How high?	كم ارتعاع؟	How old?	کم عمر'	across	عبر
suspension	منعلق	cross (ed)	يعبر/يمر على	achievement	إنجار
glass floor	أرضية رجاجية	achieve (d)	ينجز يحقق	on display عرض	معروض/في ال
	ptian Museum المتحم المصري الدّ	historical ob	ojects اشیاء تاریخیة	treasure	کنز
space	مساحة/فراغ/فصاء	design (ed)	بصمم	welcome (d)	يرحب بـ
competition	مرافسة/ مسابقة	entrance	مدخل	statue	نمثال
city centre	وسط المدينة	collection	مخموعة	valuable	قيم/ذو قيمة
protect (ed)	يحمي	car park	موقف السيارات	sunny	مشمس
century	ا قرن ۲۰۰۱ عام)	column	عمود	motorbike	دراجة ناربة
square metre	متر مربع	city	عدينة	hieroglyphics یفیة	اللغة الهيروغل





Adjectives	Comparative	Superlative
Short	er + than + الصفة القصيرة	est + الصفة القصيرة + est
adjectives - The Ni	- The Nile river is longer than the Amazon.	- Ali is the tallest boy in our cla
Long	more/less + الصفة الطويـة + than	the most/the least + الصفة الطويلة
adjectives	- The lion is more dangerous than the dog.	-This is the least popular book the library.



السؤال عن القياسات

- 1. How long is the Cairo-Alexandria desert road?
- * It is 220 kilometres long.

2. How deep is Lake Baikal in Russia?

- * It is 1,642 metres deep.
- 3. How high is Abraj Al-Bait Clock Tower in Saudi Arabia? * It's 601 metres high.
- 4. How old is the Luxor Temple?

* It's just under 3,500 years old.

السؤال والإجابة لعمل مقارنات

- Which pyramid is taller, the Great Pyramid of Giza or the Red Pyramid?
- I think the Great Pyramid of Giza is taller.

السؤال عن الرأى

- What's your opinion of the Tahya Masr Bridge?
- I think the Tahya Masr Bridge is the greatest project in Egypt.

Test 2

Based on Unit 8

🕕 Listen	and choose the correct answe	r from a, b, c or d: (نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)
1. When	did the Grand Egyptian Museum	open?
a) In 20)17.	b) In 2018.
c) In 20	19.	d) In 2016.
2. How fa	r is it from the pyramids at Giza	?
a) 20 ki	m.	b) 12 km.
c) 2 km		d) 22 km.
3. Which i	s nearer to the city centre, the Gra	and Egyptian Museum or the old museum?
a) The (Grand Egyptian Museum.	b) The old museum.
c) None	e of them.	d) Both of them.
4. Which	one has more space?	
a) The (Grand Egyptian Museum.	b) The old museum.
c) None	e of them.	d) Both of them.
Tarak I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I	ete the following dialogue:	
Tassneen	n: Did you hear about our scho	ol's plan to stop using mobiles at school?
Marwa	: Yes, I (1)	del i i del de
Tassneen	n: What do you think about it?	
Marwa	: Well, I (2)	that's right.
Tassneen	n: Why do you think so?	
Marwa	: Mobiles cause so much trou	
Tassneen	n : I (3)	
Marwa	: Sure. I think they cause serio	
Tassneen	: I'm not (4)	
Marwa	: In my (5)	we shouldn't use mobiles
	at school.	



3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Cairo is a big city. It is the capital of Egypt. About twenty million people live there. There are a lot of gardens where families can go and spend nice time. There are also a lot of restaurants where you can have delicious meals and different dishes. It is always visited by tourists from all over the world. They enjoy visiting ancient places. They visit the Egyptian Museum to see the ancient treasures and statues. They also visit the Cairo Tower where they can have a look on the whole city.

1110)		•	
A) Answer the followi			
1. What's the capital	of Egypt?	ddf416170=4 b=444177= 888060==67774824157481550==864270	4 h a sii qardaqaqap yoʻbbaq oʻa i baa qali ild bʻa'li bii bii ba'la'li
2. Where can tourist	s have a look on th	ne city of Cairo?	. Jappyén i pyrą – hdłącą piej respedojnáchie i półęchnichyce
3. Why do you think	Cairo is a crowded	d city?	. 4410774046174444114444444444444444444444
B) Choose the correct	answer from a, b	, c or d:	
4. "Delicious" means	printed imposition polynomia programme a		
a) bad	b) nasty	c) tasty	d) dusty
5. About	million people	ive in Cairo.	
a) twenty	b) thirty	c) forty	d) sixty
6. The underlined pr	onoun <u>"They</u> " refe	rs to	
a) Egyptians	b) places	c) tourists	d) meals
Choose the correct	t answer from a,	b, c or d:	
1. How	is the Qasr al-Nil (Bridge?	
a) long	b) many	c) tall	d) often
2 come	e from different co	untries to enjoy visiti	ng historical places.
a) Tourists	b) Pyramids	c) Tours	d) Partners
3. Cairo's streets are a	lways	tithen N	
a) far	b) empty	c)-busy	d) tall
4. Mona's school is		ever, she goes on foot	t.
a) near	b) far	c) old	d) high
5. We should look	our his	torical places.	_
a) out	b) at	c) after	d) like

The amazing world around us

6. How	is the car park? It	s two metres under the	ground. SB
a) deep	b) long	c) old	d) wide
7.1 wi	th your opinion. I h	ave another one.	
a) accept	b) agree	c) disagree	d) think
8. February is	month of t	he year.	
a) shortest	b) short	c) most short	d) the shortest
9. A: What's	river in the v	vorld? B: The Nile.	
a) the longest	b) the longer	c) longest	d) longer
10. Which is	Egypt or Ger	many?	
a) hot	b) hottest	c) hotter	d) hotter than
Read and correc	t the underlined w	vords:	
1. The Great Pyram	id is short than the	Cairo Tower.	(**************************************
2. The weather this	summer is even ba	d than last summer.	()
3. Football is popul	ar than basketball.		(,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
4. The Tahya Masr F	Bridge is about 67 n	netres <u>old</u> .	(
6 Write a paragra	ph of EIGHTY (80)	words on:	
	"Al A	zhar park"	
***************************************		, o . 4DD - 170 - 4AA4	***************************************
******************	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	y d o 1220 a 1777 a	
*************************		***************************************	\$444**********************************
***********************	,, 4 a ; b = 1 ; 0 0 1 ; 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0		***************************************
\$45> 67 64420}}6117601744>	, 4.64 ; 24 77 7 7 6 6 7 7 2 6 4 2 7 6 6 6 6 7 1 2 6 1 2 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7	04177	
************************	045562v01f441542159010v04004444444444	94*9}}\$\$\$124199994+1141445+1>}459419195\$(\$\$\$14419	***************************************
	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	00[0014415000016190045545665.445997.4456444645	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	***************************************	
*****************			***************************************
	(Albas B bbs a bbs a g 4000 b 1 8 b 8 1 b 4 = 40 2 7 1 5 b + - b	~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •



SB pages 22 & 23, WB page 84



Lesson

Key Vocabulary	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	المفرداتاالرئيسين	
adventure	مغامرة	article	مقال
activities	أنشطة		
Sį	ports	الرياضات	
Water sports	ریاضات مائی	Mountain sports	رياضات الجبال
diving	الغطس/الغوص	rock climbing	تسلق الصخور
windsurfing	ركوب الأمواج	trekking	الارتحال/التجوال
sailing	الإبحار	mountain biking	ركوب الدراجات في الجبل
kayaking	التجديف	zip lining	الانزلاق بالحبل

Additional Vocabulary	<u>in industiling and and a</u> New July 12 minutes and and a	्राम्याक्ष्या न्त्री भूत्		
Aount Catherine جبل کاترین	scary	مُخيف	try (y) (ied)	يجرب
the future المستقبل	Sinai	. ولنيس	no way	مستحيل
مدينة دهب Dahab	fun	مرح/ممتع		

Language Expressions		التغتارات التعقا	
look ▶ + adj.	يبدو	There's so much to do.	منالك الكثير لفعله.
play ▶ a game	يلعب لعبة		

Prepositions (حروف الجز	
in the afternoon	بعد الظهيرة	would like to + inf.	يود ان
plans for	خطط ا	in the morning	فىالصباح

(Care		Commence of the Commence of th	، غين ال	علنت الابتعال	
in the second second	f Irregular Verb	S unit	The last land	THE RESERVE OF THE PARTY OF THE	
	Sill and the same of the same	the water without the winds of any and a well-day and the same time of		a managina i mila	i

Conjugations	of Irregular	Past simple	Past participle
find	يجد	found	found
say	يقول	said	said

Language Notes

go + (V + ing)

تُستخدم، (go) مع الألعاب الرياضية التي تنتهي بـ (ing).

trekking

diving

kayaking

zip lining

go

windsurfing

mountain biking

sailing

rock climbing

- Hany went diving last year.
- Hassan went windsurfing with his family.

ويمكن استخدام (try) أيضاً

- Imad would like to try zip lining.
- I'm not going to try windsurfing.

Check Point



- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1. We're not going to kayaking.
 - a) play

b) do

c) go

d) make

- 2. Is she going to rock climbing?
 - a) have

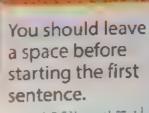
- b) make
- c) play
- d) try

Write it right

How to write about your future plans

كبقية الكتابة عن خططك المستقبئية

- We should all plan for our future.
- I planned for (ميوم لمبره)
- It will be a busy (المجم السدد) with a lot of things to do.
- I'm going to (البيدن الدي سنميا بية)
- I'm going to (الأمعال التي ستقوم بها)
- I hope it will be a good trip.



WHEN PER

- يجب أن تترك مسافة قبل كمالة الأسلسة



My plan for tomorrow

We should all plan for our future. This is my plan for tomorrow. Tomorrow will be a busy day with lots of things to do. Firstly, I'm going to get up at six as usual. Then, I'm going to have my breakfast before I go to school. I'm going to meet my friends before lessons start. I usually go home at one o'clock. When I get home, my father is going to take us to Sinai. I'm going to go diving there. My sister would like to try kayaking. My brother is going to go rock climbing. I hope it will be a wonderful trip.

Now,	your	turn:
------	------	-------

حان دورك الأن:

	"Your plan for the weekend"
+ 4 + 1	(D 49) "
. 11,00 0 1 1 60 1	so the large by the file of the control of the file of the control
PE 41 TFF5 14 E4	the state of the s
	d entry to a to the common and the c
b a brables bas p gods	CONTROL OF STREET THE STREET STREET STREET STREET STREET STREET STREET STREET
41 47 6 21 41 1 4 11+5	fig. then accordately to a to the electrical transfer to a country of a country of the content o



Listening

Pre-listening question:

What kind of adventure sports do you like?

1. Listen to Hassan and Imad. Which of the quiz activities do they talk about?

SB page 23

Imad: What are you looking at, Hassan?

Hassan: Hi Imad. It's an article(1) about

adventure(2) sports in Egypt.

lmad : Oh yes! Last year, I went diving(3)

in the Red Sea. It was amazing!

Hassan: I'd love to do that. I'd like to try windsurfing(4), too.

Imad : What about rock climbing(5)?

Hassan: I don't know. I think rock climbing is a

bit dangerous, but I like trekking (6) in the

mountains.

lmad : Me, too! I like the mountains. I'm going to

visit Sinai with my family in the holidays.

Hassan: Are you going to try mountain biking(1), Imad?

imad: No, I'm not going to do anything scary. It is

very difficult to ride a bike in the mountains.

Hassan: I think you're right. Zip lining. looks scary, too.

Imad : I think it looks fun! I'm going to try it one day!

Hassan: Really? No way!

Post-listening question:

- What does Imad think about zip lining?







ركوب الأمواج (4)

تسلق الصخور (5)

الترحال/التجوال (6)

ركوب للمراجات في الجبال (7)

الانزلاق بالحبل (8)











Reading

Pre-reading question: What is Reem going a de-

3. Read the email and answer the question.

I'm in Dahab with my family. 🟸 🙂 There's

to go trekking(1) in the mountains. I'm not going

SB page 23

ركوب الأمواج (4)

الارتحال/التجوال (1)

تسلق الصخور (2)

so much to do here! This afternoon, we're going

to try rock climbing(2). It's too scary(3)! Tomorrow, we're going to try windsurfing(4) in the morning

and in the afternoon, we're going to go diving! 😂 We're not going to go kayaking(5). There is no time! 😕

Love, Reem

Hi Eman!

Lesson

Lesson



Post-reading question: - Is Reem going to go kayaking? Why?

sening

Pro- har option spring wife.

4. Listen to Mustafa and Hazem playing a game. Which bags do they choose?

SB page 23

Mustafa: I'm going to go to the mountains. Hazem: OK. Are you going to go trekking?

Mustafa: No, I'm not.

Hazem : Are you going to go rock climbing?

Mustafa: Yes, I am!

Hazem: Your bag is ... D.

Mustafa: That's right.

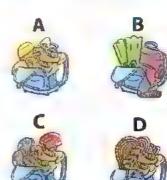
Hazem: My turn. I'm going to the beach. Mustafa: Are you going to go kayaking?

Hazem : No. I'm not.

Mustafa: Are you going to go diving?

Hazem : Yes, I am.

Mustafa: Your bag is ... B.









Post-listening question: - What do you think you will need when you go kayaking?



Vocabulary Exercises

1	Choose the correct a	answer from a, b,	cord:	
	1. lmad divi	ng last year.		SB
	a) had	b) played	c) did	d) went
	2. We can't go	today because t	here is no wind!	WB
	a) diving	b) windsurfing		d) biking
	3. I love going	to go down rive	rs. It's usually very	quiet! WB
	a) kayaking	b) trekking	c) biking	d) lining
	4. We sometimes go	for two days or	more, usually acro	oss the desert. WB
	a) diving	b) windsurfing	_	d) kayaking
	5. You should	a sport to be fit.		
	a) go	b) try	c) take	d) make
	6. My father is the perso	n who plans	our future.	
	a) at	b)to	c) in	d)for
,	7. My mother thinks	is very dar	ngerous.	
	a) football	b) rock climbing	c) chess	d) tennis
1	8. My sister didn't say a v	vord when she cam	e from school. She	·very sad.
	a) took	b)looked	c) enjoyed	d)talked
9	9. If you don't have a go	od bike, you can't g	go	
	a) rock climbing	b) trekking	c)zip lining	d) mountain biking
10). Rock climbing and tre	kking are	sports.	
	a) water	b) sea	c) air	d) mountain
11	. The sport of zip lining	looks		
	a) scared	b) scary	c) afraid	d)frightened
2	is an excit	ing experience wh	nen something u	nusual or dangerous
	happens.			
	a) Adventure	b)Tent	c)Trip	d)Guide

Language

"going to" for future plans

• We use "going to" when we already know our plans for the future.

نستخدم (.going to + inf) عندما نعرف بالفعل خططنا للمستقبل.



I am going to **visit** Sinai. I am not going to **do** anything scary.

My dad is going to **climb** a mountain. My dad isn't going to **go** diving.

We are going to **try** rock climbing. We aren't going to **go** kayaking.

1. Yes/No questions



A: Are your brothers going to try diving?

uestion) السؤال

Form

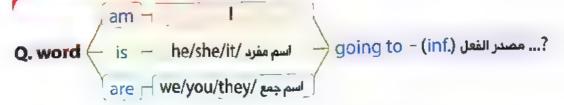
التكوين

B: Yes, they are. / B: No, they aren't.

A: Is your father going to take you to the stadium?

B: Yes, he, is. / **B:** No, he isn't.

2. Wh-questions:



-What are you going to **do** tomorrow afternoon?

I'm going to watch a football match on TV.



Language Exercises

THE STATE OF THE S	Choose the corre	ect answer from a, b,	c or d:		
1		o travel home by bus a			-WB
		b) Are you	c) Do you	d) You do	
2	. What are you goir	ng to tomorr	ow?		WB
	a) wearing	b) worn	c) wore	d) wear	
3	. What are you	do next Saturda	y?		WB
	a) going to	b) going	c) go	d) go to	
4	. We goin	g to have a party this	weekend.		
	a) do	b) will	c) have	d) are	
5	. You aren't going	your cousin t	his week.		
	a) to visit	b) visit	c) visiting	d) visited	
6	going to	o open a new shop he	re?		
	a) He is	b) He isn't	c) He is not	d) Is he	
7	. Are you going to	Spanish befo	ore your holiday?		
	a) learn .	b) learning	c) learned	d) learns	
8	. Where are you	to go for lunch	?		
	a) are going to	b) are going	c) going	d) going to	
9	. We have	a holiday this year. We	e don't have enough	money for it.	
	a) are going	b) aren't going	c) are going to	d) aren't goi	ng to
	Read and correc	t the underlined wor	'ds:		
1	. I am going to bou	ight some milk this af	ternoon.	()	
2	. Mary going to ph	one her mum because	e she's late.	()	
3	. We are going <u>do</u> d	our homework later.		()	
4	. Mr Said isn't <u>go</u> to	stay at home tomorr	ow.	()	
5.	A: What are your	plans for tomorrow?	•		
	B: Well, I <u>will</u> clim	b that mountain ove	er there.	()	0



Vocabulary

← Key Vocabi	ilary	đị).	فردات الرنيس	<u>مالة</u>	
tent	خيمة	equipment	معدات	skill	مهارة
guide	مرشد	nearly	تقريبًا	Bedouin	بدوی/بدویة
date	تاريخ (اليوم)	journey	رحلة	argument	جدال
mountain cli	mbing تسلق الجبال	important	هام/مهم	negotiate (d)	يتفاوض

Additional V	ocabulary	å	تفردات الاضاف	all)———	
travel (led)	يسافر	webpage -	صفحة على الإنترنية	finish (ed)	ينمى/ينتمى
camel	جمل	carry (y) (ied)	يحمل	plan	خطة
arrive (d)	يصل	carefully	بحرص	each other	بعضهم البعض
	Places			الأماكر	
Ras Shetan	رأس شيطان	Ein Kidd	واحة عين كيد	the Red Sea	البحر الأحمر
Serabit el Khao	dem سرابيط الخادم	St Catherine	سانت كاترين		

Lang	uage	Expressions	्राक्षा है। विद्या	
have	•	a guide		يحصل على مرشد
take	•	43 days		يستغرق ٤٣ يومًا
find	•	the way		يجد الطريق
go	•	sailing down the Nile	e	ينعب للإبحار في النيل



Prepositions	a da antico de la companio de la co	حروف الجر	
through mountains	عبر/ خلال الجبال	go trekking across	يترحل عبر
stay with	يبقى/ يقيم مع	sleep in a tent	پنام فی خیمة
need to + inf.	يحتاج أن	on the third of March	في الثالث من مارس
from to	من إلى	try to + inf.	يحاول أن

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs قط المُقطَال عبد المُقطَال المُقطَال عبد المُقطَال المُقطَال المُقطِل المُقطِل			
2.00	Ricesent	Past simple	Para midiciple
sleep	بماني	slept	slept
find	عخد	found	found
leave	يترك/يغادر	left	left
win	يموز/يكسب	won	won

Language Notes

arrive in + ...

يصل إلى + (مكان كبير) (دولة / مدينة)

يصل إلى (مكان محدد داخل المدينة) (مطار/ مكتب/بيت/ متحف/ مدرسة)

- My father arrived in London last week.
- He is going to arrive at the airport tomorrow.

It's + adj. + to + inf.

إنه من

It is important to do your homework.

Ordinal numbers

الأعداد الترتيبية

 We add a (th) to the end of a cardinal number to make it an ordinal number except for the spelling exceptions below:

عند تحويل رقم عادي لعدد ترتيبي يتم عادة إضافة (th) في نهاية الرقم فيما عدا بعض الأرقام بسبب، نهاياتها:

Adventure!



لاحظ كتابة وقراءة التاريخ:

d) for

We write:	We say:	We write:	We say:
1st March	the first of March	3 rd March	the third of March
2 nd March	the second of March	30 th March	the thirtieth of March

- My uncle is going to arrive on the tenth of April (10th April).
- On the third of March, Ahmed's going to leave Ras Shetan.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My uncle arrivedhis office late.

a) at b) in c) to

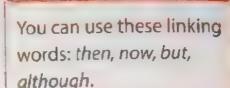
- 2. Monday is day of the week.
 - a) the three b) the third c) three d) third

Write it right

How to write about an adventure sport. گیفیهٔ الگتابهٔ عن ریاضهٔ مفامرات

I like adventure sports.

- There are lots of adventure sports like (اسم الرياضات)
- My favourite adventure sport is (اسم الرياصة)
- In this sport, ا (ما عوم يه)
- ا practise it in (المكان)
- ا usually practise it with (السحص)
- It makes me feel happy.



WHITE PARTY

- عکب سخت م الروابط ساید then, now, but, although



My adventure sport

I like adventure sports. There are lots of adventure sports like rock climbing, windsurfing and zip lining. I like mountain biking. I liked it many years ago when my father bought me my first bike. Today, I am going to go mountain biking with my friend. So, I get dressed and phone my best friend. He is the person who I go mountain biking with. We go to a place that is a forest with mountains. After my friend arrives at my house we make sure that all of the equipment is safe on the bike. With water bottles filled and bikes ready to go, we are off. It makes us feel happy.

your turn:	ورك الأن:
	("Your fayour ite sport")
4. 44.4.4.7. 4.4.4.4	
18 t t t e	No wearyproper to payor . The time that I is never subject of the
4000 \$2 0000000\$1 \$4 \$6 00 \$10 \$10 \$7 \$7 \$	as a second of the second seco
*** \$0 00************ *** * 73 "	d and the still still to the file of the second title second to second the second title second to second the second title
rn vándy far á 77-11111-555	A PERSON OF THE STATE OF ANY DESIGNATION OF ASSESSMENT OF
accommons models to be the the transfer to a	(0 00011 0001 (

مغامرة (1)

خيمة (4)

بدوية (5)

رطة (6)

واحة عين كيد. (7)

جېل سانت كاترين (8)

رأس شيطان (2)

سرابيط الخائم (3)

Lesson 2

Reading

pre-reading question: - Do you know any places in has Sheran

1. Read Ahmed's plans. When is he going to climb Mount Catherine and what do you think a tent is?

SB page 24

My Trekking Adventure(1)

By Ahmed

Next year, I'm going to go trekking across Sinai. It's going to be a big adventure! I'm going to travel nearly 500 kilometres through mountains from Ras Shetan⁽²⁾ to Serabit el Khadem⁽³⁾. I'm going to sleep in a tent⁽⁴⁾ and stay with Bedouin⁽⁵⁾ families. I'm going to have a guide to help me find the way and a camel to carry food and water. The journey⁽⁶⁾ is going to take me 43 days.

Here's my plan:

3rd March leave Ras Shetan

14th March arrive at Ein Kidd⁽⁷⁾

30th March arrive at St Catherine

1st April climb Mount Catherine(8)

15th April arrive at Serabit El Khadem





Post-reading question: - What is Ahmed going to do on 30th March?

Listening ____

5. Listen to Mariam talking about her plan. Complete her notes.

SB page 25

Mariam: Next year, I'm going to go sailing⁽¹⁾ down the Nile with my family. We're going to travel from Aswan to Luxor. We're going to leave Aswan on 28th December, we're going to arrive in Luxor on 4th January.



الإيجار (1)



Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct	t answer from a, b,	c or d:	
1. A is a po	erson who shows a p	lace to tourists.	WB
a) visitor	b) pilot	c) nurse	d) guide
2. Ais son	nething you sleep in	when you go camping	WB WB
a) camel	b) guide	c) tent	d) journey
3. They took four day	s to cross the desert.	It was a difficult	WB
a) visit	b) journey	c) tent	d) guide
4. We went to Sinal a	nd stayed with	families where t	hey live.
a) Bedouin	b) French	c) English	d) Chinese
5. When you go mou	ntain climbing, you s	hould check your	5-55-4-114-1140-14-50 P
a) information	b) machines	c) equipment	d) argument
6. The journey is goir	ng to43 c	lays.	SB
a) try	b) talk	c) take	d) go
7. I'm going to go tre	kkingSin	ai.	
a) course	b) cross	c) a cross	d) across
8. A camel is going to	o food an	d water.	SB
a) ride	b) carry	c) drive	d) try
9. The journey is goi	ng toin A	pril.	:SB
a) take	b) finish	c) try	d) carry
10. Good students list	en to the	ir teachers.	
a) carefully	b) quickly	c) badly	d) carelessly
11. He is going to trav	el March	2 nd .	
a) on	b) in	c) at	d) with

Tip

It is important to negotiate when you need to decide something important with other people. Remember, negotiation is not about winning an argument. Listen carefully to what other people say. You should try to get the best ideas from and for each other.

من المهم أن تتناقش عندما تقرر شيئًا مهمًا مع أشخاص آخرين. تذكر أن التفاوض لا يعنى الفوز في المناقشة. استمع جيدًا إلى ما يقوله الآخرون. حاول الحصول على أفضل الأفكار سواء من خلالك أو من خلال آخرين.

Life Skills

 You are going to go mountain climbing. Choose three things you should take with you.

ستقوم بتسلق جبل، اختر ثلاثة أشياء يجب أن تأخذها معك،

Compare answers with a partner. Negotiate the three most important things to take.



قارن اجاباتك مع شريك. ناقش معه أهم ثلاثة اشياء لأخذها.



Plan your own adventure.

- 1. Work in pairs. Choose an adventure sport from the lesson, or your own ideas.
- 2. Research information about this sport. Where can you do it? What equipment or skills do you need to do it? How long will you need?
- 3. Tell other students about your plan.

Lessons 122

General Exercises

Con	nplete the follow	ring dialogue:		
Ryan	: Yes, I'm (1)	s Friday. Are you goir	to go willust	is weekend? urfing with Nabil,
Tom	: Didn't you go n	nountain climbing las	divi	na in two weeks.
Ryan	: Yes, and we pla	n to (2)	wantbilbhidhlabtradhlihadlihadlihadlihadling Amil m a	sports so much
Tom		ou like (3)	(\$ 116) 14 = 40 40 0 0 0 0 11 0 11 0 1 1 0 1 0 1 1 1 1	
	I guess it's dang			
	: But for me, it's f			
Tom	: Aren't you atrai	d of getting hurt?	4	hat makes it safe
		s some (4)	***************************************	mat makes it saic
	: Have fun this w			
Ryan	: (5),,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	dacabada 66.66.747 b.4 a gii ab dd i Edigolliyd byr eb ab) a byr adaca	very much.	
Cho	ose the correct a	answer from a, b, c o	or d:	
1	is a kind o	f water sports.		
a) N	Mountain climbing	g b) Sailing	c) Zip lining	d) Trekking
2. l'm	going to travel ne	early 500 kilometres .	mountain	s.
a) ti	nrough	b) thorough	c) throw	d) cross
3	is a moun	tain sport.		
a) K	ayaking	b) Diving	c) Rock climbing	d) Windsurfing
4. [diving la	st weekend. It was w	onderful.	
a) w	vent .	b) played	c) did	d) had
5. Whe	en you go trekkin	g across the desert, y	ou need to	a guide.
a) m	nake	b) go	c) have	d) do
6. I car	n't this	box. It's very heavy.		
a) tr	У	b) carry	c) cry	d) curry
7. I usu	ually go	down the Nile.		•
a) m	ountain biking	b) climbing	c) trekking	d) sailing

				Adventure!
	8. Next summer, I	travel to Eng	land.	
3	a) going to	b) am going to		d) going
		going to play tennis thi	s afternoon.	
	a) am	b) is	c) are	d) do
	10. Is Tony going to .	this book?		
	a) read	b) reading	c) reads	d) to read
	Read and correc	t the underlined word	ts:	
	1. Lare not going to	try windsurfing. I can'	t swim.	(# FE D. 4.4.4.4.4.4.4.4.4.4.4.4.4.4.4.4.4.4.
	2. The journey goin	g to start in April.		
	3. What is she going	g to <u>tried</u> tomorrow aft	ernoon?	
	4. You are going to	try rock climbing?		
	Write a paragrap	oh of EIGHTY (80) wor	ds on:	
	,	"A sport you		
	**************************			********************************
	***************************************	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,		,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,

		4345174111111775444444444444444444444444		
		# # \$ \$ 4 1 7 P 7 7 P P P P P P P P P P P P P P P		
			0014017844012744641616161618181878784	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
	######################################			******************************
		*************************************		,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,



Talle and the second	
	ulary

Lessons E & L

Key Vocabular	γ	e – al mys – magami, maga	(bantal)	ورداء ال	可()	
postcard	بطاقة بريدية	a bit		قليلا	protect (ed)	يحمى
towel	غوطة	presentati	on	عرض	railway line	خط سکة حدید
a newspaper	جريدة	challenge		تحدي	transport	مواصلات
British	بريطاني	complete	(d)	یکمل	mirror	مرآة
return (ed)	يعود/يرجع	dry (ied	d)	يجفاريجف	get dressed	يرتدى ملابسه
	Weath	er words	لطقس	، خاصة با	كلمات	
Noun الاسم	Adject	الصفة ive	Noun	الاتما	וע Adjectiv	الصفة e/
rain عطر	rainy	محلير	sun	ىس	sunny شه	مشمس
دابة cloud	cloudy	غائم	wind	5	windy	كثير الرياح
storm قصفة	stormy	عاصف	snow	ĺ	snowy ثلج	ثلجى
fog نباب	foggy	ضبابي				
	Places			(الأماكر	
India	المند	London	***************************************	لندن	the USA ریکیة	الولايات المتحدة الأم
Hong Kong	هونج كوئج	Japan		اليابان	Oman	عمان
South Africa	جنوب إفريقيا	Suez		السويس		

- Additional V	ocabulary		تفردات الإضافية	dl.	
trek (ked)	يترحل	rocks	صخور	dark	داکن/مظلم
the weather	الطقس	excited	منفعل/فرح/متشوق	frightened	خائف
French	اللغة الغرنسية	terrible	فظیع/رهیب	check (ed)	بفحص/يراجع

Languag	(e Expressions	d	اللغوي	رات	nig'illi	
do 🕨	an activity	يؤدى نشاطًا	keep	•	warm	يبقى دافثًا
make 🕨	salad/tea/breakfast نای/الإفطار	يُعد سلطة/يث	take	>	a photo	يلتقط صورة
make P	a mistake	يرتكب خطأ	20110		a challenge	يأذذ تحديًا

/ Prepositions		And the second s	وف الحر	حر دا	
on the way do	wn إ في الطريق لأسفا	at the start of	في بداية	the top of	قمة
come out of	يأتى/يخرج من	dry with	خوم ن	forlunch	على الغداء
a cup of tea	فنجان شای	sit by the fire	يجلس بجانب النار	at sea	فى البدر
around the Wo	orld حول العالم	in 80 days	ً عْی ۸۰ یومًا	put on sung	glasses یرتدی نظارة شمس
get to	يصل إلى	ontime	ً في الوقت المحدد	on a fire	على النار

Words and Opposit	es		الوغيد التنافية	الكلمات		
north شمال	south	جنوب	east	شرق	west	غر ب

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

	Past participle		
يقع	fell over	fallen over	
يصيب/يجرح/يؤذي	hurt	hurt	
	taught	taught	
يتحدث	spoke	spoken	
يبقى/پحتفظ	kept	kept	
	put on	put on	
	resent يقع يصيب-/يجرح/يؤذي يُعلم/يُـدرس	resent Past simple وهر المحدد المحد	

Language Notes

too

أيضًا (في نهاية الجملة المثبتة)

I'm a bit frightened, but I'm excited, too.

sound + adj.

يبدو

The maths homework sounds easy today.

Check Point

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. It sounds to go camping in the desert.
 - a) interesting b) interested
- c) interest
- d) interests

- 2. My sister likes chess and I like it,
 - a) to
- b) so

- c) enough
- d) too

en

Lesson

Reading

Pre-reading question: What did they do yesterday?

1. Read the postcard. Which activity are they going to do SB page 26 tomorrow?

Dear Grandma,

We're really enjoying ourselves on holiday in South Africa(2)! It's beautiful here and there's a lot to do.



- بطانة بريدية (1)
- جنوب إفريقيا (2)
- الترحال (3)
- سمبر (4)
- علصقة (5)
- منخور (6)
- الانزلاق بالحبل (7)

Yesterday was an adventure. We went trekking(3) in the mountains. It was sunny when we started, but when we got to the top of the mountain, we saw dark c ouds(4). On the way down, the rain started! Then there was a storm 5). The rocks (6) were wet and Tamer fell over and hurt himself. But it's OK — his leg is better today.

Tomorrow, the weather is going to be better, so we're going to try zip lining!(2) I'm a bit frightened, but I'm excited, too.

See you soon, Dalia

Post-reading question: - What happened to Tamer?

Listening

Pre-listening question: - What's the weather like today?

- 4. Listen to the descriptions a-d. Which describes the photo in Exercise 1? SB page 26
- It's very sunny(1) and there aren't any clouds in the sky. I think A it's a very hot day.
- There are lots of clouds and they're very dark. I think that b there's going to be a storm.
- It's a sunny day, but there are some clouds in the sky above the mountain. I think it's quite hot(2).
- lt's very foggy.3). I think it's raining. It looks cold.4) and wet.5).

Post-listening question: - How's the weather in winter?

- مشمس (1)
- حار (2)
- ضبابی (3)
- دارد (4)
- مبلل (5)



Lesson

Listening

Pre listening question:

What activities can you do at the desert?

7. Put these pictures in the correct order to tell a story. Then listen to Nader's presentation and check your answers.

SB page 27

- يرتدي ملايسه (1)
- مراة (2)
- يحمى (3)
- مرشد (4)

early and made myself breakfast. Then I got dressed⁽¹⁾. I put on my clothes and looked at myself in the mirror⁽²⁾. I put on a hat and sunglasses to protect⁽³⁾ myself from the sun. At the desert, we met our guide⁽⁴⁾ and we rode with him on our camels. My sister took this photo of herself with her camel. That night, we cooked ourselves dinner on a fire. After dinner, when it got cold, we sat by the fire to keep









Post-listening question:

ourselves warm.

- Where did Nader go last weekend?

Reading

Pre-reading question: - When did Phileas Fogg arrive in London?

1. Look at the picture and read the introduction to Around the World in 80 Days. Which types of transport⁽¹⁾ did people use in 1872? SB page 28

Around the World in 80 Days

by Jules Verne

In 1872, the writer Jules Verne read a newspaper article⁽²⁾ about a new railway line.³⁾ across India. It gave him a great idea for a book. He wrote a story about a British man called Phileas Fogg. He takes a challenge⁽⁴⁾ to travel around⁽⁵⁾ the world in just 80 days. This sounds easy today, but at that time, there were no cars or planes.

المواصلات (1)

- مقال في جريدة (2)
- خط سکة حسد (3)
- تحدى (4)
- يتجول (5)

2. Look at Phileas Fogg's plan and answer the questions.

London to Suez, Egypt	train and ship	7 days
Suez to India	ship	13 days
India to Hong Kong	train and ship	16 days
Hong Kong to Japan	ship	6 days
Japan to the USA	ship	22 days
Across the USA	train	7 days
USA to London	ship	9 days
Leave on 2 nd October	Returen on 21st	December
		The second secon





3. Read the end of the story and circle the correct words.

When Phileas Fogg takes the ship back to London from the USA, there is a big storm at sea and he arrives on London one day late, on 22nd December. But he made a mistake: because he travelled east around the world, it is one day earlier than he thought. So he completes his challenge on time!

Post-reading question: - Do you think travelling around the world in just 80 days is easy nowadays? Why?



Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct ar	iswer from a, b, c or d	4 6	(GD)
1. Phileas Fogg complete	ed hison time	2.	al\ lin a
a) challenge	b) way	c) guide	d) line
2. Phileas Fogg went	the world.		€SB•
a) around	b) a round	c) round	d) a circle
3. We wear sunglasses to	our eyes fro	m the sun.	
a) stay	b) protect	c) dry	d) check
4. The USA was the last.	Phileas Fogg	visited.	
a) village	b) town	c) city	d) country
5. There is a lot of	in the early mornin	g. People can't see w	ell.
a) fog	b) wind	c) rain	d) storm
6. Trains travel on	lines.		
a) railway	b) telephone	c) airway	d) mail
7. To win this game, dor	n'tany mistak	es.	
a) make	b) do	c) take	d) work
8. I looked at myself in t	he		
a) ship	b) mirror	c) wali	d) board
9. At the start of the trel	k, the weather was	It was nice.	
a) stormy	b) foggy	c) sunny	d) snowy
10. My father always read	ds thein the r	morning to know the	news.
a) story	b) newspaper	c) paragraph	d) diary
11. I dressed an	d went out with my fri	ends.	
a) took	b) gave	c) got	d) went
12. Phileasa ch	allenge to travel arour	nd the world in just 80	0 days. 🧶
a) agrees	b) takes	c) gives	d) talks



Reflexive pronouns

الضمائر المنعكسة

• We use reflexive pronouns when the subject and object of a sentence are the same. نستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة عندما يكون فاعل الجملة ومفعولها متماثلين:

Subject pronoun	Reflexive pronoun	Examples
I	myself	I usually go to school by myself.
You (singular)	• yourself	You should do your homework by yourself.
You (plural)	yourselves	Did you clean the house by yourselves?
Не	himself	He hurt himself with the knife.
She	• herself	She looked at herself in a mirror.
lt	• itself	The cat threw the ball itself.
We	• ourselves	We will clean the room ourselves.
They	• themselves	They had a nice time. They enjoyed themselve

myself

تعبر عن المتكلم المفرد أي "بنفسي/نفسي". وتأتي مع الضمير (🜓)

-I did my homework (by) myself.

(بنفسی)

-I hurt myself with a knife.

(نفسی)

himself

تعبر عن الغائب المغرد المذكر أي "نفسه/بنفسه". وتأتى مع الضمير (he).

-He did his homework (by) himself.

(يتفسه)

- Ali hurt himself with a knife.

(نفسه)

herself

تعبر عن الغائب المفرد المؤنث أي 'بنفسما/نفسما". وتأتى مع الضمير (she).

-She did her homework (by) herself.

(بنفسما)

- Mona hurt herself with a knife.

(نفسما)



itself	ث) أي "بنفسه/نفسه - بنفسها/نفسها". وتأتى مع الضمير (it).	ناقل (مذكر أو مؤن	تعبر عن المفرد غير اله	
- The do	g carried the bag (by) itself.	(بنفسه)		
- The bird	d hurt itself.	(نفسه)		
yourself	نسك". تأتى مع الضمير (you).	نرد أي "بنفسك/ن	تعبر عن المخاطب المذ	
- You sho	ould do your homework (by) yourself.	(ينفسك)		
- You hur	t yourself with a knife, Ali.	(نفسك)		
yourselv	ئفسكم". و تأتى مع الضمير (you).	عع أي "بانفسكم/أ	تعبر عن المخاطب الجد	
- You all	should do your homework (by) yourselves.	(بانفسکم)		
- You hur	rt yourselves with a knife, children.	(أنفسكم)		
ourselve	سنا". وتأتى مع الضمير (we).	ع أي "بأنفسنا/أنف	تعبر عن المتكلم الجم	
- We did	my homework (by) ourselves.	(بانفسنا)		
- Ali and	I hurt ourselves with a knife.	(أنفسنا)		
themselve	نل وغير العاقل) أي "بأنفسهم/أنفسهم". وتاتي مع الضمير (they).	لمذكر والمؤنث العاة	تعبر عن الفائب الجمع (ا	
- The boy	s did their homework (by) themselves.	(بانفسمم)		
- Mona a	nd Sama hurt themselves with a knife.	(أنفسهم)		
- The bird	ds hurt themselves.	(أنفسهم)		
—Ch	eck Point			
Read	and correct the underlined words:			
1. We e	njoyed themselves when we went sailing.		()	
2. Sami	2. Sami came out of the sea and dried herself with a towel.			
3. l mac	de <u>meself</u> some salad for lunch.		(**************************************	
4 Maya	taught itselfto speak French.		(**************************************	



0	Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
---	--

	1 26		-WB
1. I didn't buy this	cake. I made it	4	
a) myself	b) himself	c) herself	d) yourself
2. The birds sleep in	n caves to protect	from eagles.	WB
a) itself	b) yourselves	c) ourselves	d) themselves
3. Sara has a jacket	to keep warm.		₩B.
a) myself	b) herself	c) himself	d) yourself
4. Emma, did you t	ake the photo by	?	
a) itself	b) himself	c) herself	d) yourself
5. My old mobile o	ften turns off. It	t needs a new batt	ery.
a) yourself	b) themselves	c) itself	d) himself
6. Don't worry! He	can do it by		
a) myself	b) herself	c) himself	d) yourself
7. I told him about	the sad news		
a) myself	b) himself	c) itself	d) herself
8. Good news! The	horses came back home	by	
a) itself	b) themselves		d) yourselves
9. Mona and Aly, I	am not going to do the	homework for yo	ou. You have to do
it ,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,			
a) myself	b) ourselves	c) yourselves	d) yourself
Read and corre	ct the underlined word	s:	
1. Did both of you	do this job by yourself?		()
2. The children can	't look after <u>himself.</u>		()
3. Leila, please, hel	p herself to the cakes!		()
4. I enjoyed yourse	elf at the party.		()
5. Please, John, ma	ke <u>herself</u> feel at home.		()

Lessons 3 & 4

General Exercises

	the correct answer fr	om a. b. c or d:	(نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتا
1 Listen and choose	the correct answer in	oni aj by c or ar	
 When did they go 	trekking in the moun	Mactarday	d) Tomorrow.
a) Last week.	b) Last month.	c) Yesterday.	d) follotiow.
2. Who fell and hurt	himself?		ط/ دمنط
a) Tamer.	b) Nagi.	c) Samy.	d) Said.
3. How was the wear	ther on the way dowr	1?	D. C
a) Stormy.	b) Sunny.	c) Foggy.	d) Snowy.
4. What was the wea	ther like at the start?		
a) Stormy.	b) Sunny.	c) Foggy.	d) Snowy.
2 Read the following	ig, then answer the (questions:	
Last Monday, I we	ent to Siwa. It was the	trip of my life and I e	njoyed it. Siwa is an
awesome place to g	o for a nice trip. I starte	ed the journey to Siwa	on a planned date
by car. It was a sunny	day. I was very excite	d about the Siwa trip.	I saw a wonderland
when I arrived in Siv	va. It was such a won	derful view. One thin	g that I was excited
about was the road	which was full of gree	en trees. The road was	not noisy at all. As
the day ended, peop	ole came out and start	ed having fun. There v	vere many fantastic
restaurants. I enjoy	ed the Siwa trip very	much. The Siwa trip	was an awesome
	liday, I'm going to visi		
A) Answer the followi			
	ter visit Siwa?		0 (0 0 0 7 5 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1
	ere?		
	er excited about the r		
B) Choose the correct			
	ord "awesome" mean		
a) boring	b) ugly	c) wonderful	d) frightened
5. The weather was			, 3
a) hot	b) cold	c) Sunny	d) rainy
•	ng fun in the	•	W/ Tulliy
a) evening	b) morning	c) afternoon	d) dawn
a) evering	D/ 11101111119	c) arternoon	d) dawn

Adventure!

Choose the correct	answer from a, b, o	or d:	
1. The roads are danger	ous when it is	because you can't s	ee very well. WB
a) windy			
2. There is at	the top of that mou	ntain. Look, it is all w	hite! WB
a) wind	b) rain	c) snow	d) storm
3. He on his	s hat and went out.		
a) wore	b) dressed	c) put	d) took
4. They sit by the fire t	o warm.		
a) give	b) do	c) go	d) keep
5. Tourists like	photos by the P	yramids.	
a) drying	b) speaking	c) taking	d) talking
6. We can't sail becaus	se there is no	ninesine à	WB
a) fog	b) snow	c) rain	d) wind
7. Dalia is l	noliday in South Afri	ca.	
a) in	b) at	c) for	d) on
8. She didn't tell him.			
a) herself	b) myself		d) yourself
9. The children enjoy			
	b) ourselves		d) themselves
10. He always looks			
a) by herself	b) by himself	c) at himself	d) at herself
Read and correct	the underlined wor	ds:	
1. The dog came hor	ne by <u>himself</u> .		(
2. Did Ghada do the	homework by yourse	elf?	()
3. Lintroduced himse	elf to my new neighb	our.	()
4. The father decided	to repair the car he	rself.	()
Write a paragrapl	n of EIGHTY (80) wa	rds on:	
	"A nice	trip"	
>= 1 / 1 4 1 0 0 0 0 1 0 0 0 0			**************************************
************************		***************************************	\$*************************************
449900011140000000000000000000000000000	************************	4) vòorpy 2 vyy 5 4 4 3 5 4 2 2 3 4 2 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7	b1884/419111111111144640424414111141194194194
400011101110011111110011111111111111111	### \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$	***************************************	1144174-7-10041941941941941844444



SB pages 29 & 30, WB pages 88 & 89

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary		المفردات الرئيسية	
photo album	ألبوم صور		خطاب
online	عبر الإنترنت	magazine	مجلة
email	بريد الكتروني		

Additional Vocabulary		المتردات الإضافي	
grandad	لجِد	special	خاص/مميز
present	مدية	respect (ed)	يحترم

Language	ولات (الغوية Expressions	
anales N	a present	عتمه معت
make 🕨	a photo album	يعد ألبوم صور
go ▶	swimming	يذهب للسباحة

Prepositions		حروف الجر	
form of	نوع/شكل من	different to/from	مختلف عن
at the station	في المحطة	by the beach	بجوار الشاطئ
reply to	يرد على	advantages of/to	ممیزات نے

0	onjugations of irregula	r Verbs قملتظمة	تصريف الأفعال غير ا
	Present	Past simple	Past participle
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn

Words and Opposites				الكلمات وعكسه	
advantages	مزايا	disadvantages	عيوب	مختلف different	the same نفس الشئ
dangerous	خطير	safe	آمن	online متصل بالإنترنت	offline غير متصل بالإنترنت

Language Notes

would ('d) rather + inf.

يفضل أن

• I'd rather eat fruit.

look forward to + (V + ing)

يتطلع إلى

• I'm looking forward to seeing you again.

love (V + ing/N)

حب

- I love being by the sea.
- I love swimming.

Check Point

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. I'd rather home now.
 - a) to go
- b) go

- c) going
- d) went

- 2. Hook forward toa doctor.
 - a) become
- b) became
- c) becoming
- d) becomes

- 3. Mona loves to music.
 - a) listen
- b) listens
- c) listening
- d) listened



Listening

Pre-listening question:

What kind of water sports do you like doing?

2. Listen to Ola and Lamia. Tick (\checkmark) the activity they decide to do.

- السياحة (1)
- ركوب الأمواج (2)
- التجديف (3)
- SB page 29
- : I'm really enjoying myself on our holiday. Oia I love being by the sea. What shall we do this afternoon?
- Lamia: Why don't we go swimming(1)?
- : I'm not sure. Swimming is fun, but we can Ola do that at home. I'd rather do something more exciting.
- Lamia: OK. How about going windsurfing (2)?
- : I don't know. I'm not very good at Ola windsurfing ... and it isn't very windy today.
- Lamia: OK, not swimming and not windsurfing ... I know! Let's go kayaking 3.
- : Good idea! I love kayaking.







Post-listening question:

- Why didn't Ola go windsurfing?

Reading

Pre-reading question: Who send this email?

2. Read the email. Who is Kareem?



SB page 30

- مسرور (1)
- يتطلع إلى (2)
- ركوب الأمواج (3)
- الغوص (4)
- ھىية (5)
- ألبوم صور (6)

From: Maher

To : Karim

Subject: Your visit

Dear Karim,

I'm really excited (1) that you are going to come and stay with us next week. I'm looking forward to (2) seeing you again. What time is your train going to arrive? We can meet you at the station.

Our new home is by the beach. We can go swimming every day. There are lots of other things to do, too. How about going windsurfing (3) or diving (4)?

On Thursday, Grandad is going to visit us. Let's make him a special present (5). Why don't we find photos of ourselves and our other cousins? We can make him a photo album (6).

See you on Saturday!

From

Maher

Post-reading question:

-Where's the new home?



Reading

Pre-reading question:

Where is Judy going?

1. Where do these sentences go in Judy's email to Manal?

WB page 89

Dear Manal,

I'm writing to tell you my plans for the summer. It's going to be fun but busy.

Then you can write to me about your plans!

First, I'm going to visit my cousins in Alexandria.



They're going to take me to the famous library. I'm very excited about that.

It's a beautiful building.

I'm going to go home on 22nd August. I'm going to have tennis lessons!

I can't play tennis now, but I'm going be very good after the lessons!

Let's do some things together before we go back to school. What

about going to the beach?

You always like swimming. **Write to me soon so I know your plans!**From
Judy

Post-reading question:

- When is Judy going to go home?

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the cor	rect answer from a, b	o, c or d:	
1. Maher lives			SB
a) from	b) with	c) by	d) in
2. Maher asks Kari	m to find photos	themselves and th	eir other cousins.
			SB
a) at	b) of	c) by	d) near
3. Cars, trains and	ships are of	transport.	
a) frames	b) farms	c) forms	d) firms
4. You should	other people's o	pinions.	
a) disagree	b) refuse	c) respect	d) dislike
5. My brother's ho	bbies are different	those of mine.	
a) in	b) with	c) by	d) to
6. I put all my pho	tos in a photo		
a) book	b) note	c) album	d) guide
7. I like studying	But the inte	rnet is quite slow.	
a) offline	b) online	c) outline	d) inline
8. Maher wants to	a special pi	resent for his grandad.	1000
a) make	b) do	c) give	d) try
	to seeing you a	gain.	
a) with		c) up	d) forward
10. We are going to	meet our uncle	the station.	
a) for	b) with	c) at	d) to
11. My grandad alw	ays gives me a	present.	
a) long	b) special	c) scary	d) afraid
_	reply you.		
a) from	b) to	c) by	d) for





Making and responding to suggestions

عمل اقتراحات والرد عليها

Making and responding to suggestion	هیا بنا
Let's + inf.	garépate la p
*Let's godiving.	أفضل
I'd rather + inf.	
*I'd rather visit the park.	هل2
Shall we + inf?	
*Shall we play tennis?	لم لا
Why don't we + inf?	\$ aneronovives
*Why don't we go rock climbing?	ومادًا عن}
How about + (v + ing.)?) E 13449
*How about playing football?	

الموافقة		الرفض	
- Good idea!	فكرة جيدة!	- I'm not sure.- That sounds a bit scary.	أنا غير متأكد.
- Great idea!	فكرة عظيمة!		يبدو هذا مخيف قليلًا.

Speaking Exercise

Complete the following dialogue:

Assem: Hi, Hatem, would you like to do something with me this weekend? Hatem: Sure. (1).....shall we do? Assem: I don't know. Do you have any ideas? Hatem: (2)...... we see a film? Assem: That sounds great. Which film shall we see? Hatem: (3).....see "Action Man 4." Assem: I'd (4) not. I don't like that film. Hatem: Well! Let's watch another one. Assem: (5) about seeing "Mad Doctor Brown?" I hear it's quite a funny film.

Hatem: OK. Let's see that.



شرح كتابة الإيميل

How to write an email:

تعلم كيفية كتابة الإيميل؛

٣. الموضوع.

٢. اسم المرسل

١. نكتب اسم / إيميل المرسَل إليه

£. التحية: اسم المرسل إليه + Hello / Hi / Dear

ه. الجملة الافتتاحية: ?I'm happy to send this email to you. How are you and your family

٧. الجملة الختامية: See you soon / Best wishes / All the best

٦، نكتب عن الموضوع

٨. توقيع المرسل



To : Anas

From : Kady

Subject: An adventure sport

Dear Anas,

How are you? You asked me in your email about places to visit in Egypt. I recommend the Pyramids. The Egyptian Museum is a good place to learn all about the things you'll see at the ancient sites. I also recommend that you go with a guide. The guide can tell you a lot of interesting things about the places you are going to visit. In Luxor, you can visit Luxor and Karnak Temples. In Aswan, you will like the sunny weather and the ancient temples. The best beaches are in Hurghada where you can try windsurfing. You can go snorkelling and scuba diving. You can go to the bazaar in the old part of the city. It's a good place to buy souvenirs.

See you soon,

Kady

Lessons 546

General Exercises

Complete the fo	flowing dialogue:		
Brother : I'm bored	f! What shall we do?		
Sister : (1)	do so contract and contract states of restricted representations.	play table ter	nnis.
Brother: No, I hate	e table tennis.		
Sister : (2)	netra totoleturaptorioritainin eetäänätelätetti onerapainaini	do you hate it	?
Brother : Because	I can't play it very well.		
Sister : (3)	144004 1:114 BB 1011 411 411 1-14 1-14 1-15 1-15 1-15 1-15	we watch TV?	
Brother: OK, good	l (4)	(paperson, respectively)	's watch a James
Bond film			
Sister : No, I don'	't like his films.	. 1. 1.12	Cabaal
Brother: Shall (5)	366799 9900000000000000000000000000000000	watch HI	gn School
Musical 2			
Sister : Yes! I love	music.		
Choose the corre	ect answer from a, b, c	or d:	
1. Watching action i	films makes me feel		
a) sad	b) bored	c) excited	d) unhappy
2. Can you show me	your photo	, Sara?	
a) book	b) note	c) album	d) guide
3. We should	a nice present for	our mother.	
a) draw	b) do	c) make	d) give
4. What 9	joing windsurfing?		WB
a) out	b) at	c) of	d) about
5. Maher and Karim	can windsu	rfing or diving.	SB
a) make	b) play	c) do	d) go
6. He lives	the beach. He alway	s goes swimming.	
a) next	b) far	c) in front	d) by
7. 1 myself	f a cup of tea.		
a) took	b) gave	c) made	d) done

			_
Ad	ve	ntu	ire

1114	and Sama can wash	the car by	
8. Don't help us, Dad! I a	b) ourselves	c) himself	d) herself
a) yourselves9, Sandy is a baby, she		•	
a) himself	b) myself	c) yourself	d) herself
10. If you can't do this ex		*	elp.
a) herself	b) himself	c) yourself	d) itself
,	•		
Read and correct the			,
1. It was a great trip, we	really enjoyed <u>yo</u> t	urselves.	***************************************
2. Welcome Ghada, mal	ke <u>herself</u> at home		
3. My cat cleans myself	regularly.		(**************************************
4. You can move the tal	ole ourselves.		**************************************
Write a paragraph o		rds on:	
Write a paragraph o	"Water sp		

	444441		
			14 15 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1
#2#10***********************************	**!*********************************		ht y (A d d o p b d) (A m p h p o p p p p p b b a m p b p
#1####################################		, q. 1887) (q. 1874) 24(1. 22) 26(28) (AM 172 26(1872) 26(
#101070701001001007010070000070400070400070400070400070400070400704007040070400704007040070400704007040070400070400070400070400070400070400070400070400070400070400070400070400070400070400070400070400070400000704000070400007040000704000070400007040000704000070400000704000000			**************************************

**************************************	**************************************		
**************************************	**************************************		

**************************************		مل لدیك سوال فی أی مادة؟ الآن يمكنك طرح استرت	
**************************************		الآن يمكنك طرح أس <u>ئلتك</u> من خلال خدمة اسأل الأضواء	
**************************************		الآن يمكنك طرح أستلتك	



Videoscript >

SB page 29

سقارة (14)

التنس (15)

مضرب (16)

There are many sports that people enjoy today, such as hockey(1), الموكي (1) athletics(2), and archery(3). But did you know these sports, and many ألعاب القوى (2) الرماية (3) others, were first played in Ancient Egypt? Very old drawings and المبرزة (4) paintings show people playing a lot of different sports. العصا (5) This picture in the Temple of Ramses III shows people fencing (4) with بتشلجر (6) السيوف (7) sticks(5). In fencing today, two people fight (6) each other with swords 7. الجري (8) The Ancient Egyptians also liked running⁽⁸⁾. During the time of سباق (9) King Taharka, there was a race⁽⁹⁾ of 100 kilometres. People believe⁽¹⁰⁾ يعتقد (10) جنود (11) that this was a test so that the king could find his best soldiers(11) السباق الفرعوني (12) . Today, there is a race called the Pharaonic Race⁽¹²⁾. This, too, is 100 مرم هوارة (13) kilometres. It starts at the Hawara Pyramid⁽¹³⁾ and finishes in Saggara

Some people think the ancient Egyptians played tennis⁽¹⁵⁾, because there is a town near the Nile called Tinnis ... and because the Arabic word for part of the hand is rahat al-yad. This sounds like the racket⁽¹⁶⁾ you hit the ball with.

(14). Running is very popular today. Millions of people around the

world go running every week. It is a good way to stay healthy.

Sport was very important in Ancient Egypt. Is sport important for you?

Unit 9 Review

Vocabulary

Key Vocabula	ry	د مد فالمردو. رواوداد		ď	فردات الرئيسي	- الم		
tent		خيمة	nearl	у	تقريبا	Bedou	in	بدوی/بدو
quide		دلیل	journ	ney	رحلة	argun	nent	جدال
date	ليوم)	ً تاريخ (ا	impo	rtant	مهم/مهم	negot	iate (d)	يتفاوض
mountain climbing adventure spo			ort ریاضة مغامرة	negot	negotiation ا			
newspaper		جريدة	artic	le	مقال	railwa	y line عيا	خط سکة د
British		بريطانر	chall	enge	تحدي	transp	ort	مواصلات
return (ed)		يعود/ير	mag	azine	مجلة	online	2	عبر الإنترنت
photo album		ألبوم ص	ema	il	بريد إلكتروني	letter		خطاب
		Sports			r.	الرياضان		
Water s	port:	ائية د	ياضة ه	, –	Mounta	in spor	ة الجبال ts	رياض
diving		m	وص .	الغطس/الغ	rock climbing سلق الصخور			تسلق الصد
windsurfing	-		اج	ركوب الأمو	trekking	ال/التجوال		الارتحال/الت
sailing				الإبحار	mountain biking ركوب الدراجات في الجبل			ركوب الدراج
kayaking				التجديف	zip lining		بېل	الانزلاق بالد
		Weath	er wor	ds	خاصة بالطقس	كلمات		
Noun rou	וענע	Adje	ctive	الصفة	Noun	الاسم	Adjective	الصفة
rain	مطر	rainy		مطير	sun	شمس	sunny	مشمس
cloud	سحابة	cloud	dy	غائم	wind	رياح	windy	كثير الرياح
storm	عاصفة	storn	ny	عاصف	snow	ثلج	snowy	ثلجي
fog	۔ ضباب	fogg	у	ضبابی				





"going to" for future plans

- lam going to visit my grandfather on Friday.
- My sister is not going to go kayaking.
- A: Are your brothers going to try diving? B: Yes, they are. B: No, they aren't.

Reflexive pronouns

الضمائر المتعكسة

نستجدم الضمائر المنعكسة عندما يكون فاعل الجملة ومفعولها متماثلين:

القاعل	ı	We	You	You
الضمير المتعكس	myself	ourselves	yourself	yourselves
1	بنفسى/نفسي	بأنفسنا/أنفسنا	بنفسك انفسك	بأنفسكم/أنفسكم
القاعل	He	She	lt	They
الضمير المنعكس	himself	herself	itself	themselves
	مسمّنب/مسمّ	إمسفن/اهسفنب	بنفسه/نفسه	بأنفسهم/أنفسهم



Making and responding to suggestions

طلب الاقتراحات والرد عليها

- *Let's go diving.
- *I'd rather visit the park.
- *Shall we play tennis?
- *How about playing football?
- * Why don't we go rock climbing?

- Great idea!
- Good idea!
- I'm not sure.
- I don't like the sound of that.
- That sounds a bit scary.

Test

Based on Unit 9

	1) Listen and choose the	e correct answer from	n a, b, c or d: (-	(نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتا
	1. How should you liste			
	a) Carefully.		c) Badly.	d) Terribly.
	2. You should wi	th the others when y	ou decide someti	hing important.
	a) trek	b) play	c) negotiate	d) argue
	3. Who should you get t	the best ideas from?		
	a) Yourself.	b) Each other.	c) Kids.	d) Bad people.
	4. Is negotiation about	winning an argumen	t?	
	a) Yes.	b) No.	c) Sure.	d) I don't know.
2	Complete the follow	ing dialogue:		
	Maher: Hi, Mustafa! I		ut after work?	
	Mustafa: Sure, why no	t? What (1)	100400CJ>ps: chlop: 12=====dd=op. <2===06100F9044	we do?
		What do you have ir		
	Mustafa: How about (2	2)	a	movie?
1	Maher : I'm not sure a	about that. How abou	ut eating at the n	ew restaurant?
ı	Mustafa: That sounds	like a (3)	1841444 mm + 2 > 1 2 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 8 7 9 8 7 8 7 8 7 9 9 9 4 4 4 4 4 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7	idea. I hear
	they have am	azing dishes.		
-	Waher : Me too. Some	eone told me it can b	e hard to get a ta	able, so
	(4)	<=>1471440144344117111711111111111111111111	go out early.	
ħ	Mustafa: Okay, fine. Bu	t if we can't get a tal	ole, we're going t	o watch the movie.
N	Maher: That's good. (5)	V	ve meet in front of
	the restaurant	1?		
N	Nustafa: Sounds good.	I'll see you then.		



Read the following, then answer the questions:

Trekking is an adventure hobby that most children, who love nature, like. It is both a hobby and a sport. Taking up trekking as a hobby is also useful to children. Trekking is quite exciting. Here's some advice when you go trekking. Always go with an elder person. Start exercising at least a few weeks before the trekking trip. Make sure to prepare your food, water and all your equipment before you leave the camp. Carry dry fruits and sweets. Leave your money, passport, travel tickets and other valuables at the camp or at the hotel. Do not make loud noise or throw litter here and there during your trip. Keep the mountains clean and bring back all your waste from the mountains. Take a rest when you feel tired. Always follow your guide and stay close to your group. Many schools organise trekking to develop love for nature among students.

A) Answer the follow	ving questions:		
1. What is the pass	age about?		***************************************

			en you go trekking?
B) Choose the corre	ct answer from a, b, c	ord:	
4. You should keep	your valuables at the .	4	when you go trekking.
a) school	b) camp	c) hotel	d) Both b and c
5. You should stay	close to your	when you	u go trekking.
a) group	b) animals	c) plants	d) parents
6. Trekking is	to children.		
a) bad	b) ugly	c) useless	d) useful
4 Choose the cor	rect answer from a, b,	c or d:	
1. Which of the fol	lowing is a dangerous s	port?	
a) Football.	b) Rock climbing.	c) Chess.	d) Tennis .
2. We're going to g	oin the s	ea.	,
a) windsurfing		b) mountair	n biking
c) zip lining		d) rock clim	
3. You should lister	nto your	father's advic	e,
a) carefully	b) quickly	c) badly	d) carelessly

Adventure!

4. We're	going to Luxo	or on the second		
a) on		b) of	c) at	d) by
5. It was a for me to climb this mountain, but I did it.				
a) cha	allenge	b) change	c) letter	d) message
6. It's a good idea to go to the beach when the weather is				
a) sno	owy	b) cold	c) windy	d) sunny
7. A: What's today's 8: It's 26th March, 2020.				
a) his	tory	b) note	c) album	d) date
8. It's so cold. I'll make a hot drink.				
a) hir	nself	b) myself	c) herself	d) yourself
9. Can you do this project by, boys?				
a) yo	urself	b) ourselves	c) themselves	d) yourselves
10. In the story Black Beauty, the horse tells the story				ry.
a) its	elf	b) yourself	c) herself	d) myself
5 Read and correct the underlined words:				
1. When are you going go trekking? (
2. I repaired my bike itself.				()
3. Are the boys went to play football this afternoon?				()
4. Susan and I walked to the shop by themselves.				()
6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:				
"A mountain sport"				
••••	*************************			***************************************

\$=464129+459+(3+1++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++				
404844(6109011410011411414141979)94110294494149114251444140119411414146917777414774141414141414141414141414141				

149440(456):>(1945):>41945):411240:14121441615-441615-441615-441615-441619-4419-44				
49:091:074)4147.7(***********************************				
	***********************	1 mq 4 2 4 4 = 9 4 1 > 20 4 1 > 9 4 1 > 9 4 1 3 4 5 4 5 4 5 4 5 4 5 4 5 4 5 4 5 4 5 4	DC2003D0P;:************************************	

Review



Units 7, 8 & 9



Reading

Pre-reading question:

When old Arry do gerganosy

Read the emails. Did Amy and Dareen both climb Sydney Harbour Bridge?

Hi Dareen,

How are you? I'm really enjoying myself in Sydney with my family. Sydney is about eight hours by car from our home in Melbourne. Yesterday, I climbed Sydney Harbour Bridge. It was very high and scary. But the views from the top were fantastic! My sister and I took a great selfie of ourselves!

Tonight, I am going to listen to music at the Sydney Opera House, but it is not opera, it is classical music! Tomorrow, I am going to the Blue Mountains. I am going to swim in a lake and go rock climbing.

Here are some photos!

Love, Amy



SB page 32



Hi Amy,

Your holiday sounds fantastic. My family and I went to Sydney last year, but we did not climb the bridge! We went to Bondi Beach and went windsurfing and kayaking. I love water sports!

I hope you enjoy your holiday, send me an email when you are home.

Love, Dareen

Post-reading question:

- What is Amy going to do tomorrow?



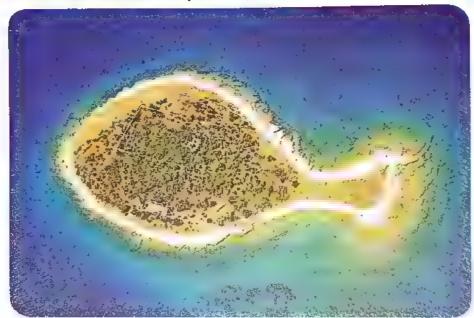
Reading

Pre-reading question:

Who wrote Robinson Chaster

1. Read the text and answer the questions.

WB page 91



Last weekend, I watched a TV programme about Robinson Crusoe Island. The author of *Robinson Crusoe*, Daniel Defoe, wrote about this island because a real sailor called Alexander Selkirk spent four years alone here. Defoe wrote *Robinson Crusoe* after hearing about this man. However, Crusoe's adventures were different to Mr Selkirk's. Crusoe spent a lot longer on the island (28 years) and the weather was a lot hotter than on the real island. Today, about 800 people live on Robinson Crusoe Island. Life is easier now, although people still have to look after themselves. The nearest land, Chile, is 24 hours away by boat. Soon they are going to build a new school and hospital on the island. Those are things that Crusoe did not have!

Post-reading question:

- What do you think of the story?

Pre-listening question: How was your weekend?

1. Listen and answer the questions.

WB page 91



Girl :Hi, Lara. How was your weekend?

Lara: Oh, it was terrible.

Girl :Oh dear, what happened?

Lara: I went to the museum, but it was closed. Then I missed the bus so

I had to walk home.

Girl :Oh dear!

Boy 1: love tennis. Do you agree that it's more exciting than any other sport?

Boy 2: I'm afraid, I don't agree.

Girl 1: What shall we do this afternoon, Lama?

Girl 2: Why don't go swimming?

Girl 1: I'm not sure. The swimming pool is not very near.

Girl 2: OK. How about going to the park?

Girl 1:Good idea! I love the trees and plants there.

Boy 3: What do you think about that book you're reading?

Boy 4: I think it's the worst book ever!

Post-listening question:

- Do you like swimming?





Listening

Pre-listening question:

- What is the sixth largest country in the world?

2. Look at the table comparing Australia and Egypt. Work in pairs. Can you

guess the answers? SB page 33

Woman: Egypt is just over one million square kilometres.

Man : Australia is the sixth largest country in the world. It is just over seven million, six hundred thousand square kilometres.

Woman: The highest mountain in Egypt is Mount Catherine. It is over two thousand six hundred metres high.

Man : The highest mountain in Australia is Mount Kosciuszko. It is over two thousand, two hundred metres high.

Woman: The River Nile is the longest river in the world. It flows through
Egypt and other countries in Africa. It's over six thousand, six
hundred kilometres long.

Man : The longest river in Australia is the River Murray. It is over two thousand, five hundred kilometres long. Be careful of the crocodiles!

Post-listening question:

- What's the longest river in the world?



Based on Units 7,8 &9

1 Listen and choose t	the correct answer fr	om a, b, c or d:	(نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب
1. When did the Sydr	ey Harbour Bridge o	pen?	
a) 1913.	b) 1923.	c) 1932.	d) 1930.
2. How long did it tak	ce to build?		
a) 8 years.	b) 18 years.	c) 8 months.	d) 18 months.
3. How long is the br	idge?		
a) 1,419 m long.	b) 1,491 m long.	c) 1,914 m long.	d) 1,941 m long.
4. How many cars cro	oss the bridge? - Mo	ore than	
a) 60,000	b) 106,000	c) 16,000	d) 160,000
Complete the following	owing dialogue:		WB
Omar : What shall v	ve do on Saturday?		
Hamdi : Why (1)			
Omar : I'm not sure	. It's quite dangerou	s. 1'd (2)	do
a different a	•		
Hamdi : OK. How ab	out (3)	basketball	?
Omar : I don't know			
Hamdi : OK, not roc			
Omar : (4)	idea! I	always enjoy playin	g tennis.
Hamdi: Where are			
Omar : (5)	meet i	n front of the club.	
Hamdi : OK, I'll be th	nere.		

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Hi Dareen,

How are you? I'm really enjoying myself in Sydney with my family. Sydney is about eight hours by car from our home in Melbourne. Yesterday, I climbed Sydney Harbour Bridge. It was very high and scary. But the views from the top were fantastic! My sister and I took a great selfie of ourselves! Tonight, I am going

Test 4

to listen to music at the Sydney Opera House, but it is not opera, it is classical music! Tomorrow, I am going to the Blue Mountains. I am going to swim in a lake and go rock climbing.

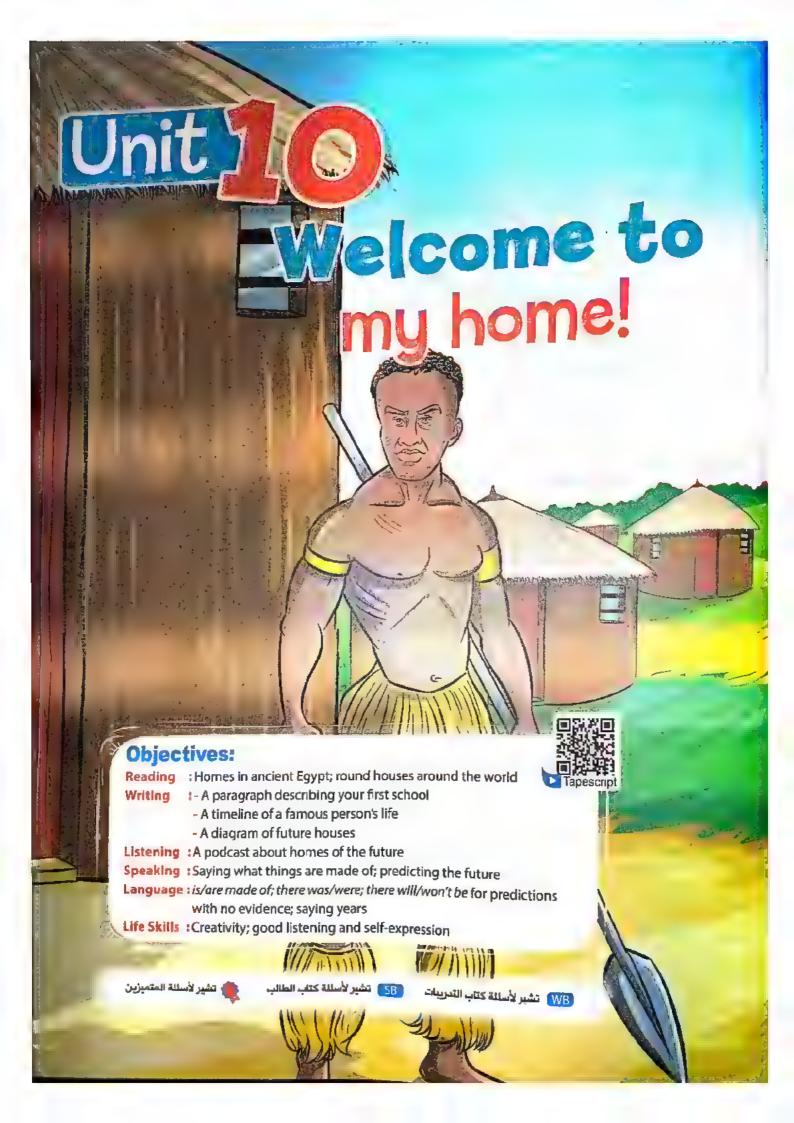
Love, Amy

A) Answer the following			
1. Who wrote that e	mail?	p 中	yd I maadd a 10 dd 660 1 1 550 1 1 1 1 500 1 1 1 1 500 1 1 1 1
2. What does the un	derlined pronoun "our	selves" refer to?	10==4\$C41\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$100\$\$\$\$104\$\$\$\$4\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$
3. How long does it	take to get to Sydney fi	rom Melbourne?	050 4 5 QU 9 0 0 4 11 12 0 5 = 10 4 1 2 12 Q C 2 5 5 5 5 7 4 4 1 2 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 5 7 5 7 5
B) Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c o	r d:	
4. She is going to th	e Blue Mountains		type at the second of
a) in two days		c)tomorrow	d) Both b and c
5. She felt	when she climbed	Sydney Harbour Bri	dge.
a)scary	b) sacred	c) boring	d) bored
6. She is in	99901110000		
a) Bridge	b) Harbour	c) Melbourne	d) Sydney
(A) Choose the corre	ect answer from a, b, c	or d:	
1. Diving, sailing an	d windsurfing are diffe	rentsp	orts.
a) air	b) mountain	c) water	d) land
2. There was a really	terrible storm and his	ship	
a) thank	b) sank	c) drowned	d) sang
3. Can you play a m	usical?		
a) instrument	b) equipment	c) machine	d)object
4. Ais	a big hole under the gr	ound.	
a) hall	b) bridge	c) cave	d)tunnel
5. Cairo is crowded	lots of tou	urists.	
a)at	b) with	c) in	d) of
6. I won't get in this	cave. It So	cary.	
a)takes	b) makes	c) goes	d) looks
7. I took a guide to	hel p me n	ny way.	
a)find	b)take	c) see	d)watch

Review C

8.	Australia is bigger	Едур	t.	
	a) there	b) that	c) than	d) then
9	She Sydi	ney Harbour Br	idge yesterday.	
	a) climb	b) climbing	c) climbs	d) climbed
10	. What kind of music is	Amy	to listen to tonight?	
	a) go	b) going	c) went	d) goes
6	Read and correct the	e underlined w	ords:	
1	. What did Dareen doe	s in Sydney?		()
2	. They're going to go o	living?		()
3	.The baby girl can't ea	nt by <u>himself</u> .		()
4	. Which city is <u>more bi</u>	g, Cairo or Alex	andria?	()
6	Write a paragraph o	of EIGHTY (80)	words on:	WB
		"An amazing	journey you had"	

	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	.,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,		***************************************
	I ** (* I * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *			******************************
	***************************************		«((()))«(())»»»»»««())»»»»»»»»»»»»»»»»»	***********************
	******	, (4		10)500114194114114164645101854548111176
	***************************************	*************************	***************************************	





Vocabulary

Key Vocab	ulary		الأرائيسية	المقرد	
lamp	لمبة/مصباح	cushions	وسائد	wallet	محفظة
statue	ئمثال	sofa	كنبة	a driverless car	سيارة بدون سائق
seat	مقعد ثابت	curtains	ستاثر	teaspoon	ملعقة شاي
	Materi	als	1	المواد الخام	
cotton	قطن	plastic	بلاستيك	wool	صوف
glass	زجاج	stone	حجر	metal	معدن
leather	جلد	wood	خشب	paper	ورق

**Additional Voc	abulary	decimal and the control of the contr	المترزاف الإم	
the Stone Age	العصر الحجرى	object	socks ، شيء	جوارب
television (TV)	تلفزيون	table	tablet منضدة	كمبيوتر لوحى
skîrt	جيبة	pencil case	bag مقلمة	حقيبة

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة Conjugations of Irregular Verbs						
	Present	Past simple	Y Past participle			
make	يصنع	made	made)		



Language Notes

made (of/ from/ in/ by)

made of

مصنوع من (المادة الخام لم تتفير ومازلنا نراها)

The sofa is made of leather.

made from

مصنوع من (المادة الخام تغيرت ولم نعد نراها)

Glass is made from sand.

made in

مصنوع في (مكان الصنع)

My mother's valuable furniture is made in Damietta.

made by

مصنوع بواسطة (الشخص/الشركة المصنعة)

My phone is made by Sico.

was called

سُمى/أطلق عليه اسم

• Why was the stone age called this?

Check Point

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. Paper is made wood.

a) by

b) with

c) of

d) from

2. Chairs are made wood.

a) by

b) with

c) of

d) from

3. This car is made Japan.

a) on

b) at

c) in

d) from

Listening 📳

Pre-listening question:

Wish are a rologic made of

3. Listen and check your answers to Exercise 2.









- معين (1)
- زجاج (2)
- مقاعد ثابتة (3)
- جاد (4)
- بلاستيك (5)

Boy 1: What is a car made of?

Boy 2: That's a difficult question! It's made of a lot of things.

For example, a car door is made of metal⁽¹⁾ and the windows are made of glass⁽²⁾.

Boy 1: What are the seats(3) made of, where you sit?

Boy 2: I think expensive car seats are made of leather⁽⁴⁾. My father's car is not expensive. The seats are made of plastic⁽⁵⁾.

Post-listening question:

-What are the seats of cars made of?





Vocabulary Exercises

6	Choose the	correct	answer	from a,	b, c	or d:
---	------------	---------	--------	---------	------	-------

			WB
 A car door is ma a) wood 	b) metal	c) leather	d) cotton
Car windows ar a) plastic	e made of b) sand	c) stone	d) glass
3. It's easy to brea	ktoys, so l	don't like them.	
a) stone	b) plastic	c) leather	d) cotton
4. We use	to put sugar in tea.		
a) glass	b) forks	c) socks	d) teaspoons
5. To go to work	easily, I wish I can buy	a/an car as	s I don't like driving.
a) toy.	b) driverless	c) plastic	d) old
6. The carpenter	uses to mak	e tables and chairs.	
a) plastic	b) wool	c) wood	d) stone
7. A is r	made of leather.		
a) wallet	b) book	c) teaspoon	d) bottle
8. Cotton, glass, v	wood and wool are	*************	
a) subjects	b) colours	c) materials	d) sports
9. There's a	in the living room	where I can relax.	
a) sofa	b) table	c) window	d) TV
10. My best friend	was Marwa	n. He is living in Italy	now.
a) call	b) calling	c) called	d) caller
11. During the jou	rney, I saw the Sphinx	which is made of	0004444410450411
a) stone	b) wool	c) glass	d) wood
12. People put	across window	s to keep the light o	ut. 🧠
a) rugs	b) curtains	c) cushions	d) sheets







is/are made of

- لوصف المواد الخام لشيء نستخدمه. :To describe materials of an object we use

Singular

المادة الخام (is made of) + (material) + الشيء المفرد The singular object

المفرد

- The sofa is made of leather.
- My book is made of paper.

Plural

المادة الخام (are made of) + (material) + الشيء الجمع

الجمع

- The cushions are made of cotton.
- My socks are made of wool.

Question

السؤال

What is + the singular object + الشيء المفرد + (made of)?

Singular

- What is the sofa made of?
- المفرد
- What is your book made of?

What are + the plural object الشيء الجمع + (made of)?

- Plural
- What are your socks made of?

• What are the cushions made of?

الجمع

Read and correct the underlined words:

- -What is your bags made of?
- My pencil case are made of plastic.



Language Exercises

0	Choose the correct answer from a,	b,	c	or (d:
---	-----------------------------------	----	---	------	----

1 This wallet	made of leath	er. It is fantastic.	
-\ o.ma	b) is	c) are	d) Were
a)am	new teaspoons which		ade of metal.
	b) am	c) is	d) are
a)was		•	
3. What	the skirt made of?	c) were	d)am
a) is	b) are	c) were	
4. Books are made	paper.		d) from
a) în	b) by	c) of	
5. The wails of my	new house	made of brick	S.
a) is	b) are	c) am	d) was
6. The cushions	of cotton.		
a) made	b) is made	c) are made	d) are making
7. What's your	made of?		
a) socks	b) glasses	c) pants	d) shirt
8. What's bread ma	ade?		*
a) of	b) in	c) by	d) from
9. 1481140114401440140144014401440144	your shoes made of leath	ner?	
a) Is	b) Are	c)Was	d) Do
Read and corre	ect the underlined word	is:	
1. The table are ma	de of wood.		(**************************************
2. <u>Is</u> her new socks	made of wool?		
3. The lamp made	of glass.		() WB
4. The doors of my	flat are made by wood.		()
5. Who's your jacke	t made of?		()
			•



الإخبار عن مم صنفت الأشياء Saying what things are made of

Situation

ما يقال في هذا الموقف

Response

جملة الرد



- What is the wallet made of?

مم تصنع حافظة النقود؟

* It is made of leather.

🔏 - تصنع من الجلد.





- What are the socks made of?

مم يصنع الجورب؟

*They are made of wool.

🔑 پي- يصنع من الصوف،





مم يصنع الجهاز اللوحي (التابلت)؟ What is the tablet made of?

* It is made of glass and plastic، پر الزجاج والبلاستيك. يصنع من الزجاج والبلاستيك. يصنع من الزجاج والبلاستيك.





- What is the statue made of?

مم يصنع التمثال؟



🧏 🚜 – يصنع من الحجارة،





مم تصنع ملاعق الشاي؟ ?What are the teaspoons made of

* They are made of metal.

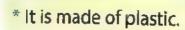
ᠾ – تصنع من المعدن.





- What is the toy made of?

مم تصنع لعية الأطمال؟



🧘 ب- تصنع من البلاستيك.





Note

When you are not sure of an answer, say I don't know or I'm not sure. You can also guess and say I think.

- عندما تكون غير متأكد من الإجابة قل (أنا لا أعرف أو أنا غير متأكد)، ومن الممكن أيضًا أن تخمن وقل (أنا أعتقد).

• What is your pencil case made of?

مم تصنع المقلمة؟

-1 don't know.

أنا لا أعرف.

•What is your bag made of?

مم تصنع حقيبتك؟

- I'm not sure; I think it is made of cotton.

أَيْا غَير مَتَأَكِد، أَعَتَقَد أَنْهَا مَصِنُوعَةً مِنْ القَطِنْ.

Speaking Exercises

Complete the following dialogue:

Ziad : Is this your guitar?

Omar : (1)

Ziad: What is it made of?

Omar : It's (2)..... wood. And what is this?

Ziad : It is my new (3)......

Omar : Really! When did you buy it?

Ziad : (4)...... week.

Omar : (5)..... it made of metal?

Ziad : No. It is made of glass and plastic.

Omar: It is fantastic. You can use it to surf the internet.





Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية – Key Vocabulary						
bricks	الطوب	roof	المبئي)	السطح (سطح	oven	فرن
tap	صنبور/ حثفية	ancient Egypt مصر القديمة (الفرعونية)		village	قرية	
the Valley o	of the Kings وادي الملوك	the Nile	e Valley	وادى الئيل	+ Water State of the State of t	

Additional Vocabulary فيتواقيا الإضارية الإضارية الإضارية الإضارية الإضارية الإضارية المساوية المساوي							
hot	حار	paint (ed)	يلون/ يدهن	living room	غرفة معيشة		
painted walls	جدران مطلية	kitchen	مطبخ	people	ناس		
colour	لون	bedroom	غرفة النوم	What colour?	ما لون؟		

Langu	age	Expressions	CHO	زات اللغز	ilo.		
work	•	in the valley	يعمل في الوادي	sleep	>	on the roof	ينام على السطح
paint	Þ	houses	يقوم بدهان المنازل	get	•	water	يحصل على الماء

Preposition	ns	transministration of a few cat	and the state of t	حروف الجر	
workin	يعمل في	at night	ليلا	getfrom	يحصل على من
sleep on	ينام على	an oven for	مْرن ئعمل	two kilmometres away	على بعد ٢ كم



Conjugations of Irregular Verbs قصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة Present Past simple Past participle sleep ينام

Language Notes

any

أى (تستخدم في الجملة المنفية أو الاستفهامية)

There was usually an oven for bread in the kitchen, but there were not any taps.

but

ولكن (تعبر عن التناقض)

The houses had a kitchen and a living room, but there were not any bedrooms.

because

لأن (لإعطاء سبب)

People usually slept on the roof because it was very hot at night.

Check Point

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. I didn't go to school yesterday I was ill.
 - a) so

- b) but
- c) so that
- d) because

- 2. There weren't cars in ancient Egypt.
 - a) some
- b) any
- c) but
- d) about
- 3. I like watching football matches, I don't play football.
 - a) that's why
- b) but

c) as

d) to

Write it right

How to write about ancient Egypt كيفية الكتابة عن مصر القديمة (الفرعونية)

- -The ancient Egyptians lived thousands of years ago.
- -They invented a lot of things.
- They lived in traditional houses.
- (وصف ما في المئزل) There were -
- There weren't (وصف ما لم يكن موجودًا)
- They were really great.

Writing tips

- The first sentence of a paragraph is the topic sentence.
- Other sentences are details that should support the topic sentence.
- أول جملة في الفقرة الجملة الرئيسية. - الجمل الأخرى تعطى تفاصيل تعزز الموضوع. هذه التفاصيل يمكنما أن تكون أسبابًا، أو وصفًا، أو أمثلة.

Example

Homes in ancient Egypt

The ancient Egyptians lived thousands of years ago. They were clever and invented a lot of things. Their homes were really traditional. The walls of the houses were made of bricks. They were very strong. The doors were made of wood. There weren't any bedrooms. They slept on the roof of their houses because the weather was very hot at night. There was a kitchen in each home. They used to make delicious food. They ate broad beans for breakfast. They painted their homes in white and the doors in red. They were really great.

Now, your turn:	Now,	your	turn:
-----------------	------	------	-------

حان دورك الآن:

"An uncient Egyptian house"	Archa Car
The ancient Egyptians were famous for their wor	nderful buildings.
>=====================================	ped hid hi hi kohihihi bi hihidammorqraqaatabhiqaqooqqooqq
quado população indeta plunda de como producido de como producido de como de c	######################################
	pp på 1 4 a.b b 16 b 11 11 14 11 11 11 11 11 14 14 14 14 14
	QAARIQRETTITION L TATTUTTITOOT DOLOFBARMA
MA Proprietty dos among parameters and control and con	





Reading ____

Pre-reading question:

- Where did the people from Deir el-Medina work?

1. Read the text quickly. What is the main idea of the article?



Deir el-Medina

SB page 36

- مصر الفرعونية (1)
- قرية (2)
- وادى الملوك (3)
- طوب (4)
- حجرة معيشة (5)
- غرفة النوم (6)
- السطح (7)
- فرن (8)
- صنابير (9)
- وادى النيل (10)

In ancient Egypt (1), there was a village (2) called Deir el-Medina.

The people from the village worked in the Valley of the Kings. There were 68 houses.

The walls of the houses were made of bricks (4) and the doors were made of wood. The people painted their houses white, with red doors.

The houses had a kitchen and a living room 15, but there were not any bedrooms 16. People usually slept on the roof 7) because it was very hot at night.

There was usually an oven (8) for bread in the kitchen, but there were not any taps (9). People got their water from the Nile Valley (10), about two kilometres away.

Post-reading question:

-Why did people sleep on the roof?

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correc	t answer from a, b, c	or d:	
1. You uset	o build a wall.		WB.
a) breaks	b) bricks	c) ovens	d) taps
2. Theis on	top of a house.		WB
a) wall	b) tap	c) oven	d) roof
3. You can turn on th	e to get wat	er.	WB
a) tap	, b) tab	c) tape	d) tube
4. Our mother likes o	ooking. She is always i	in the	
a) bedroom	b) kitchen	c) oven	d) living room
5. All the Egyptians o	get their water	the Nile.	
a) at	b) into	c) for	d) from
6. There was a	called Deir el-Med	lina in ancient Egypt	,,,
a) city	b) town	c) village	d) country
7. The weather is ver	y cold here	night.	
a) at	b) for	c) with	d) on
8. Adham works	a company. He i	s the manager of it.	
a) in	b) by	c) on	d) out
9. My dad likes drivi	ng modern cars	they are fast.	
a) but	b) about	c) because	d) so
10. I went on a schoo	I trip and visited the	of the Kings	5.
a) Village	b) Bedroom	c) Living room	d) Valley
11. I want to buy	doors. I don't ha	ve time to paint the	m.
a) painting	b) paint.	c) paints	d) painted
12. My school is very	near to my home. It is	200 metres	
a) way	b) a way	c) away	d) ways









AA/An

• A and An have the same meaning.

The difference depends on the sound at the beginning of the next word.

- لهما نفس المعنى ويعتمد استخدامهما على الصوت الذي تبدأ به الكلمة.

When the next word starts with a **CONSONANT** SOUND

A

نستخدم (🎝) مع الكلمة التي تبدأ بصوت ساكن.

When the next word starts with a **VOWEL** SOUND

An

نستخدم (An) مع الكلمة التي تبدأ بصوت متحرك.

a book

a door

an apple

an orange

a car

a Jemon

an egg

an umbrella

انتبه جيدًا لصوت الحرف. The SOUND of the letter is important.

a house But an hour

The H at the beginning of hour is silent,

an uncle But a university

The U at the beginning of University sounds like You.

2. Any

- We use any with Negative sentences / Yes/ No questions:
 - تستخدم (any) مع الجمل المنفية والسؤال يمعني هل:
- -There weren't any taps in ancient Egypt.
- -Was there any money on the table?

3. There was/There were

- نستخدم (there were/was) بمعنى (كان هناك) للتعبير عن وجود شيء/أشياء في الماضي.

- There was a kitchen in his house.
- There was water in ancient Egypt.
- There wasn't any juice in the fridge.

Read and correct the underlined words:

- -There were any cars long ago.

There were

| plural countable noun | (اسم جمع یعد) |
| not + any + plural countable noun | (اسم جمع یعد) |

- There were boats in ancient Egypt.
- There weren't any bedrooms at their houses.

Read and correct the underlined words:

-There wasn't any taps in ancient Egypt.

(.....)



Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There weren't	cars in ancient Eg	ıypt.		
a) a	b) an	c) some	d) any	
2. There wasa) a	water on the floor. b) an	c) any	d) no article	
3. There a gl	ass of milk on the tab b) was	le. c) are	d) were	
4. There was usually a) any	b) a	ad in the kitchen. c) an	d) some	
5. Thereany a) wasn't	/ food left in the party b) weren't	yesterday. c) isn't	d) aren't	
6. There wasa) any	car waiting outside t b) an	the hospital. c) some	d) a	
7. There were	boys playing in the	street.	!	
a) a	b) an	c) any	d) no	
8. There a l	ot of bread in the kitch	nen this morning.		
a) were	b) are	c) was	d) is	
2 Read and correct	the underlined word	ds:		
1. There weren't som	e toys in the shop.		(
2. Mido ate any apple	e as he was hungry.		()	
3. There were any mo	oney with me.		()	
4. Sara bought <u>an</u> ne	w laptop.		()	
5. There weren't any	a bedroom in ancient	Egypt.	()	
6. There aren't stude	nts in the class yester	day. It was a holiday.	()	9

Lessons 122

General Exercises

Compl	ete the follov	ving dialogue;		
Teacher	: Can you tell	me about things in o	our school and what t	hey are made of?
Boy 1	: Windows (1)) + 4 z 12 p 4 p 4 p 4 p 4 p 4 p 4 p 4 p 4 p 4 p		de of glass.
Boy 2	: Desks and c	hairs are made of (2).	106400440000	9:76(2>>=4140070>>441077441144444119074
Boy 3	: (3)	18û 88 Î.Î.Î.Î û 18 Î Î Î Î Î Î Î Î Î Î Î Î Î Î Î Î Î Î	are made of)	paper.
Teacher	: Well done! /	And (4)	are your	desks made of?
		de of (5)		
	: That's right.			
Boys	: Thanks a lo			
Chan			a wali	
		answer from a, b, c		our village had be
		is lesson under a stree	et Decause (our village had no
	icity at that tir			
a) glas		b) wood		d) lamp
2. Nada	sat on a	on the floor while	e watching the film.	
a) teas	spoon	b) curtain	c) cushion	d) statue
3. We ha	ve a big	where we relax a	and watch TV.	
a) livir	ng room	b) kitchen	c) valley	d) oven
4. Peopl	e who lived in	Egypt, buil	t the Pyramids.	
a) mo	dern	b) new	c) wide	d) ancient
5. To say	e water, we sl	nould repair old	B Sheeldhedd	
a) tips	5	b) taps	c) tapes	d) tops
6. I boug	ght a	. for my son on his bi	rthday.	
a) skir	rt	b) toy	c) metal	d) socks
7. Ali bo	ought a pullov	er which is made of	·	
a) wo		t V	c) wall	d) well



	_	4.	
8. What's your ne	w made of	?	d) shirt
a) jeans	b) glasses	c) socks	•
9. There	any boats in ancier	nt Egypt. They used the	m to san on the Nile.
a) wasn't	b) isn't	c) weren't	d) were
10. There	a thief in the house	e. I could hear his voice.	
a) was	b) wasn't	c) were	d) weren't
	ect the underlined		
1. There were a lo	ot of water in our str	eet. It rained heavily ye	sterday. ()
2. What is the cu			(,)
3. The sofa is ma	de in wood.		()
	pounds on the floo	r.	()
Write a parag	raph of Eighty (80)	words on:	
	"Houses in	ancient Egypt"	
***************************************			27402400) (
,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	\$41011010101444144401B01B04147740144401	4444444	***************************************
*************************	\$\$\$\$A\$	***************************************	***************************************
• 74: 5 7 44 444-45-15-41-17	-d1+) 4+4= 41 41 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	********************************

***************************************	. TI W I \$ 0 A \$ 4 I B A I B A 4 I W A I O A B O O I D D \$ 6 I H A I A A I H B A		(1991) 111 111 111 111 111 111 111 111 11
B41441741841891891897447711111	. 200 277 2 2 4 4 5 4 5 6 6 6 6 6 6 6 6 6 6 6 6 6 6 6		***********************************
*****************	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,		***************************************
		AN SUL	1
i i	60	Turn Dil 200	1
	·	ر نفست الآن	
2	3	نبر بنك للأسئلة التماعلية لال بوابة الأصواء التعليمية	
		www.aladwaa.com :ഗ്വമ	
		250	



SB pages 38, 39 & 40 - WB pages 95 & 96

圓	Vo	oca	bul	ar	

* Key Vocabi	ulary		اق الرئيسية	المفرد	
electricity	الكهرباء	warm	دافئ	solar panels	ألواح الطاقة الشمسية
robot	إنسان آلي	traditional	تقليدي	wind turbines	توربينات الرياح
earthquake	زلزال	temperatur	درجة الحرارة e	podcast	پث إذاعي
space	مساحة	cool	رطب	guest	ضيف -
drone	طائرة بدون طيار	sign	علامة/ لافتة	parcel	طرد
electric car	سيارة كهربائية	rockets	صواريخ		
	Kinds	of round hous	، المستديرة es	أتواع المنازل	
igloo	كوخ الإسكيمو	yurt	مهجع (خيمة)		
	Shape	es es		الأشكال	
round	مسندير الشكل	square d	مربع / مربع الشكا	rectangular	مستطيل الشكل

Additional Vo	abulary	deri	شردات البخ		
swimming poo	حمام سباحة	use(d)	يستخدم	suddenly	مْجِأَة
journey	رحلة	What shape	ماشكل؟	Earth	الكرة الأرضية
accident	حادثة	بعاد 3D printer	طابعة ثلاثية الأ	safer	أكثر أمانا
plastic bricks	طوب بلاستيكى	modern	خديث	reason	
shape	شكل/ هيئة	winds	رياح	quieter	أكثر هدوءا
materials	مواد خام	fantastic	رائع	disadvantage	غيب
	Countrie	es		حول	
Canada	كندا	Burkina Faso	بوركينا فاسو	Mongolia	منغوليا



Language Expressions			التعبيرات اللغوية			
get 🕨	ریاء electricity	يحصل على الكه			warm	يحافظ على الدفء
design >	buildings	يصمم مباني	keep	•	cool	يحامُطُ على الجو رطبا
	snow	ثلوج كثيفة	bring	•	parcels	يحضر طرودا
heavy 🕨	rain	مطر غزير	use	•	3D printe	رد يستخدم طابعات ثلاثية الأبعاد

Prepositions 2		et til med flygneligt geny står elektromet. Vikklingsligt gaptimen, dikkeligt protest	San	edgija)	
on the moon	على القمر	for holiday	من أجل الإجازة	work on a project	يعمل في مشرو
get to	يصل إلى	drive to	يقود إلى	a picture of	صورة لـ
fall from	يسقط من	important for	هام ك	around the world	حول العالم

Words and Opposites । विकास कुर्णामध्या							
traditional	تقليدي	modern	حديث	strong	قوى	weak	ضعيف
important	مهم	unimportant	غير مهم	quiet	ھادئ	noisy	صاذب
inside	بالداخل	outside	بالخارج	advantag	es مزایا	disadvantage	عيوب s

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة					
(Present	Past simple	Past participle		
leave	يغادر	left	left		
fall	يسقط	fell	fallen		

Definitions	Marie Control	التعزيفات المرابعة ا	
space	•	An area that you can move around.	مساحة
warm	•	A nice temperature that is hot but not too hot.	ا دافئ
cool	•	A nice temperature that is cold but not too cold.	رطب/ معتدل
earthquake	•	When the ground suddenly moves.	נונוט

lots of = a lot of (عثيرا من (تاتى قبل الأسماء التى تعد والتى لا تعد) There will be lots of solar panels. fast (مستخدم كحال أو ظرف) My new car is very fast. My new car runs fast. Tectangle المستطيل / rectangular مستطيل الشكل rectangle و المستطيل (Can you draw a rectangle, Bassem? Are round buildings quieter than rectangular buildings? too + adj. The box was too heavy for me to lift.

Write it right



- In the future we'll (فعل).
- We will travel to (المكان).
- They will have (اشياء).
- There will be (اختراعات).
- There won't be (أشياء تقليدية).
- I think life will be exciting in the future.



Use vocabulary that's relevant to the topic. You can brainstorm the vocabulary you will use before starting writing. استخدم المفردات التي تلائم الموضوع. يمكنك التفكير في العفردات المناسبة قبل بدء الكتابة.

Example

My predictions for the future

We use modern technology more and more in our daily life. In the future, I think everything will depend on computers. We will have tiny computers in our clothes to keep us warm or to make us cool. At school, I think computers will be our teachers, but we should always have teachers. I think we won't live in crowded cities, we will I ve on other planets. In the future, we will have small electric cars. They will be easy to drive in traffic. These cars won't use petrol. They will use electricity. They will be better for the environment. They will be very fast.

Now, your turn:	هان دورك الأن:
"How life will be	like in the future"
In the future, we'll	TANK CO
222 3-American S. A. A. A. C	000) 2 - 71 - 115 - 640 - 640 C. OF CONTROL
11/10-144 (6-4 % # was 11 1000/7 1 % % 4 % 7 1400/4/ 1 4004/7 440/74/	T N'AL 18800000 NECTRALIER ALLES ANNO 6 TERESON AND 6 E ESTE IN THE NO N
	- 190 - 4-9 - 9-981145555 146-75-20060 - 80600 - 6-4 MARKS 6-664 - 604 - 604 - 60451-220000
becomes any depresent annue one grand-label the date a bits will also con-	PPERIOD by the specimental residence of the speciments of the spec
diselection tillespecie wienwilk projections dualicyments opilityments to pr	ner myndek, man, ez eleman "pilliphi i y verit ûnamittyvvetti m. pakendakvetibetegsteriji dab s. D

Listening ___

Pre-listening question. Where will you inno gardens in the future?

2. Listen to an interview with an architect, Dina Hassan. Which three sentences does Dina say about her house of the future? SB page 38

Presenter: Hello, welcome to our podcast(1): Homes of the

Future. Today, we have a special guest(2) - Dina

Hassan. She is a famous architect. Hello, Dina.

Dina : Hello.

Interviewer: What does an architect do?

Dina : Well, I design buildings such as houses or schools.

I think about what materials to use and I draw

pictures of it.

Interviewer: What are you designing at the moment?

Dina : I'm working on a project for houses for the future.

They'll be a bit different to our houses today.

Interviewer: In what ways will they be different?

Dina : Well, I think we'll need more

gardens in the future, but there won't be much space⁽³⁾. So the

garden will be on the roof.

Interviewer: A garden on the roof, great!

Dina : And I think people will all use

electric cars(4) in the future, so

there'll be chargers(5) for electric

car next to the house.

Interviewer: How will people get their electricity?

Dina : There'll be lots of solar panels⁽⁶⁾

and a wind turbine(7). They'll make

the electricity(8).





فراغ/ مسلمة (3)

سيرات كهربائية (4)

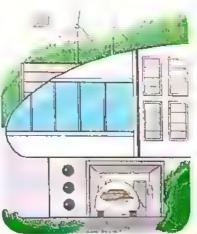
شواحن كمربية (5)

ألواح الطاقة الشمسية (6)

توربينات الرياح (7)

الكمرياء (8)







Interviewer: Great. What else will be different in 2050?

: Well, I think there will be robots(9) to do all the Dina

housework.

Interviewer: Fantastic! Will people use drones(10)?

: Yes, I think drones will bring food and parcels(11) Dina

to the house.

Interviewer: What materials will the house be made of?

: We will use plastic bricks that are very strong. We'll also use a lot Dina

of glass and metal. Look, here's a picture of what it will look like.

Interviewer: Oh it's beautiful. Thank you very much Dina for talking to

us. I think I'll like living in this house!

Post-listening question: - What materials will the house be made of in the future?

Reading

Pre-reading question:

How long will the journey to the moon take in 2080?

5. Read and circle the correct words.

Holidays on the moon

In 2080, you won't go to the beach (1) for your holiday (2). You will go to the moon (3)! There will be rockets (4) that leave Earth every day, and the journey will take only 12 hours. They will be very fast (5)

SB page 39

شلطئ (1)

بنسان آلي (9)

طرود (11)

طائرات بمون طيار (10)

إجازة (2)

القمر (3)

صواريخ (4)

سريع (5)

سيارة بدون سائق (6)

أكثر أمانا (7)

حوايث (8)

Driverless cars

In 2080, people won't drive a car. We will all have a driverless car (6). They will be safer (7) and there won't be any accidents (8). Students will read a book or watch TV when a computer on the car drives them to school!



Post-reading question:

- Do you think life in 2080 will be interesting? Why? Why not?



Lesson

Reading ____

Pre-reading question:

Why is a round building cheaper to build?

1. Look at the photos. What shape are all the houses?
Why do you think they are this shape?

SB page 40

Round(1) houses around the world

Many traditional (2) houses in the past were round.

Today, many modern (3) houses are also round. Why is this? There are lots of reasons!



مستدير (1)

تقليدي (2)

حىيث (3)

زلزال (4)

أكثر هنوءًا (5)

مستطيل (6)

مربع (7)

فراغ/ مسلحة (8)

A round shape means the building is very strong. This is important when there is an earthquake⁽⁴⁾ or in strong winds. Also, heavy snow or rain will fall from the roof.



A round house is also easier to keep warm or cool. It is also quieter⁽⁵⁾ inside a round building than a building that is a rectangle⁽⁶⁾ or square⁽⁷⁾.



Finally, a round building uses fewer materials (so it is cheaper to make). It also has more space (8) inside. How fantastic!



Post-reading question:

- Can you think of any disadvantages to a round house?



Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the corre	ect answer from a, i), coru: 4all	WB
1 can do r	many things for us. S	some of them can talk	d) Winds
a) Rockets	b) Robots	c) Turbines	u) Willus
2is an are	a that you can move	e around in.	
a) Star	b) Solar	c) Space	d) Wind
3. In the future, peo	ple will all use	cars.	■5B
	b) electronic		d) electric
4. A round house is			SB
a) keep	b) build	c) save	d) move
5. We put	panels on a roof. The	y produce electricity u	sing the sun. 🏻 😘
a) space	b) robot	c) drone	d) solar
6. In the future, ther	e will beth	nat leave Earth every d	ay.
a) solar panels	b) rockets		d) robots
7. A can fly	y, but it does not hav	e a pilot.	AVB
a) space	b) plane	c) drone	d) car
8. In some villages, t	here areh	ouses which were buil	t in the past.
a) traditional	b) new	c) modern	d) fast
9. A/An is t	when the earth sudo	lenly moves.	
a) igloo	b) accident	c) earthquake	d) temprature
10. Wind us	e the wind to produ	ce electricity.	WB
a) turbines	b) robots	c) rockets	d) panels
11. I want a good	to design my r	new villa.	
a) architect	b) pilot	c) driver	d) teacher
12. Tourists are our		pe friendly with them.	
a) relatives	b) guests	c) friends	d) enemies
13. How amazing! The	which my	uncle sent to me, con	tains a new mobile
phone.			
a) parce!	b) letter	c) email	d) postcard



Making predictions about the future:



MITH POSITIVE SENTENCES مع الجمل المثبتة

(Subject + will + (inf.) +)

- There will be electric cars in the future.
- We will go to the moon in the future.
- She will have a garden on the roof in the future.

Making predictions about the future

عمل تنبؤات عن المستقبل



مع الجمل المنفية WITH NEGATIVE SENTENCES

(Subject + won't + (inf.) +)

- Therewon't be robot teachers in the future.
- We will not live on the moon in the future.
- Robots will not be our teachers in the future.

مع الأسئلة WITH QUESTIONS

- Will there be electric cars in the future?
- Will welive on the moon in the future?
- Will she have a garden on the roof in the future?

Read and correct the underlined word:

-Do we all have driverless cars in the future?

(.....),



Language Exercises

1 Choose the corre	ct answer from a, b, o	ord:	SB
a)go	to the moon one day. b) went	c) goes	d) gone
2. Peopled a) won't	b) wouldn't	c) don't	d) didn't
3. in 2080, people a) drive	b) won't drive	use a driverless C c) will drive	ar. d) drives
4 my daug a) Would	ghter be a doctor in the b) Did	e future? c) Will	d) Has
5. In 2080, the journ a) takes	ey to the moon will b) taken	only 12 ho	d) take
6. Driverless cars will a) will	ll be safer. Thereb) won't	be any accider c) would	nts. d) weren't
7. People will all	electric cars.		
a) using	b) use	c) used	d) uses
8. A: Do you think w	e'll live on other plane	ets, Ali? B: No, we .	
a) don't	b) won't	c) aren't	d) didn't
2 Read and correct	t the underlined wor	ds:	
1. There will is rocke	ets that leave earth eve	ery day. () (SB1)
2. Students will to r	ead a book when the c	ar drives them	
to school.		() (SB)
3. Do you think we	will <u>having</u> robot teach	ners? (**************************************
4. <u>Did</u> we live in un	derground cities in the	e future? ()
5. There will be any	accidents.	(() (SB) (

Lessons 314

General Exercises

	and the sheet		- b cord: (dist	(نص الاستماع في نهاية ا
1	Listen and choose the	correct answer from	ia, b, coi d. (iii)	
	1. When will we have ele	ctric cars?		D. 8.1
	a) In the past.	b) In the future.	c) In the present.	d) Next week.
	2. What will electric cars	use?		
	a) Petrol.	b) Gas.	c) Electricity.	d) Water.
	3. A: Will it be hard to dri	ive electric cars in tra	ffic? B: No, it will be	Township of the Control of the Contr
	a) difficult.	b) easy.	c) different.	d) hard.
	4. What will electric cars	be better for?		
	a) The environment.	b) The land.	c) The air.	d) The park.
6	Read the following, t	hen answer the que	estions:	
C	Long ago, people co			s or camels. Then
	people invented bicycle	es and later trains, ca	rs and planes. In t	he future, we will
	have small electric cars.	They will be easy to	drive in traffic. The	ese cars won't use
	petrol. They will use elec	ctricity, so they will b	e better for the en	vironment. Now a
	lot of cities have too ma	ny cars. These cities v	vill build more met	ro lines, so people
	will be able to get arour			
A۱	Answer the following			
,	1. How could people tra	vel long ago?		******************************
	2. What does the under	lined word "they" refe	er to?	******************************
	3. In your opinion, why	will electric cars be b	etter for the enviro	nment?
B	Choose the correct ans	wer from a, b, c or o	l:	
_,	4. A lot of cities will buil			
			c) squares	d) buildings
	5. Electric cars will be	to drive in tra	affic.	
	a) hard		c) difficult	d) terrible
	6lines will ma	ake people get arour	nd cities quickly.	
	a) Metro	LVD .	c) Horses	d) Ferry



Choose the corr	ect answer from a, b, c	or d:	
1. The driverless ca	rs will stude	nts to school.	
a) drive	b) ride	c) fly	d) cycle
2. A lot of houses for	ell because of a strong	001000110011011000001 B	
a) earthquake	b) parcel	c) turbine	d) electricity
3. In the future, we	will not have TVs, we w	ill watch films on .	
a) radios	b) tablets	c) tables	d) cushions
4. My brother had	a/an because	e he drives very fa	
a) holiday	b) accident		d) drone
5. To be	means to be in a nice temp	perature that is hot	
a) warm	b) cool	c) hot	d) cold
6. Strong	can cause damage	to many building:	
a) fog	b) snow	c) winds	d) weather
Electric cars use	HDORNOLDMITSPEOPLEMENTER 4		
a) electricity	•	c) fuel	d) gas
8. In the future, I t	hink Egypt will	the world cup.	
a) win		c) won	d) winning
9. In 2060, there	robot teachers		
a) is	b) will not be		d) will be
10. How	we travel in the future?		
a) do	b) did	c) are	d) will
Read and corre	ect the underlined word	ds:	
1. In the future, w	e will <u>has</u> cities under th	e sea.	(**************************************
2. One day, we wi	ll to build houses using 3	3D printers.	(**************************************
3. In 2050, we are	all use electric cars.		(
4. By using a drive	erless car, we <u>will</u> be in d	anger.	(. D
Write a paragra	aph of Eighty (80) word	ls on:	
	"Your future pr		
######################################		***************************************	
474004000000000000000000000000000000000		# 44 2 wan 6 5 4 4 4 5 4 5 4 6 6 6 7 8 5 4 6 6 7 8 5 4 6 6 7 8 7 8 6 7 8 7 8 7 8 7 8 7 8 7 8 7	45444444444444444444444444444444444444
F*************************************		***************************************	



SB pages 41, 42 WB pages 97 & 98

Vocabulary

Key Vocabula	ry	the shows the second second second	الازنسية	عالمفرد
imagination	خيال	size	حجم	جبل کلیمنجارو Mount Kilimanjaro
creative	مبدع	technology	التكنولوجيا	African footballer لاعب كرة إفريقي
writing task	مهمة كتابة	important eve	ents أحداث هامة	European Champions League دوری أبطال أوروبا

*Additional*Voc	abulary an	المعدرية الأنجاب	
learn (learnt/le	arned) نتعلم idea	mountain فكرة	جبل
Switzerland	look (ed) like سویسرا	shape يشبه	شکل

Lang	uage	Expressions		बुडम ि व	ljaux	XI (1)	
be	•	born in	ولد في	write	•	down	يدون
ride	•	a bike	يركب دراجة	make	•	a plan	يعمل خطة
start	١	school	يبدأ الدراسة	climb	•	a mountain	يتسلق جبل

Prepositions		هرويه القر	
move to	on holiday ينتقل إلى	different to في الإجازة	مختلف عن

Cor	njugations of Irregula	تصريف الافعال غير المنتظمة		
C	Present	Past simple	Past participle	
ride	يركب	rode	ridden	
keep	ي المراجعة	kept	kept	



Language Notes

Saying years

قراءة الأعوام

Years

Years are normally divided into two parts

1984

nineteen eighty-four

تتقسم الأعوام عادة إلى جزأين

1066 ten sixty-six

1652 sixteen fifty-two

1941 nineteen forty-one

2017 twenty seventeen

2000 - 2010

For the year **2000** you say (the year) **two thousand**.

- يقرأ العام ٢٠٠٠ (Two thousand):

For the years 2001 to 2010, we normally say

- تقرأ الأعوام من ٢٠٠١ إلى ٢٠١٠ كالتالي:

two thousand and + number.

2001 two thousand and one

2005 two thousand and five

2008 two thousand and eight

When a year ends in a number between 01 and 09, then that last part is pronounced as the name of the letter 0 + number.

- عندمــا ينتمى عام بين الأرقــام (٥١ - ٩ •) ينطق الصفر نطق الحرف «O».

1709 seventeen O nine

1901 nineteen O one

When a year ends in 00 (e.g. 1600), then the year is said as the digits before 00, and then hundred.

- يقرأ الرقم المنتمي بـ (١٠٠) كالتالي:

1300 thirteen hundred

1800 eighteen hundred

After 2010

For the first year after 2010, you may hear two different versions.

- الأعوام التي تلي ٢٠١٠ ثقراً بطريقتين:

2012 two thousand and twelve

2012 twenty twelve



- لا نقوم بجمع الكلمات (thousand / hundred) في حالة وجود رقم قبلها.

two thousand and twenty

seventeen hundred

Listening

Pre-listening question:

Where was Basel born?

Lesson

3. Listen to Basel and complete the timeline.

SB page 41

Basel: Hi, I'm Basel. These are the important events(1) in my life.

I was born in 2007 in Alexandria. I started school in 2012.

جبل کلمنجارو (2)

أحداث (1)

l liked my school!

I learned to ride a bike in 2013. I love my bike! In 2018, we moved to a new house. We live in Cairo now.



In 2019, we went on holiday to the Red Sea.

It was amazing!

In 2023, I will climb Mount Kilimanjaro(2) – I hope so anyway!

3. Listen to the life of Mohammed Salah and complete the dates.

ائتقل إلى (3)

WB page 97

لاعب كره قدم إفريقي (4)

دوري أبطال أوريا (5)

Mohamed Salah was born in Cairo in 1992. He started playing football for El Mokawloon in 2010. He then moved to Switzerland to play for Basel in 2012.

In 2014, he went to London to play for Chelsea. Three years later, in 2017, he went to play for Liverpool. Mohamed Salah was also African Footballer⁽⁴⁾ of the Year in 2017, and in 2019, he won the

European Champions League⁽⁵⁾ with Liverpool.

Post-listening question:

- What do you think of Mohamed Salah?



Vocabulary Exercises

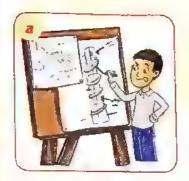
Choose the correc	t answer from a, b, c	or d:	
1. Mohamed Salah w	on theCha	impions League with	Liverpool.
a) African		c) Arab	d) American
2. In 2014, Salah wer	nt to London to play	Chelsea.	
a) by	b) out	c) for	d) to
3. My family	to a new house in	2015.	
a) bought	b) moved	c) had	d) kept
4. When were you	######################################		
a) born	b) burn	c) bear	d) barn
5. This year is two	and twenty.		
a) thousands	b) thousand	c) hundred	d) hundreds
6. When did you lea	arn toa bike	e, Aya?	
a) drive	b) sail	c) fly	d) ride
7. My father	a mountain in 201	0.	
a) climbed	b) jumped	c) built	d) made
8. In 2017, I went to	Alexandria	. holiday.	
a) by	b) on	c) with	d) to
9. Many traditional	African houses are rou	nd in	
a) ship	b) shop	c) chop	d) shape
10. Can you write	your notes he	ere, please?	
a) up	b) down	c) on	d) with
11. What are the	you will use to	build your house?	
a) materials	b) sports	c) subjects	d) roads
12. Tablets, laptops	and smartphones are k	sinds of new	OIPA I
a) diagrams	b) technology	r) houses	d) dotaile



How to plan a creative writing task

كيف تخطط لمهمة كتابة إبداعية؟

Read and match the sentences to the pictures.







- 1. C First, think of as many ideas as you can. What will the house look like? What will it be made of? What will be different to houses of today? You can write down or draw your ideas. Use your imagination and have fun!
- Then, decide which of your ideas are the best. Keep the other ideas for another time.
- 3. Finally, think about your best ideas in more detail. How can you make the ideas work? Make a plan (maybe in a diagram or drawing). You can change any ideas that don't work.



طيفية تمثيل أحداثك الهامة على خط زمنى طراعت How to write your timeline

- I was born in 2007.
- I started school in 2013.
- I learnt to ride a bike in 2014.
- I moved to a new house in 2016.

- ولدت عام ۲۰۰۷.
- بدأت الدراسة عام ٢٠١٣.
- تعلمت ركوب الدراجة عام ٢٠١٤.
- انتقلت إلى منزل جديد عام ٢٠١٦.

Lessons 516

General Exercises

1	Complete	the follow	wing di	ialogue:
- 14	ahiha •He	llo Basma	When	were vo

Habiba: Hello, Bas	ma. When were you b	orn?	
	n in (1)		
Habiba: When did	you (2)	school?	
Basma: I started s	chool (3)	two thou	sand seven.
Habiba: Did you le	earn to ride a (4)	***************************************	
Basma: Yes, I did.			
Habiba : (5)	ri yên dovadî yen û (2-10 û bû de 200 q î bû în (ii dare) i û û û û û û û û û û û û û û û û û û		
Basma: Last year.			
Choose the corr	ect answer from a, b	, c or d:	
1. Have you got an	yabout how	to build a new hous	e?
a) ideas	b) planes	c) materials	d) objects
2. Kilimanjaro is a f	amousin Af	rica.	
a) sea	b) mountain	c) lake	d) country
3. Use your imagin	ation, be		
a) traditional	b) old	c) creative	d) ancient
4. What will the ho	use you dream of loo	k?	
a) out	b) after	c) up	d) like
5. Big, small, large	and medium are	nagęszninea d	
a) sizes	b) shapes	c) colours	d) sports
6. Mr Waleed taug	ht us how to plan a cr	eative writing	denota p
a) tàsk	b) mask	c) ask	d) tusk
7. It's important to	for your fut	ure.	
a) plan	b) plane	c) plain	d) plate

Welcome to my home!

8. What are your	made of?		
a) book	b) shoes	c) bag	d) wallet
9. ln 2030, Egypt	tbe one of t	he greatest countries	in the world.
a) will	b) would	c) have	d) did
10 ther	e any taps in ancient I	gyptian houses?	
a) Are	b) Did	c) Were	d) Will
3 Read and cor	rect the underlined v	words:	
1. What's your ja	cket making of?		(
2. I will have <u>a</u> el	ectric car in the future	<u>.</u>	(*************************************
3. Many clocks is	made of metal and p	lastic.	(
4. Do you think	we'll <u>lives</u> on the moo	n in the future?	(*****************************
Write a parag	raph of Eighty (80) v	vords on:	
		in the future"	

}*************************************) + + = < > 1		
******************************	>=====================================		
	.,,==4.10,;==14.071;===14.44;041;,00;;00;		
************************	441914447774117411441144118411841189913999514434	***************************************	***************************************
		4 2 2 1 0 0 2 1 1 0 7 7 1 1 0 7 2 2 7 0 0 0 7 1 0 0 0 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,
12-1			
****	- Ig	الأوالية	
Wednesday.		فع نقاطك واستبدلها	
\$		ن بعجموعة عن الهدايا الرائعة موجودة علم متجر الأضواء	יות ווו
		حل على: www.aladwaa.com	اد



Videoscript 🕨

SB page 39

Do you live in a village or in a city?

And do you live on the coast⁽¹⁾, near the sea or in the desert⁽²⁾? There are often different houses for each place.

This house is a traditional Nubian house. The floors⁽³⁾ are made of sand⁽⁴⁾ and there is normally a bench⁽⁵⁾ outside each house to sit on. This is made of mud⁽⁶⁾.

These Nubian houses are in Aswan. They're very colourful.

There are paintings on the walls of Nubian houses of things like fish, crocodiles⁽⁷⁾ and palm trees⁽⁸⁾.

The door of each house usually faces⁽⁹⁾ south. This is to protect people from the strong wind from the north.

Houses will probably be different in the future. Many houses will be made of recycled material or natural material in, like wood.

This hotel is in Siwa and it's made of natural materials. The roof⁽¹²⁾ is made of palm trees.

Many houses in the future will use the sun for electricity. This is called solar power⁽¹³⁾.

What type of house do you want to live in? Is it a house?

Or is it an apartment? There are lots of different places to live in.

السادل (1)

متحراء (2)

الأرضية (3)

رمال (4)

مقعد (5)

طين (6)

تماسيح (7)

نخيل (8)

پولچه (9)

مولد معاد تصنيعها (10)

مواد طبيعية (11)

السقف (12)

الطاقة الشمسية (13)

Unit 10 Review

Vocabulary

a Vocabulary		to the definition of the second se	نظرهات			
lamp	مصباح	cushions	وسائد	teaspoon	ملعقة شاي	
statue	تمثال	sofa	كنبة	oven	فرن	
bricks	الطوب	curtains	ستائر	village	قرية	
tap	صنبور/ حنفية	نى) roof	السطح (سطح المب	shape	شكل	
the Valley of t	he Kings وادى الملوك	ancient Egyp رعونية)	t مصر القديمة (الف	size	حجم	
plan	يخطط	the Nile Valle	y وادى النيل	technology	التكنولوجيا	
creative	وعبه	imagination	خيال	solar panels مسية	ألواح الطاقة الش	
writing task	مهمة كتابة	diagram	رسم توضيمي	wind turbines	توربينات الرياح	
electricity	الكهرياء	drone	طائرة بدون طيار	cool	رطب	
robot	إنسان آلي	electric car	سيارة كمربائية	sign	علامة/ لافتة	
earthquake	زلزال	warm	دافئ	rockets	صواريخ	
space	مساحة	traditional	تقليدي	a driverless car	سيارة بدون سائق	
African footb	aller لاعب كرة إفريقي	European Chai	mpions League دوری أبطال أوربا	temperature	درجة الحرارة	
	Shape			الأشكار		
round	مستدير الشكل	square	مربع	rectangular	مستطيل الشكل	
	Materia		اs الخام		المواد الـ	
cotton	قطن	plastic	ىلاستىك	wool	صوف	
glass	زجاج	stone	حجر	metal	معدن	
leather	جلد	wood	خشب	paper	الورق	





To describe materials of an object we use

لوصف المواد الخام نشىء نستخدمه

1 is/are made of

Subject + is / are + made of (material)

Form

التكوين

- The sofa is made of leather.
- The cushions are made of cotton.

Ouestion

السؤال

- What + is / are + subject + made of?
- What is the sofa made of?
- What are the cushions made of?

2. There was / There were

- نستخدم (there were/was) بمعنى (كان هناك) للتعبير عن وجود شيء/أشياء في الماضي.
- There was a kitchen in his house.
- There wasn't any juice in the fridge.
- There were boats in ancient Egypt.
- There weren't any bedrooms at their houses.

3. Making predictions about the future

(Subject + will + (inf.) +)

- There will be electric cars in the future.
- There won't be robot teachers in the future.

Welcome to my home!

Answer



1, Saying what things are made of الإخبار عن مم صنعت الأشياء

1	What is the wallet made of?	- It is made of leather.
2	What are the socks made of?	-They are made of wool.
3	What is the statue made of?	- It is made of stone.
4	What are the teaspoons made of?	- They are made of metal.
5	What is the toy made of?	- It is made of plastic.

2. How to write your timeline

كيفية تمثيل أحداثك الهامة على خط زمنى

- I was born in 2007.
- I started school in 2013.
- I learnt to ride a bike in 2014.
- I moved to a new house in 2016.

Question

- ولدت عام ۲۰۰۷.
- بدأت الدراسة عام ٢٠١٣.
- تعلمت ركوب الدراجة عام ٢٠١٤.
- انتقلت إلى منزل جديد عام ٢٠١٦.

Test

based on Unit 10

(نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1. Where will most people live? d) In seas. c) In space. a) in water. b) In skyscrapers. 2 How are cities now? d) Dangerous. a) Full. b) Fill. c) Empty. 3. How will spaces in cities be in the future? a) Enough. d) Few. b) Not enough. c) Many. 4. How will skyscrapers be in the future? b) Higher. d) Stronger. a) Lower. c) Weaker. Complete the following dialogue: Wafaa : I like your new shoes. What are they made of? Wafaa : When did you (2).....them? Tasnem: I bought them last week. Wafaa : Who bought them for you? Wafaa : (4).....? Tasnem: It was my birthday. Wafaa : Great. Can you come with me to buy a pair for me? Tasnem: (5).....

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Materials are very important in our life. Metals can be used to make cars, bicycles and machines. We can also use plastic to make rulers, chairs and some tables. We can get oil and gold from mines which are underground. It's dangerous to go inside mines, but we get a lot of money from them. Cotton is used to make clothes. We can make blankets, jumpers and other clothes from wool.

A) A	nswer the following	questions:		
1.	. What's the passage a	bout?		
2	What is plactic used t	for?		464844801544114411411411414141414
3.	. Why do you think ma	aterials are importan	t?	4403434839983983444444444444444444444444
3) Cl	hoose the correct an	swer from a, b, c or	d:	
4.	Cars are made of	negyphongiódiá O		
	a) gold	b) metal	c) rubber	d) cotton
5.	The underlined word	l "them" refers to	ourseissiayas g	
	a) jumpers	b) materials	c) mines	d) blankets
6.	What can we make fi	rom wool?		
	a) Jumpers.	b) Tablets.	c) Blankets.	d) a and c
1	Choose the correct	answer from a. b. c	or d:	
	There are four	· ·		
1,	a) chairs	b) cushions	c) tables	d) windows
2	I use my to		•	•
	a) wallet	_	c) CD	d) tablet
	a) wanet	·		
	a) Statues	b) Books	c) Shoes	d) Laptops
	cars can go		9, 2112 22	
	a) Driverless		c) Old	d) Traditional
	When it's, i		,	
	a) hot	b) sunny		d) cool
	building is	•	•	nside.
	a) Around		c) A circle	
	Ancient Egyptians		white.	
	a) painted	b) bought	c) sold	d) met
	There is En	_	j .	
	a) a	b) any	c) an	d) no article
	were ancie		ade of?	
	a) When	b) Where	c) Why	d) What
	There any			
	a) are	b) aren't	c) were	d) weren't
	u) wi =		-,	3/ 1/3/4/14



Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1. Was there boats in ancient Egypt?
- 2. A: What is this bottle made from? B: Plastic.
- 3. There's an tree in front of my house.
- 4. Do you think we would have robot doctors in the future?



(.....)

(.....)

(....)

6 Write a paragraph of Eighty (80) words on:

WB:

"The house of the future"

****************				2149944455444544444	
***************************************				*************	

**************	***************		*************	**************	
42277140012477771016164177771171171171644182107					
4					
	*****************		14001100144414		

***************************	491600001124114419461411411414				
***************************************	***************	*********************	,,.,		***********
				, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	







Key Vocabu	lary		فردات الرئيسي	ما	
land	اليابسة	ocean	محيط	danger	خطر
protect (ed)	يحفى	poisonous	سام	sting	يلدغ
	Sea ani	imals	بحرية	حيوانات	
coral reef	الشعب المرجانية	shark	سمكة القرش	whale	حوت
jellyfish	قندين البحر	stingray	لسمكة اللادغة	octopus	أخطبوط
turtle	سلحماة بحرية				

Additional	locabulary	energenielle glagferen	
shell	tooth (teeth) صدفة	flat سن (أسنان)	مسطح
touch (ed)	hard یلمس	بلت tail	ذيل

Lang	uage Expression	18	Maril Harris	
be	► in danger	یکون می خطر	lose > a tooth	يفقد سنًا من الأسنان
feel	▶ tired	يشعر بالتعب	touch ▶ a jellyfish	يلمس قنديل البحر
have	► a test	لديه اختبار	forget ▶ my pencil case	ائسى مقلمتى

Prepositions		n sensentifi territarin della de La composito della d	, , th	(A Dir.	
protect from	يحمي من	go into	يدخل في	jump out of	يقفز خارح
hit with	يضرب بــ	swim away	يسبح بعيدا	in danger	فی خطر

Words and	d Opposit	əs		ا وعكسها	ieisii)		
danger	الخطر	safety	الأمان		ثقيل	light	خفيف
noisy	مباخب	quiet	هادئ	lose	يفقدا يخسر	win	يفوز



Cor	ijugations of Irregular	Verbs šak	تصريف الأفعال غير المنتر
	Present	Past simple	Past participle
grow	ينمو	grew	grown
swim	يعوم/ يسبح	swam	swum
sting	يلدغ	stung	stung
hit	يخبط/ يضرب	hit	hit
lose	یفق <i>دا</i> یخسر	lost	lost

Language Notes

hard

تستخدم كصفة/ظرف بمعانى مختلفة (صلب - صعب - بجدية).

The seats in the room were very hard.

- The exam was hard. It had very difficult questions.
- I study hard to get high marks.

other

أخر (یاتی بعدها اسم جمع)

• I bought other books yesterday.

another

أخر (یأتی بعدها اسم مفرد أو رقم)

- I bought another book yesterday.
- I bought another five books yesterday.

poisonous

سام، (بطبيعته) أو فاسد (مع الطعام أو الشراب)

•This is a poisonous snake. Don't touch it.

poisoned

مسمم (وضع فيه السم)

• This food is poisoned. I saw someone put poison in it.

Check Point



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. It's for me to climb a mountain.
 - a) hardness
- b) hardly
- c) hardest
- d) hard
- 2. I feel sleepy, so I'm going to havecup of coffee.
 - a) another
- b) other
- c) others
- d) the others



Reading _

Pre-reading guestion:

How many sea animals can you see?

Read and complete the text with a word from the photos.

SB page 45

Dangers of the sea

The shark(1) is one of the most dangerous sea animals (2) in the ocean (3) . If it loses a tooth, a new one grows. A shark uses more than 20,000 teeth in its life!



themselves from danger (5)?

A stingray (6) is a big, flat fish and it lives in the coral reef(7). If it knows a shark is coming, it jumps out of the water!

A sea turtle (8) has a hard shell to protect it. Other animals can swim very fast - the octopus 9) has got eight legs to help it!



- سمكة القرش (1)
- حيوانات بحرية (2)
- محيط (3)
- يدمى (4)
- الخطر (5)
- السمكة اللادغة (6)
- الشعب المرجلتية (7)
- سلحفاة بحرية (8)
- الأخطبوط (9)
- قىديل البحر (10)
- سلم (11)
- الحوث (12)

Some sea life, like the jellyfish⁽¹⁰⁾ is poisonous⁽¹¹⁾. It stings you when you touch it.

What about the whales(12)? These big, heavy animals hit with their big tails!









Post-reading question:

- How many legs does the octopus have?

	vocabulary	Exe	rcises	
Channath.	-t			

choose the corre	ct answer from a, b, (or d:				
1. The is o	ne of the most danger	ous sea animals in the	ocean. SB			
a) dolphin	b) shark	c) jellyfish	d) turtle			
2. A is a b	ig, flat fish and it lives	in the coral reefs.	SB.			
a) stingray	b) turtle	c) octopus	d) shell			
3. A shark uses more	e than 20,000	in its life.	(SB)			
a) tails	b) legs	c) fins	d) teeth			
4. A sea h	as a hard shell to prot	ect it.	-SB			
a) octopus	b) turtle	c) whale	d) stingray			
5. We should try to	a lot of trees	to help the environm	ient.			
a) lose	b) plant	c) keep	d) attend			
6. The is p	ooisonous. It stings yo	u when you touch it.				
a) whale	b) shark	c) jellyfish	d) turtle			
7. Mona jumped	the water bec	ause it was very cold.				
a) out	b) in	c) from	d) out of			
8. You should	yourself from the	e cold. Put on your coa	t.			
a) protect	b) help	c) sting	d) hit			
9. The snake is a	animal. Don't	get near to it.				
a) poisoned	b) poison	c) poisoning	d) poisonous			
10. How often do y	oua maths t	est?				
a) lose	b) have	c) grow	d) forget			
11are bi	g, heavy animals that l	nit with their big tails.				
a) Stingrays	b) Whales	c) Walls	d) Snakes			
12. He drove so fast that I really felt my life was in						
a) danger	b) help	c) relax	d) safe			
13. Her daughter c	ried because she was .	by a bee.	(3)			
a) stung	b) swum	c) grown	d) eaten			







I. The present simple tense:

رمن المقارع البسيط

تذكر أن المضارع البسيط يُستخدم للتعبير عن الحقائق الثابتة والعادات،

وهو يتكون من:

!/ We/ You/ They/ اسم جمع + inf.+

inf. + (s/es/ies) + اسم مفرد /He/ She/ It

- We clean our teeth every day.
- •Sara helps her mother in the kitchen.

ويُنفى المضارع البسيط بــ:

Subject + don't/doesn't + inf.

I don't like sweets.

•Ola doesn't like fish.

2. The zero conditional.

The district of the second

Form

Form

التكوين

التكوين

If/When

Present simple مضارع بسيط

Present simple

مضارع بسيط

Present simple

مضارع بسيط

if/when

Present simple مضارع يسيط

We use the zero conditional to talk about things that are always true.

- نستخدم حالة الشرط الصفرية للتعبير عن حقائق علمية أو حياتية.

- Usage
- الاستخدام
- If it rains, we get water. = We get water if it rains.
- When it's late, I feel tired. = I feel tired when it's late.

عند وجود علامة من المضارع البسيط (often – usually – always) في جملة جواب الشرط يتم استخدام الحالة الصفرية.

When I've got a test, I always revise well.





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:					
1. If you touch a j	ellyfish, ityou	4	SB		
a) sting	b) stings	c) stung	d)'s sting		
2. When a stingra	ya shark is co	oming, it jumps out o	f the water. SB		
a) will know	b) know	c) knows	d) knew		
3. When I have a	test, I alwaysı	my lessons hard.	SB		
a) revise	b) revised	c) will revise	d) revises		
4. If a shark	a tooth, a new one	grows.	SB		
a) loses	b) lost	c) will lose	d) lose		
5. When a turtle	is in danger, it	into its shell.	SB		
a) went	b) would go	c) go	d) goes		
6. When we mix	red and yellow, we	orange.			
a) get	b) got	c) would get	d) gets		
7. If I feel thirsty,	l always wate	r.			
a) will drink	b) drinks	c) drank	d) drink		
8. I eat an apple	when I hungr	y .			
a) was	b) will be	c) 'm	d) were		
2 Read and co	rrect the underlined w	ords;			
1. The octopus swam away fast when it's in danger. (
2. When I'm late	(11)44-001174-011110-14-04-04-04				
3. If I forgot my	()				
4. If it is very hot	(,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,				
	ed animals, they <u>died</u> .		(
6. If we heat wa	()				





وصف حيوان بحري Describing a sea animal

Guessing which animal it is:

التخمين أي حيوان يكون هذا:

الرو Reply



Speaking Exercises

Complete the following dialogue: Ahmed: It is one of the most dangerous sea animals in the ocean. Can you guess which one it is? : It is the (1)...... Tarek Ahmed: Yes, you are right. The second one is a big, flat fish and it lives in the ocean. : I think it is a (2)...... Tarek Ahmed: Wonderful! The next one is a sea animal which has a hard shell to protect it. Tarek: It is a (3) Ahmed: Fantastic! It is your turn to (4)...... me. : OK. It can swim fast. It's got eight legs. Tarek Ahmed: I think it is an (5)...... Tarek : Great! You are right.





Key Vocabulary		a a constant	فردات الرييسي	الم	
environment	البيئة	recycle (d)	يعيد تصنيع	sea life	الحياة البحرية
save (d)	ينقذ	fisherman	صباد السمك	planet	كوكب
throw away	يرمى	rubbish	قمامة	1	

Additionald	ocabulary	ang makat pangkan di pangkan bandi da mangkan da mangkan da mangkan da mangkan da mangkan da mangkan da mangka Mangkan da mangkan da m Mangkan da mangkan da m			
plastic	بلاستيك	sea bird	طائر البحر	the sports centre	مرکر ریاضی
everywhere	مٰی کل مکان	shopping bag	حقيبة للتسوق	beach	شاطئ
somewhere	ٔ فی مکاں ما	describe (d)	يصف	way	طريق / طريقة
problem	مشكنة	materials	مواد خام		

Langu	age Expressions		والكون	FEGI-211	
take	▶ a long time	بستغرق وقتاً طويلًا	write	▶ a text	يكتب نضا
stay	in the enviro	nment يظل في البيئة	more	▶ than once	لأكثر من مرة
recycle	▶ plastic	يعيد تصنيع البلاستيك	walk	▶ in the mountains	يتجول في الحبال

Prepositions		ang panakan dianah kanan	Wil and		
use for	يستخدم اـــ	stay in	ا يىقى فى	on beach	على الشاطئ
most of	معظم	for example	على سبيل المثال	die from	يموتبسب
get rid of	يتخلص من	try to	يدول أن	dangerous for	خطیر علی
clean from	ينظف من	throw into	يلقى في	for a long time	لمدة طويلة
take off	يخلع	walk on	يمشى على	a view of	منضر اـ



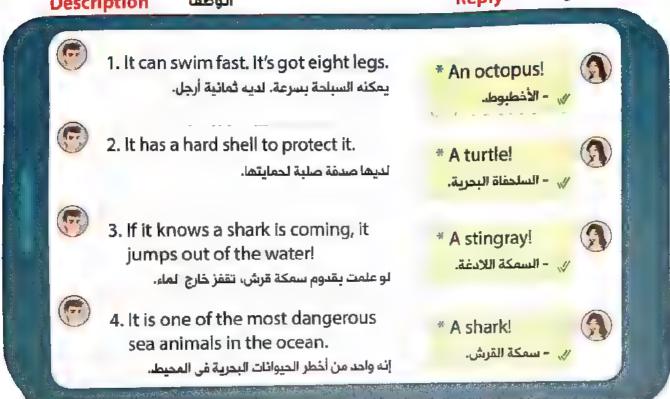


وصف حيوان بحرى Describing a sea animal

Guessing which animal it is:

التخمين أي حيوان يكون هذا:

الرد Reply الوصف Description



Speaking Exercises

ĺ	Comp	lete the following dialogue:	
	Ahmed	: It is one of the most dangerous sea animals in the ocean. Can you gu	ess
		which one it is?	
	Tarek	: It is the (1)	
	Ahmed	: Yes, you are right. The second one is a big, flat fish and it lives in the oce	ean.
	Tarok	• 1 think it is a (2)	
	Ahmed	: Wonderful! The next one is a sea animal which has a hard shell to protect	rt it.
	Tarek	: It is a (3)	
	Ahmed	: Fantastic! It is your turn to (4)	me.
	Tarek	: OK. It can swim fast. It's got eight legs.	
	Ahmed	: i think it is an (5)	
		: Great! You are right.	



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary	and the same of	ă.	فرذات الإنسي		
environment	البيئة	recycle (d)	يعيد تصنيع	sea life	الحياة البحربة
save (d)	ينقذ	fisherman	صياد السمك	planet	کوکب
throw away	يرمى	rubbish	قمامة	*	

Additional !	Vocabulary	agentia et el la Territo de la francia de la cele ncia. La compansa de la francia de la celencia del celencia de la celencia de la celencia del celencia de la celencia del la celencia de la celencia del la celencia de la celencia del la celencia de la celencia del la celencia del la celencia del la celen			
plastic	بلاستيك	sea bird	طائر البحر	the sports centre	مرکز ریاضی
everywhere	فی کل مکان	shopping bag	حقيبة للتسوق	beach	شاطئ
somewhere	فی مکان ما	describe (d)	يصف	way	طريق / طريقة
problem	مشكلة	materials	مواد خام		

Langu	uge Expressions	and the second s			
take	a long time	يستغرق وقتا طويلا	write	▶ a text	یکتب نصًا
stay	▶ in the enviror	nment يظل مي البيئة	more	▶ than once	لأكثر من مرة
recycle	▶ plastic	يعيد تصنيع البلاستيك	walk	▶ in the mountains	يتجول في الجبال

Prepositions			وف الجر		
use for	يستخدم لـــ	stay in	يبقى في	on beach	على الشاطئ
most of	معظم	for example	على سبيل المثال	die from	يموت بسبب
get rid of	يتخلص من	try to	يحاول أن	dangerous for	خطیر علی
clean from	ينظف من	throw into	يلقى في	for a long time	لمدة طويلة
take off	يخلع	walk on	يمشى على	a view of	 منظر لـ



Conjugations of Irregular Verbs قطال غير المنتظمة	A
The sales of the control of the cont	COMI
Conjugations of Irregular Verbs and indicate the conjugations of Irregular Verbs	Appendix no.
	3.0

Pr	esent Past simple	Past participle
find	found یجد	found
mean	meant یعنی/ یقصد	meant

Definitions	alayan alamata da ayan	gágod()
throw away	يرمى	put something you do not need somewhere.
planet	كوكب	two words to describe where we live.
environment	البيئة	two words to describe where we live.
recycle	يعيد تصنيع	a verb which means use again.
rubbish	قمامة	things we do not need, like old paper.

Language Notes

stop + (v + ing)

We mustn't stop helping our planet.

stop + (to + inf.)

• We must stop to buy food. We are very hungry.

die from يموت بسبب

She died from a heart attack.

die out

All dinosaurs died out millions of years ago.

Check Point

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
- 1. Ali stopped because of the doctor's advice.
- a) to smoke b) smoking c) smoked d) smoke
- 2. Her husband died a serious disease.
- a) from b) out c) because d) at



How to write about keeping our environment clean گیفیهٔ الکتابة عن الحفاظ علی بطاقه البیئه

- It is very important to look after our environment.
- We must keep it clean.
- (الاشدر التي بيعي معلما) We must-
- We mustn't (الاشياء التي لا ينبعي معلما)
- We should try to recycle old things.
- We should teach our children how to keep it clean and healthy.

Writing tips

Make sure you are writing in the right tense. The prompt will guide you.

تأكد من استجدام برمن المناسب في الكتابة التعرف علية من خلال العبوان



The environment

It's important to live a healthy life. The environment is the place where we all live. We must keep it clean to be healthy. When plastic stays in the environment, there is a big problem. Some of the plastic is about 100 years old! Every year, many sea animals die from plastic. We must try to use other materials like paper and glass. We must use our shopping bags more than once. We mustn't throw them away. We mustn't stop trying to find ways to help our planet. We must keep our planet clean. We must save it!

Now,	your	turn:
------	------	-------

حان دورك الأن:

Curplanet"	
We must keep our planet clean.	I (Adjonosa IDI 4 yawiiiiiA4 jest aash
THE SELECTION OF MALE COLUMN TO THE COLUMN THE COLUMN TWO COLUMNS TO THE SECOND THE COLUMN THE COLUMN THE SECOND THE COLUMN THE SECOND THE COLUMN THE SECOND THE SECO	nà as.
THE ST COST CONTROL OF THE PROPERTY OF THE PRO	w.m.imi 4 + w + -k 8 mmpepeedbb
er to the first hard and the constraint of the state of t	d Edd - dd whdold y dd dd a a dd Edd - hrydd yw, dh Edd w
Figure 1 to 1 the 1 to 1 t	s 'mppess-stacknija estedich'-mnam
ADE 17-91 DE 19-99 CO. S. C.	III a. all.I mamin — a ha — immedited
\$10000000 C cold concepts	her a a g du en rapidiblé ten



Reading

Pre-reading question.

What happens to most of the plastic we use?

3. Read the text and check your answers to Exercise 1.

SB page 46

We must save our planet!

Plastic is everywhere! We use it for many different things. The problem is, plastic stays in the environment⁽¹⁾ for a very long time.



- البيئة (1)
- يعيد تصنيع (2)
- يرمي (3)
- قمامة (4)
- كوكب (5)

Some of the plastic people find on beaches is about 100 years old! We can recycle (2) some plastic, but most of it goes into the ocean. Plastic is poisonous when animals eat it.

Every year, more than 100,000 sea animals and birds die from plastic. We must try to use other materials – paper and glass, for example – because these are easier to recycle.

When we use a plastic shopping bag, we mustn't throw away (3) these bags in rivers.



It will take a long time to clean all the plastic rubbish⁽⁴⁾ from the beaches and the ocean. But we mustn't stop trying to help our planet⁽⁵⁾!

Post-reading question:

- Which two materials are easier to recycle than plastic?

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:					
1. Earth is one of eight that go around the sun.					
a) planes	b) plans	c) plants	d) planets		
2 is a ve	erb which means use	e again.	SB		
a) Recycle	b) Grow	c) Throw	d) Sting		
3. Things which we d	on't need like old pa	per are called	SB		
a) materials	b) rubbish	c) tails	d) shells		
4. We mustn't	old things away	. We can recycle them.			
a) collect	b) touch	c) throw	d) sting		
5. We need a type of	fuel that won't poll	ıte the			
a) environment	b) ocean	c) rubbish	d) whale		
6. We should all our old paper and clothes.					
a) throw	b) burn	c) clean	d) recycle		
7. Plastic is	when animals ea	t it.			
a) good	b) healthy	c) useful	d) poisonous		
8. Most of the plastic goes the ocean.					
a) out	b) into	c) with	d) by		
9. Crossing roads is	9. Crossing roads is for old people. We should help them.				
a) dangerous	b) flat	c) poisonous	d) easy		
10. Every year, more than 100, 000 sea animals and birds dieplastic.					
a) from	b) for	c) in	d) out		
11. How long will it take to clean the rubbishoceans and beaches?					
a) for	b) from	c) at	d) by		
12. It tooktime to reach the station because of the heavy traffic.					
a) along	b) a short	c) a long	d) short		





must / mustn t

should//shouldn/f

الرام Obligation

must + inf.

يجب ان

We use (must) to talk about things that are necessary to do.

- تستخدم (must) بمعنى «يجب أن» للتعبير عن الأشياء التي من الضروري أن تحدث.
- •We must save our planet.
- You must help your mother at home.
- You must study your lessons hard.

mustn't + inf.

يجب ألا

We use (mustn't) to talk about things that are necessary not to do.

- تســتخدم (mustn't) بمعنــى «يجــب، ألا» للتعبير عن الأشياء التى من الضرورى ألا تحدث.
- We mustn't throw rubbish into the ocean.
- You mustn't talk in the library.

Advice ตอนุกร์

should + inf

يجب أن

We use (should) to talk about things

that are a good idea to do.

نصتخدم (should) للحديث عن الأشياء التي يكون -

فعلها فكرة جيدة.

•We should recycle more.

shouldn't + inf

بجب ألا

We use (shouldn't) to talk about things that are a good idea not to do.

- نستخدم (shouldn't) للحديث عن الأشياء التي يكون فعلما فكرة غير جيدة.

We shouldn't use plastic bags just once.

۱- استخدام (must) يعطى المعنى أكثر قوة من استخدام (should):



- You must wear your school uniform.
- 111
- (إلزام)

You should get up early.

- 1
- (نصيحة)

٢- تعبر (mustn't) عن الإلزام بينما تستخدم (shouldn't) للتعبير عن النصيحة.

- •You mustn't cross the road when the traffic light is red. ٧٧٧ (الزام)
- You shouldn't sleep late on a school night.

(نصبحة)



Language Exercises

Ĭ	Choose the correc	t answer from a, b, c	or d:	
	1. You play	games in the road.		WB
	a) must	* *	c) would	d) wouldn't
	2. When you cross a ro		find a safe place to c	ross. WB
	a) haven't		c) mustn't	d) must
	3. When you cross a ro	oad, youlook	left and right.	WB
	a) must	b) are	c) aren't	d) mustn't
	4. Peoplesn	noke in hospitals.		
	a) must	b) mustn't	c) should	d) have
	5. She should	her younger brother	to eat.	
	a) help	b) helps	c) helping	d) helped
	6. We revise	well for our exams.		
	a) won't	b) should	c) have	d) mustn't
7. At school, you talk to your friends during the lesson.				
	a) must	b) can	c) mustn't	d) should
8. Igo to the hospital. I'm very ill.				
	a) must	b) mustn't	c) shouldn't	d) won't
9. You be careful when you use the knife.				
	a) mustn't	b) can't	c) must	d) won't
Read and correct the underlined words:				
	1. You mustn't look after your health.			()
2. You should studying your lessons hard.			()	
	3. We should watch TV before doing our homework.			(**************************************
4. You can drink water from the river. It isn't clean.			(15-141-941-941-911-941-14)	
5. You must look at the sun without sunglasses.			(10)117411000170041441444)	
6 Should we to clean our beaches?			(





What must/ mustn't you do in/ on the classroom/ the sports centre/ roads?

ما يجب وما لا يجب فعله في الفصل/ النادى الرياضي/ الطرق...؟

We mustn't play games on roads.

يجب ألا نلعب على الطرق.

We must play games in the sports centres.

يجب أن نلعب في النوادي الرياضية.

We must be quiet in the classroom.

يجب أن نهداً في الفصل.



Complete the following dialogue:

Hatem: Do you know what we mustn't do on roads?

It is very dangerous.

Hatem: And what must we do while crossing the roads?

Nader: We (2)......look right and left before crossing.

Hatem: And what (3)...... we do in the classroom?

Nader: We must listen carefully to our teachers.

Hatem: And what mustn't we do in the classroom?

Nader : We mustn't (4)...... noise during the lessons.

Hatem: Finally, can I ask you what we must do in the sports centre?

Nader: We must (5) exercises to keep fit.

Lessons 1&2

General Exercises

1) Complete the following dialogue:				
Nora : Excuse	Nora : Excuse me, can I ask you some questions, Mr Waleed?			
Mr Waleed: Sure. W	Mr Waleed: Sure. What would you like to ask?			
Nora : (1)				
Mr Waleed: Becaus	Mr Waleed: Because plastic stays in the environment (2) a long time.			
	6.1 1 (1			
			cean.	
Nora : Which	Mr Waleed: Most of it (3)into the ocean. Nora: Which two ways can plastic be dangerous for sea (4)?			
Mr Waleed : Plastic				
		e easier to recycle than	plastic?	
Mr Waleed : Paper a				
INIT BOOKING OF STREET	(-)			
2 Choose the corre	ct answer from a	a, b, c or d:		
1. Don't throw away	those glass bottl	es. We cant	hem. WB	
a) make	b) recycle	c) boil	d) put	
2. Trees are very goo	od for our	because they give	us clean air. WB	
a) environment	b) house	c) space	d) street	
3. We don't need that dirty piece of paper. You can put it with the				
a) plant	b) rubbish	c) plastic	d) space	
4. The turtle put its head into its				
a) plastic	b) bin	c) tail	d) shell	
5. His wife died cancer.				
	b) for	c) from	d) out	
a) as 6. Tois to			WB	
a) hear about	b) listen to	c) turn to	d) throw away	
a) Hear discon		<i>a</i> / <i>a</i>		

1	Jnit 📗			
	7. A	. stung my hand while sw	imming in the sea.	N . II & I
	a) shark	b) whale	c) turtle	d) jellyfish
	8. You	swim here. It is very d	angerous.	
	a) must	b) mustn't	c) should	d) can
	9. When you le	ave ice in the sun, it		
	a) become	b) becomes	c) would become	d) became
	10. If you	plants, they don't g	row.	
	a) water	b) watered	c) don't water	d) doesn't water
	3 Read and co	rrect the underlined w	ords:	
	1. You must to	take water when you go	to the desert.	(*************************************
	2. You must ea	t too many sweets. It is b	ad for you.	
	3. When a seed	I get water and light, it g	rows into a healthy plan	t. (
	4. I walk to sch	ool if the bus <u>didn't</u> arriv	e.	(
	Write a para	graph of Eighty (80) w	oras on:	
"How to save our planet"				
				avastrovitatos a pranto 1 de 400 de 100 d
	Epp+==419444b4143994119971			
	40004486888888888888888888	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	44114411144111
	**********************	***************************************		
	***************************************	-4445304100v4191434400v900000000000000000000000000000000	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	
	************************	***************************************		
			. 1794	
	***************************************	> > × × 0 1 × 1 1 1 2 7 7 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1		
		20000150410126421408;250355149149140151440140	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	
	************************	==102414404940926120927=02***********************************	**************************************	





Vocabulary

Key Vocabula	ry		فرداث الربيسية	الم	
nature reserve	محمية طبيعية	frighten	يخيف	soil	تربة
seed	بذرة	air	هواء	healthy	صحي
project	مشروع	picnic	نزهة خلوية		

Additional V	ocabulary	The state of the s	دات الإضافية	janli -	
warm	دافئ	stone	مجر	ground	أرض
careful	۔ حریص	pot	إناء	trash	قمامة
water (ed)	يروى	own	خاص	food	طعام
share (d)	يشارك	idea	فكرة	rules	قواعد

Langon	ge Expressions				
A CONTRACTOR	noise	يصدر ضوضاء	keep	air healthy	يحافظ على الهواء صحيًا
	something	يصنع شيئا	take	► turns	يتبادل الأدوار
make >	a hole	يحفر حفرة	do	► activity	پۇدى ئشاطاً
mane.	a phone call	يقوم باتصال هاتفي	play	► a sport / game	يلعب رياضة/لعبة
	a sandwich	يعد ساندوتشًا	throw	▶ trash	يرمى القمامة

Prepositions		ا فالمُفَّمُّةُ العَلَّمُ العَلَّمُ مِنْ العَلَّمُ العَلَّمُ مِنْ العَلَّمُ العَلَّمُ مِنْ العَلَّمُ العَلَّمُ العَلَّمُ العَلَيْنِ العَلَّمُ العَلَّمُ العَلَّمُ العَلَّمُ العَلَّمُ العَلَّمُ العَلَّمُ العَلَّمُ العَلَّمُ	وم الجر		
share with		angry with	غاضب من	walk into	يمطدم ب
at the bottom of	في قاع	fill with	یملا ب	agree with	يتفق مع
cover with	يغطى بـ	bad for	صار بــ	press into	يضغط على



Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Carlo	Past simple	Past participle
leave	يغادر	left	left
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
grow	ينمو	grew	grown
throw	يرمى	threw	thrown

Language Notes

help (inf. / to + inf.)

يساعد

- Do you want to help save our planet?
- I helped Ali to do his homework.

too much + (uncountable noun :اسم لايعد)

ڪثير جدا

Don't give the plant too much water.

too many + (countable noun :اسم یعد)

ڪثير جدا

Too many students are absent today.

Check Point



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. I help my mother the kitchen.
 - a) to clean
- b) cleans
- c) cleaning
- d) cleaned

- 2. Nora put too sugar in my cup of tea.
 - a) many
- b) much
- c) a lot of
- d) few
- 3. There are people on that bus, I'll take the next one.
 - a) too many
- b) too much
- c) much
- d) few



How to write about recycling. كيفية الكتابة عن إعادة التصنيع.

- Materials have many different uses.
- Recycling materials is very important for us.
- We can recycle (المادة) to make (شئ جديد).
- Recycling is important because (السبب).
- We mustn't throw old things.
- We mustn't stop recycling old materials because this is very useful for us.

Printing lift :

Use a heading to tell people what your paragraph is about.

استخدم عنوانا لندير الناس عن موضوع مفرنا

Example

How to make something from recycled plastic

Materials have many different uses. Recycling materials is very important for us. We must find a new use for old plastic. We can make pots to feed birds from old bottles. We can make kitchen containers. We can make plastic pencil cases, too. There are many good ideas for recycling plastic. We mustn't throw it away. A lot of animals and birds die from poisonous plastic in the sea and on land. We mustn't stop trying to use old materials because this is very useful for us.

, your turn:	ورك الآن: " ling
Materials have many different	uses
*	# 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10
spreess a march of the second of the march	THE C + 44 +44 - 47 +45 - 7 - 1 - 3 3 5 - 344-4440 4 - 4 7 + 5 34 44 4411439 T
(44-35-41	ONE MORE THAN THE PERSON OF THE PARTY OF THE
provide everyon (18. , 1 km , 8. , 7 t kt kt 800), 4.4.	***** 11 "4 07 08 t Mh. V 45 "184 3007 AML GAM! 1820
approximate and any intervals that I did to the high high and the decades	AND ASSESSMENT AS A SET OF THE OWNER OF THE SECOND SET OF THE SECOND SEC
under make a parachage of one is construction to come to the construction in the annual construction of the construction of th	Accepts a living content of the cont





Pre-listening question: - What's a nature reserve?

2. Listen to a talk by a teacher and check your answers to Exercise 1.

SB page 48



Teacher: We're going to visit this nature reserve(1) today.

We have nature reserves to help our birds, plants and animals. Many important birds, animals and plants live here, so we must be careful what we do.

First, you mustn't make a lot of noise! You'll قمامة (4) frighten(2) the animals and birds. Secondly, we must مشروع (5) not leave the road through the reserve. The animals and birds live in the plants next to the road and you don't want to walk into their homes, do you?

Now, I know we're going to have a picnic(3) lunch later, but you mustn't give any food to the animals or birds. They must find their own food. They mustn't think that all their food will come from you!

Some animals think that plastic is food, but they mustn't eat it. It is very bad for them. Finally, you must remember to work together and write what you see. You can write about your visit to the reserve for the project(5).

Post-listening question:

- Why mustn't you give any food to the animals or birds in the nature reserve?

محمية طبيعية (٦)

نزهة (3)

Next, you must take all your rubbish⁽⁴⁾ with you when you leave.



Pre-reading questions:

- I. Why do people go diving in the coral reefs?
- 2. How much must you pay to dive?
 - 1. Complete the text with must or mustn't.

WB page 102



Ras Mohammed reserve⁽¹⁾ is famous for its birds and animals. Many people go diving in the coral reefs⁽²⁾ here to see the many beautiful fish and turtles. If you want to dive here, first you **must** pay around L.E.100.

ىجمية (1)

شعاب مرجانية (2)

صنارات الصيد (3)

حريص (4)

When you dive, you **mustn't** touch or give food to any of the fish.

You **must** only use knives to cut fishing lines (3) and you **must** never take any fish from the water. Finally, sharks also live here, so you **must** be careful (4)!

Post-reading question:

- Are you interested in going to Ras Mohammed reserve? Why?



Reading

Pre-reading question: - Can you plant a tree?

1. Quickly read the instructions. Circle the things you need to plant a tree.

SB page 50

هواء (1)

- مىنى (2)
- بنرة (3)
- (4) ati
- التربة (5)
- ارض (6)

Plant a tree today!

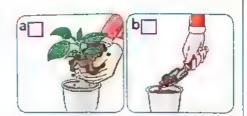
Do you want to help save our planet?

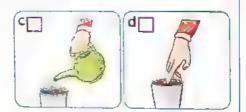
Well, plant a tree! Trees help to keep our air (1)

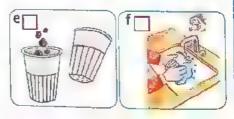
healthy (2). You can plant a nut or the seed (3) of
a fruit.



- 2. Second, put some small stones at the bottom of the pot⁽⁴⁾.
- 3. Then, fill the pot with soil (5).
- Next, press your finger into the soil and make a small hole about 2 cm deep.
- 5. Plant the seed in the hole and cover it with soil.
- 6. Finally, put the pot outside in a warm place.
- Water it every day. (Don't give it too much water.)
- 8. When the tree grows too big for the pot, plant it in a bigger pot, or in the ground (6).









Post-reading question:

-Why should we plant more trees?

بنرة (1)

غارغ (2)

تربة (3)

يضغط (4)

فتحة / ثقب (5)



Pre-listening question: How can we help save our planet?

2. Read the instructions again and match them to the pictures. Then listen and check your answers.

SB page 50

Adult: Do you want to help save our planet? Well, plant a tree!

Trees help to keep our air healthy. You can plant a nut or
the seed (1) of a fruit.

Child: What should I do first?

Adult: First, wash an empty⁽²⁾ plastic pot and dry it. Secondly, put some small stones at the bottom of the pot.

Child: Then, what should I do?

Adult: Then, fill the pot with soil (3).

Child: Like this?

Adult: Yes, that's right! The next thing you do is, press⁽⁴⁾your finger into the soil and make a small hole⁽⁵⁾.

Child: How deep must it be?

Adult: It must be 2 centimetres deep. Now plant the seed in the hole and cover it with soil. Finally, put the pot outside in a warm place. The seed needs sun and water to make it grow.

Child: Should I water it now?

Adult: Yes, now and every day. But don't give it too much water. It's going to grow big. When it grows too big for the pot, take it out of the soil and plant it in the ground. One day, when it is a big tree, you can say 'I planted that!'

Post-listening question:

- How can you plant a tree?





Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correc	t answer from a, b, c	or d:	
1. Ais an a) whole	empty space in some	ething. c) hole	d) hall
2 To is to put	something over some	ething else to prote	ect or hide it. WB
a) build	b) cover	c) cycle	d) recycle
3. A is a	small, hard thing m	ade by plants, wh	ich grows into nev
plants.	•		WB
a) sand	b) seed	c) soil	d) sail
4. Ais ar	area of land in which	animals and plant	s are protected.
	b) rubbish bin		d) soil
5. It's not funny to	children. Yo	ou are hurting their	feelings.
a) plant	b) kill	c) wash	d) frighten
6. Theis	the place where plan	ts grow.	
a) air	b) stone	c) soil	d) gym
7. He decided to put	a plant into a	filled with soil	
a) pot	b) sandwich	c) seed	d) stone
8. She began to	a hole for the	plant.	
a) give	b) keep	c) take	d) make
9. Trees help us to	our air hea	ithy.	
a) take	b) keep	c) do	d) have
10. We should	our garden daily	/.	
a) save	b) wash	c) water	d) frighten
11. Menna	her hands after was	hing them.	
a) saved	b) left	c) watered	d) dried
12. This bowl is filled	soup, so i	t's hot.	
a) for	b) at	c) with	d) by



Asking and giving instructions

طلب وإعطاء التعليمات

Asking for instructions **Giving instructions** طلب التعليمات إعطاء التعليمات 1. (What should I do to + inf.?) - First. Wnat should I do to plant a tree? - Second, • What should I do to make a phone call? • What should I do to make a sandwich? - Next...... What should I do to make something from recycled plastic? (تستخدم هذه الكلمات عند ترتيب خطوات عمل شيء) • What should I do to play a sport or game? - Yes, you should./No, don't (give it 2. Should I (water it now)?

Speaking Exercises

too much water)

Compl	ete the following dialogue:
Lama	: I'd like to grow a tomato plant. What should I do first?
Mariam	: (1), find a sunny place in the garden.
Lama	: Like this?
Mariam	: Yes, that's right. Second, the ground (2)not
	have many stones in it.
Lama	: OK. What should I do after that?
Mariam	:Then, make a small (3) in the ground.
Lama	: How deep must it be?
Mariam	: About 2 cm. Next, put (4) water in the hole
	so it is not too dry.
Lama	: Should I water it now?
Mariam	: Yes, you should. (5), put the seed in the

hole and cover it with soil.





Working together التعاون Collaboration

When you collaborate with others, you work as a group to do something.

عندما تتعاون مع الأخرين، فإنكم تعملون ممّا لفعل شيء ما

Choose the correct words to complete the rules.

اختر الكلمات الصحيحة لاستكمال القواعد.



When you work together, ...

- 1. You mustn't forget why you are doing the activity.
- 2. You must listen to other students' ideas.
- 3. You should share your ideas with others.
- 4. You shouldn't make all the decisions or rules yourself.
- 5. You must take turns.
- 6. You mustn't be angry with people you don't agree with.
- 2 Work in pairs. Think of two more rules for working together.

اعملوا في ثنائيات. فكروا في قاعدتين إضافيتين للعمل معًا.



Lessons 3 & 4

General Exercises

All isten and choos	e the correct answ	ver from a, b, c or d: (الكتاب	أنص الاستماع في نهاية
1. I go to the beach		iei iioiii a, b, c oi a	
a) summer	b) winter	c) spring	d) fall
2. I go there with	•	c) spillig	•
a) my friends		c) my parents	d) my family
3. When a wave cor		•	
a) jump	b) throw	c) run	d) fill
4. On the beach, I li	*	•	
a) bag	b) ball	c) bike	d) car
2) Read the followi	ing, then answer t	he questions:	
		in which animals and plan	its are protected.
Nature reserves ma	y be built by the a	overnment in some countr	ries, or by private
landowners.	., 22 24110 27 6110 9		
	ure reserves in Egy	pt which cover 12% of Egy	ptian land. Those
nature reserves We	ere built to protect	the Egyptian nature. Egy	pt announced a
plan to build 40 na	ature reserves from	1997 to 2017, to help pr	otect the natural
resources and the	culture and history	of those areas. The largest	nature reserve in
Egypt is Gebel Elba	a (35,600 square kil	lometres) in the southeast	t, on the Red Sea
coast.			
A) Answer the follow	ing questions:		
1 What's the passa	ige about?	a) 44444	
2. What is a nature	reserve?	\$\}	
3. Why do you thin	ik Egypt planned to	o build more nature reserv	es?
B) Choose the correct	t answer from a, b	o, c or d:	
4. Who can build n	ature reserves arou	ind the world?	
a) Governments	b) Private lando	owners. c) Universities.	d) Both a and b.
5. The largest natu	re reserve in Egypt	İ\$	
a) on the Nile		b) on the Red S	ea coast
c) on the Medite	rranean coast	d) on the ocean	1
6. Nature reserves	cover about	of Egyptian land.	
a) 10%	b) 20%	c) 25%	d) 12%



3 Choose the cor	rect answer from a	, b , c or d :		
1. There are 30	in Egypt. They	are the places where	animals are prote	ctec
a) malls	b) seeds	c) stations	d) Harrie Test	arves
2. Be ar	nd look left and right	when you cross the	road.	
a) quiet	b) polite	c) careful	d) dangerous	;
3. My mother	a telephone o	all to ask about her	friend.	
a) made		c) gave	d) took	
4. I went to the spe	orts centre to	a game.		
a) make	b) buy	c) give	d) play	
5. Ali hi	mself with a blanket	because it was cold		
a) saved	b) grew	c) covered	d) pressed	
6. My mother was	angry me	e because I broke the	glass.	
a) at	b) for	c) by	d) with	
7. l my	lunch with my friend	l because he was hu	ngry.	
a) shared	b) agree	c) took	d) filled	
8. If I see rubbish o	on the ground, I alwa	ysit in th	e bin.	
a) would throw	b) throw	c) threw	d) throwing	
9. You	study hard for the te	st. That is very impor	tant.	
a) mustn't	b) must	c) shouldn't	d) can't	
10. We should alwa	ys tourist	s . .		
a) welcome	b) welcomes	c) welcomed	d) welcoming	j
Read and corre	ct the underlined v	vords:		
1. You must spend	l a lot of time watchi	ng TV. It's a waste of	time. (
_	ide. You shouldn't us		(
3. If I felt ill, I alway	-		(+1-n	4014600000
	vater, it changed into	o ice.	(
	***		ì	
Write a paragra	iph of Eighty (80) w			
	"A nature rese	rve you visited"		
			B + 4 + 9 = 9 + 4 = 4 = 4 + 5 + 6 + 6 + 9 + 9 + 9 + 9 + 9 + 9 + 9 + 9	10400440
***************************************	448444200000000000000			******
	41494141900>=>01001444124418401911011444	**************************************		



SB pages 51, 52 WB pages 104, 105

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary		العقردات الريسية	
skeleton	هيكل عظمي	worried	<u>ل</u> ق
respect (ed)	يحترم	headphones	عماعات الرأس
brave	شجاع	fishing line	سنارة الصيد
gloves	قفازات		

Additional Vo	cabulary	, Line W			
strong	قوى	main	رئيسي	boat	قارب
newspaper	حريدة	local	محلي	poster	ملصق إعلائي
use (d) (V/N)	يستخدم/استخدام	radio station	محطة اذاعية	snacks	وجبات خفيفة
rubbish bags	أكياس قمامة	event	حدث هام	group	مجموعة

elangúa	ge Expressions		Fall Healt	
	worried	يشعر بالقلق	make > art with	يمنع عملا فنيًا ب
feel 🕨	weak	يشعر بالضعف	more ▶ than ever	أكثر مما سـق
catch >	fish	يصطاد سمكا		

Prepositions		<u> 18 - Anna Anna Anna Anna Anna Anna Anna An</u>	وت الد		
				dangerous for	خطیر علی
return to	يعود إلى	a piece of	قطعة من	a bottle of	زجاجة من

THE RESERVE OF THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TWO IS NOT THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TWO IS NAMED IN COL	f-Irregular Verbs Past simple	Past participle
feel	felt يشعر	felt
catch	caught يصطاد	caught
sleep	slept ينام	slept

Language Notes

stronger than

أقوى من (للمقارنة بين اثنين)

The fish was stronger than Santiago.

the strongest

الأقوى (للمقارنة بين واحد ومجموعة)

Ali is the strongest boy in the class.

lt (takes / took) + (مدة زمنية) + to + inf.

تسنفرق / استفرقت ...

It took two days to pull it to the boat.

Check Point

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. Ramy is than his friend Kareem.
 - a) strong
- b) stronger
- c) strongest
- d) the strongest
- 2. Itten minutes to reach work. It is very near.
 - a) takes
- b) makes
- c) gives
- d) does

- 3. The blue whale is thesea animal.
 - a) big
- b) bigger
- c) as big
- d) biggest

Write it right

How to write about a story you like.

كيمية الكتابة عن قطة تجبها

- Reading is a very useful hobby.
- I like reading short stories.
- My favourite story is (اسم لعصه).
- It's by (سم 'لكب).
- lt's about (فكرة القصة).
- -The main character is (مسم السحيمة).
- It teaches us (الدرس المستفاد).



sentence wraps up the ideas presented in the paragraph.

سمنه المنامية سخص الأعكار المقدمة في المَقرة.



"A book I like"

Reading is a very useful hobby I like reading stories. My favourite story is Robinson Crusoe. It's by Daniel Defoe. It's about a sailor who lived on an island alone for many years because his ship sank into the sea. The main character is Robinson Crusoe who made a home on the island He planted wheat and made his food. He made a boat and could catch a lot of fish to eat. He caught goats and made cheese from their m lk. He could make his clothes. The story teaches us to depend on ourselves.

Now, your turn:

حان دورك الأن:

	"Your favourite story"
1111 y ****	THE PERSON NAME AND ADDRESS OF THE PERSON OF
15 5 5m ·) +++ (
	, ne (1), 1 +++ (+ + (4)
19 TAPPAC 0 NO. 10 4501 MODE 4 9 1 1 1 1 4	The state of the s
	1 (PP) A NO. TO SEE STATE OF THE SEE OF THE SEE STATE OF THE SEC STATE OF
491 FF++++77 17 1 4	y - k + 7 +++ III III ee n + ye na n ega aan aan aan aan aan n I IIII II k 11 baasa
4 99987 588	n n eest n n n n n n eest een e n
110 5 -1111 - 0 can 14 - v can 1 311 4415 - 1 -0 -	er b. d. (1997) om 1. 1996 de lillerred likessel (d. de ekstellisterredombende Georgalistes Abbende spenderske i 1. at



Reading ____

Pre-reading question:

- What's your favourite story?

2. Read the story quickly and put the pictures in the correct order.

SB page 51

- صياد (1)
- قلق (2)
- منارة الصيد (3)
- ھيکل عظمي (4)
- شجاع (5)
- يحترم (6)

The Old Man and the Sea

by Ernest Hemingway

Santiago was an old fisherman⁽¹⁾. He felt worried⁽²⁾ because the last time he caught a fish was 84 days ago. On the 85th day, he felt a big fish at the end of his fishing line⁽³⁾. But the fish was stronger than Santiago. It took two days for him to finally pull it to the boat. Then the sharks came. When Santiago returned to his home on the beach, he had no fish, only a skeleton⁽⁴⁾. He felt weak and slept for a long time. But the other fishermen saw how big the fish was and knew that he was brave⁽⁵⁾ to catch it. Santiago lost the fish, but the other fishermen now respected⁽⁶⁾ him more than ever.







Post-reading questions:

- 1. How did Santiago feel when he didn't catch any fish for 84 days?
- 2. What do you learn from the story?



Reading

pre-reading question: What's the leaflet about?

قفازات (1)

1. Read the leaflet. Write the headings in the correct places.

سماعات الرأس (2)

SB page 52

We must clean our beach!

- 1. Where and when is the event?
 - West Beach
 - Saturday afternoon 2 p.m. 5 p.m.

2. What do we need?

- Rubbish bags, gloves⁽¹⁾ (to protect your hands), a bottle of water to drink and snacks to eat!
- Some people like listening to music on their headphones (2)!

3. Why must we clean the beaches?

- 100,000 pieces of plastic rubbish on this beach.
- One plastic bottle can stay in our environment for up to 1,000 years (dangerous for animals and fish)

4. How can we tell people about our event?

- Posters (around school and town).
- Emails to local groups.
- Local radio station or newspaper.

5. What should we do with the rubbish we find?

- Recycle it
- Find a new use for it.
- Make art with it.

Post-reading question: What can we do with old things?



Life Skills

Remember that we all have a role to play in helping the environment. Give yourself clear goals on how to do this.



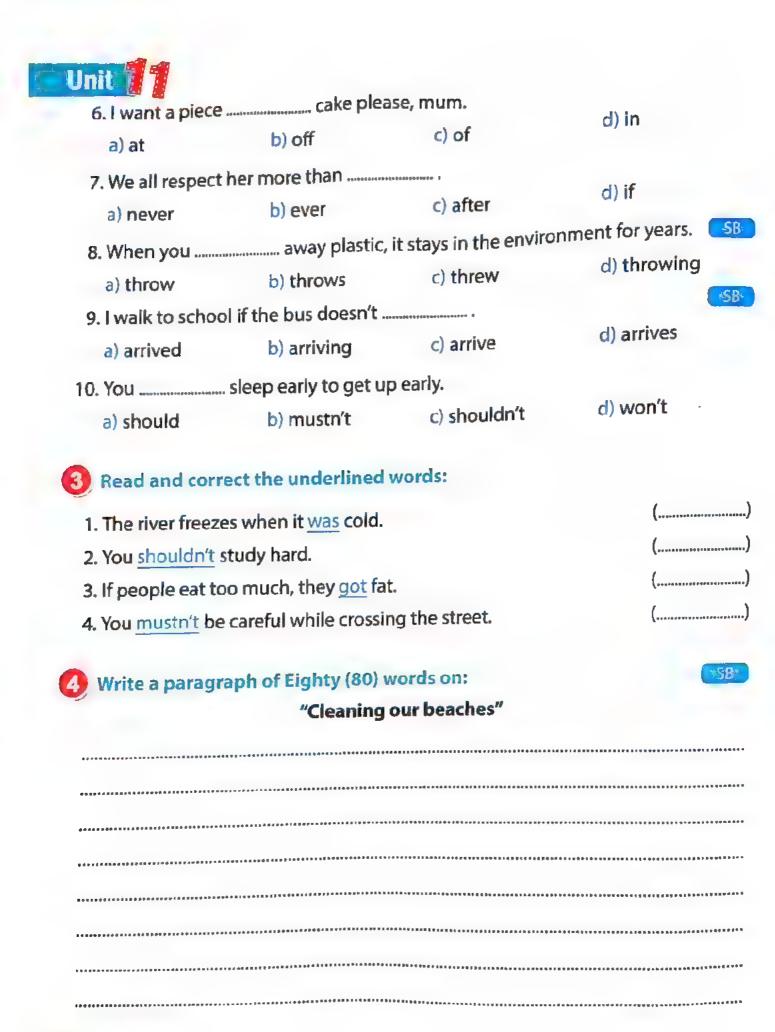
Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the corr	ect answer from a, b,	c or d:	t ded at a la
1. Ahmed lost his p	phone, so his mother v	vas WI	nen ne alan't prione
her.			Wo
a) happy	b) worried	c) glad	d) safe
2. Judy felt very	after she was	ill, but she is bette	r now. WB
a) friendly	b) strong	c) weak	d) kind
3. People catch fish	with fishing	oveted 1	⟨•SB·
a) ropes	b) skeletons	c) lines	d) rows
4. When Santiago	returned to his home o	n the beach, he had	d no fish, only
a ,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,			SB €
a) skeleton	b) glove	c) rubbish bag	d) headphone
5. A/An	is someone who cate	ches fish as a job.	
a) soldier	b) officer	c) journalist	d) fisherman
6. Santiago is the	mainin the	e story.	
a) singer	b) skeleton	c) character	d) octopus
7 He is a great tea	cher. All students	him.	
a) save	b) respect	c) feel	d) catch
	home late, beca	suse he had an imp	ortant meeting.
	b) caught	c) returned	d) gave
a) felt		Ť	
9. She	worried when she sav		101. -17 -1: -1
a) felt	b) made	c) gave	d) did
10. Santiago could	the fish to	the boat after two	days.
a) save	b) return	c) feel	d) pull
11 We can tell ned	pple about our event by	/ making	ppę)nęs B
a) posters	b) headphones	c) gloves	d) snacks
12. A	is a small amount of fo	ood that is eaten be	etween main meals or
instead of a me			
a) skeleton	b) radio station	c) snack	d) rubbish bag

Lessons 5 4 6

General Exercises

Complete the foll	owing dialogue:				
Donia: Hello, Ghada. How are you?					
Ghada: I'm fine, Don	ia. What about you?				
Donia: I'm fine, too.			reading stories?		
Ghada: Yes, I do.					
Donia: Which (2)	idid ynyspu rylddddorydningau chrydolig 601 161 160 1	did you read	d?		
Ghada: I read The Ol	d Man and the (3)	-00010441104104104111111111111111111111) 		
Donia: What's it abo	ut?				
Ghada: It's about a (4)	who c	aught a big fish.		
Donia: Did you enjo	y it?				
Ghada: Yes, I (5)	DIWY	pypativmuvimdishybea			
Choose the corre					
1. They used					
a) gloves	b) rubbish bags	c) posters	d) headphones		
2. Ali uses	, to listen to music.				
a) posters	b) gloves	c) headphones	d) rubbish bags		
3. He is very	because he save	d a girl from death.			
a) stupid	b) brave	c) calm	d) careful		
4. Histened to fantas	tic radio	•			
a) posters	b) gloves	c) headphones	d) stations		
5. I saw the new	of Tamer Hos	sney in the street.			
a) poster	b) glove	c) station	d) headphone		





Videoscript >

SB page 49

From the camel to the beautiful desert cat⁽¹⁾, or caracal⁽²⁾ ... to the Nile crocodile⁽³⁾, there are many animals in Egypt. But some animals are in danger of extinction⁽⁴⁾. This means that every example of the animal will die⁽⁵⁾. The Dorcas gazelle⁽⁶⁾ lives in the Sinai Peninsula⁽⁷⁾ and in other parts of North Africa. It eats plants and you can sometimes see them early in the morning and late in the evening. The animal is in danger because some people want to eat it.

In the past, the Barbary sheep ⁸⁾ lived all over the country. It eats plants, but warmer weather means the sheep find it harder to find food. Today, you can only find them in the mountains of southern and western Egypt.

The striped hyena⁽⁹⁾ looks like a dog. You can only see it at night. It eats other animals. People think that there are only a small number of striped hyenas in Egypt.

141	0.7.78
UD.	القط الصدراوي

(m)	- * **
(2)	لوشق

التمساح (3)

الانقراض (4)

يموت (5)

غزال دوركاس (6)

شبه حزيرة سيناء (7)

الأغنام البريرية (8)

لضبع المخطط (9)

الأطوم (كلب البحر). (10)

التلوث (11)

One of the most unusual animals is the dugong of this animal lives in the Red Sea and other places. It is also called the sea cow. This is because it only eats plants that grow underwater.

The dugong is in danger because there is plastic and other pollution⁽¹⁾ in the sea. Also, there is not much food in the sea for it to eat.

Today, there are some organisations⁽¹²⁾ that want to help these and other animals that are in danger, like this turtle. It is helpful for animals when we take rubbish from the beaches. We must all do what we can to help to protect nature.

منظمات (12)



Vocabulary

Vocabulary	and the second		فردات اللغويا	رَالُهُ	
land	اليابسة	ocean	محيط	danger	خطر
protect	يحمى	poisonous	سام	sting	يلدغ
environment	البيئة	recycle (d)	پعید تصنیع	fishing line	صنارة صيد
save	ينقذ	fisherman	عايد	sea life	الحياة البحرية
throw away	یرمی	rubbish	' قمامة ·	planet	کوکې،
nature reserve	محمية طبيعية	frighten (ed)	بفيغي	soil	تربة
seed	بذرة	air	هواء	healthy	صحی
skeleton	هیکل عظمی	brave	شجاع	worried	قلق
respect (ed)	يحترم	gloves	ِ قَفَازاتِ ا	headphones	سماعات الرأس
1	Sea ani	mals	، بحرية	حيوانات	
coral reefs	الشعب المرجانية	shark	سمكة القرش	whale	حوث
jellyfish	قنديل البحر	stingray	لسمكة اللادغة	octopus	أخطيوط
turtle	ا سلحفاة بحرية		<u>-</u>		



if-Zero conditional

التعالن الصفرية سي الجمل الشرطية

If we heat water, it evaporates.
When I feel tired, I go to bed.

- تستخيم مع الحقائق الثابتة والعادات:

must/mustn/t

should/shouldn's

Obligation alul

must + inf.

mustn't + inf.

- We must save our planet.

- We mustn't throw rubbish into the ocean.

Advice Gagai

should + inf.

shouldn't + inf.

We should recycle more materials.

- We shouldn't use plastic bags just once.



وصف حیوان بحری Describing a sea animal

Description

الوصف

Reply

الرد



1. It can swim fast. It's got eight legs.

* An octopus!





2. It has a hard shell to protect it.

* A turtle!



Asking and giving instructions طلب وإعطاء التعليمات

Asking for instructions

طلب التعليمات

Giving instructions

إعطاء التعليمات

- 1. What should I do first/next/after that?
- First, Second, Then, Next, Finally,

2. Should I (water it now)?

 Yes, you should./No, don't (give it too much water)

Test

based on Unit 11

			de la companya de la
1 Listen and choose	the correct answe	تابا :from a, b, c or d	انص الاستماع مى نهاية الك
1. Tourists like the bea	autiful	. in Egypt.	
a) beaches	b) gardens	c) parks	d) cinemas
2. The beaches in	are fantas		-
a) Aswan	b) Luxor	c) Hurghada	d) Giza
3. We should keep ou	r beaches	surabuhèd u	
a) clean	b) clear	c) dirty	d) ugly
4. When do tourists li	ke to visit Egypt?		
a) In winter.	b) In fall.	c) in spring.	d) In summer.
2 Complete the folio			
Dina: I want to mak	e a nice salad.		
Hala: That's easy. I c	an teach you.		
Dina: Really! Wnat s	hould I do to make a	a salad?	
Hala: To make a nic	e salad, (1)	wash	the tomatoes and
cucumbers.			
Dina: OK, I've done t	hat. What do I do (2)	?
Hala: Next, peel off	the onion skin. Afte	er (3)	, cut the onions
carefully.			
Dina : Like (4)	pod ji pradovika jouro kaddavēbu j (voka i i ponida kaza i	?	
Hala: Yes. That's righ	t. (5)		es and cucumbers.
Dina: That's easy!			



Read the following, then answer the questions:

One day, my wife saw a mouse running across her kitchen floor. She was afraid of mice, so she ran out of the house, got on a bus and went down to the shops. She bought a mouse-trap. The shopkeeper said to her, "Put some cheese in it and you will soon catch that mouse". She went home. She looked at the fridge, but she couldn't find any cheese in it. She cut a picture of some cheese out of a magazine and put that in the trap. The picture of the cheese was quite successful! When she came down to the kitchen the next morning, there was a picture of a mouse in the trap beside the picture of the cheese!

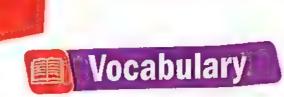
Guillia		_	
trap beside the pict	ure of the cheese!		
A) Answer the follow	ing questions:		
 What did the lady 	y buy to catch the mo	use?	
2. Where did the lac	dy see the mouse?		941b7b441B1941TqC5249E4954964971196E4994441E69E445E
3. What does the ur	nderlined word "it" refe	er to?	
B) Choose the correct			
4. Mice like eating	**************************************		0.1.
a) pictures	b) magazines	c) traps	d) cheese
5. The lady	the mouse.		0 -1-
a) caught	b) didn't catch	c) killed	d) ate
6. The story is	Dictodepripasidences y		D
a) successful	b) funny	c) sad	d) scary
4 Choose the corre	ect answer from a, b,	c or d:	
1. A/An	has got eight legs to	o help it!	
a) stingray		c) jellyfish	d) octopus
2. He	out of the water as it v	vas very hot.	
a) left	b) felt	c) jumped	d) made
3. The thief	the man with a	big stick and escap	ed.
a) hit	b) stung	c) protected	d) poisoned



4. We should	old things to sa	ave our environm	ent.
a) send	b) recycle	c) eat	d) plant
5 Last week we visit	ed a to		otect animals.
a) poster	b) radio station	c) pot	d) nature reserve
6 Press your finder	the soil t	o make a small h	ole about 2 cm deep.
a) to	b) on	c) into	d) for
-	is big teeth. It is a dan	-	al.
a) snake	b) turtle	c) shark	d) jellyfish
8. If it		20/ 201100111	
a) rain	b) will rain	c) rains	d) raining
	oall, Iexc		
a) feel	b) feels	c) felt	d) will feel
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	take water when you	-	→SB°
a) must	b) mustn't	c) have	d) has
	t the underlined wor		
			()
	alking too much in the		(
	see a doctor. She is ve		(,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
	liways <u>went</u> to work ea usually go to the beac		(,,)
Write a paragra	ph of Eighty (80) wor		
	"How we can sa	ive our planet"	
######################################	;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;	*******************************	***************************************
		,	***************************************
	**********************************		***************************************

###01D6FP4=#0>UUV\$P0FP##b4110			
ph::4849>4:00744:0469>4:46610	## # # # # # # # # # # # # # # # # # #		
			9119991911414444169418991777
***************************************		*****	81899=
*************************	***************************************	4844770)64.0007615044084148814444477	\$1014###\$0P#################################
#41 mm / m m h r d h d d d d b b d = m d m h d h h l d l	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,		\$\$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$





Lesson

Key Vocabular	y	ធ្វើពីពីព្រ	المفردات الرئ		
design	تصمما	meeting	اجتماع	computer p	برامج الكمبيوتر
engine	موتور/ محرك	machine	آلة	article	مقال
	Jobs		ئف	وظاأ	
businessman	رجل أعمال	writer	کاټب	accountant	محاسب
businesswoman	سيدة أعمال	computer prog	rammer مبرمج کمبیوتر	dentist	طبيب أسنان
engineer	ممندس مدنى	photographer	مصور	scientist	عالم
architect	مهندس معماري	teacher	معلم	pilot	طيار

Additional Voca	abulary	<u> ceratr</u>	المسردات الله		
office	مكتب	work (ed)	يعمل	(be) called	یدعی/ یسمی
interesting job	وظيفة شيقة	building	مبنى	sick people	المرضي

Langua	ige E	xpressions	and a Sept (1974) the second of the second o	اللغوية	يران	
		books	يكتب كتبًا	look after	•	people's teeth يعتنى بأسنان الناس
write		articles	يكتب مقالات			sick people یعتنی بالمرضی
		an engine	يصمم محركًا	study	F	science يدرس العلوم
design	•	a building	يصمم مبنى	fly	•	a plane يطير طائرة
		a machine	يصمم آلة	take	١	يلتقط صورًا فوتوغرافية photographs
teach	•	students	يعلم الطلاب	program	٠	ريبرمج أجمزة الكمبيوتر computers

My future



Prepositions	galaterikatikan et il kalandar et in et in en et in en en et in en en et in en en en et in en en en et in en e En elletteringsgebengen en e	and the respective of the state of the second state of	حروف الجر		
work with	يعمل باستخدام	find out	يكتشف	parts of	أجزاء من
design for	يصمم ك	work in an office	يعمل بالمكتب		

Words and Opposites			كسها	لمات وع	SII		
interesting	شيق	uninteresting	غير شيق	sick	مريض	well	بصحة جيدة

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs عير المنتظمة على عير المنتظمة					
(Present	Pastsimple	Past participle		
meet	يقابل	met	met		
fly	يطير	flew	flown		
teach	وملعي	taught	taught		
write	بتحي	wrote	written		





Language Notes

Study these jobs



"Businesswoman"

A person who works in an office and goes to meetings.



"Architect"
A person who designs
buildings.



"Computer programmer"
A person who programs
computers.



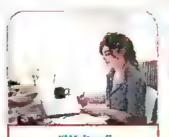
"Scientist"
A person who studies science.



"Photographer"
A person who takes photographs.



"Dentist"
A person who looks after people's teeth.



"Writer"

A person who writes books or articles.



"Teacher"
A person who
teaches students.



"Accountant"
A person who works
with numbers.



"Engineer"
A person who designs
machines.

Check Point



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. A: Where does a/anwork? B: At a school.
 - a) pilot
- b) engineer
- c) teacher
- d) writer
- 2. My uncle is a famous writer. He writes articles and ______
 - a) books
- b) pens

- c) pencils
- d) bags

Write It right

How to write about your dream job گیفیة الگنایة من وطیعه احلامك

- My name's (العمر). I'm (العمر) years old.
- He/ She works at (المحان).
- I like it because (السبب).
- A/An (-----) + (-----).
- It's an interesting job.



Remember to join your ideas with words like and, although or because.

او / على الرغم من الان)



"My dream job"

My name's Kareem. I'm twelve years o d. When I grow up, I'd like to be a teacher like my father. He works in a big school in Benha. A teacher is a person who teaches students. teaching is tiring, it's very interesting. It helps our country to be great. A teacher helps students to achieve their dreams get the job they dream of. I like it like it like it like it like it san interesting job.

Now, your turn:

حال دورك الأن:

IVIY Harric	Ś	* ' *		
* * * *		43		
4 A + 1++ + P				1-77 + 14++
	1 - 54 + 7 11116 + 14 - 3	A1	+4+ 44 + -+ b	-1 4 9 99
		. ,		



Listening

Pre-listening question: - What would you like to be?

1. Listen to the desriptions. Can you name each jo? Use the photos to help you. Who can get the most correct answers?

SB page 54

Narrator 2:1

: He looks after people's teeth. Male

He's a dentist(1).

Narrator 2:2

: She studies science. She's a scientist(2). Male

Narrator 2:3

: He's a person who designs machines. Male

He's an engineer(3).

Narrator 2:4

: She works with numbers. She finds out how much Male

money a business gets. She's an accountant(4).

Narrator 2:5

: He takes photos. He's a photographer(5). Male

Narrator 2:6

: She works in an office and goes to meetings. She's Male

a businesswoman⁽⁶⁾.

Narrator 2:7

: He writes computer programs. He's a computer Male

programmer(7).

Narrator 2:8

: She writes books or articles. She's a writer(8). Male

Narrator 2:9

: She designs buildings. She's an architect⁽⁹⁾. Male

Post-listening question: - What does a businesswoman do?



عالم (2)

مهندس (3)

محاسب (4)

مصور (5)

سيدة أعمال (6)

مبرمج كمبيوتر (7)

كاتب (8)

معندس معماری (9)















Reading

Pre-reading question:

What does an engineer do?

2. Read about Amir's uncle. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)?

SB page 55

My uncle has got a very interesting job. He's an engineer (1).

An engineer is a person who designs(2) machines(3) and engines(4).

My uncle designs engines for planes. I'd like to be an engineer one day! My aunt is a businesswoman⁽⁵⁾.

That's an interesting job, too.

A businesswoman and a businessman are people who work in an office and go to meetings⁽⁶⁾.

Amir

Post-reading question:

- Where does a businesswoman work?



يصمم (2)

آلات (3)

محركات (4)

سيدة أعمال (5)

لجتماعات (6)



Vocabulary Domines

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. A/An works in a bank.
 - a) teacher b) dentist
- c) writer
- d) accountant
- 2. A businesswoman is a person who works in a/an
- ---

- a) workshop
- b) hospital
- c) school
- d) office

3. A teacher is a person who students.

Variable

- a) teaches
- b) learns
- c) studies
- d) writes

WB

WR

			TVD
4. An architect is a pers	on who	buildings.	d) sells
0, 20, 00	b) designs	c) paints	d) sells
5. A dentist is a person	who looks	people's teeth.	
a) at	b) for	c) after	d) up
6. We will have a/an	next week	to discuss the problem t	ogether.
	b) meeting	c) article	d) engine
7. I read a/an	about Mohamed	Salah in Al-Ahram news	paper.
	b) office		d) photograph
8. There is something v	wrong with the	of my car.	
a) tail	b) article	c) office	d) engine
9. My father is a pilot	. He always	planes to different c	ountries around
the world.			
a) carries	b) drives	c) flies	d) designs
10. He a lovel	y photograph of th	ne children in the garder).
a) gave	b) built	c) took	d) made
11. A/An is a	person who studie	s science.	
a) pilot	b) scientist	c) engineer	d) dentist
12. I need a computer .	to progra	am my new computer.	
a) screen	b) programmer	c) interviewer	d) pilot
13. This part	the brain plays an	important role in learnir	ng.
a) at	b) by	c) from	d) of
14. A/An wor	ks in an office and	goes to his meetings.	
a) businesswoman	b) pilot	c) photographer	d) businessman





1. Relative Pronoun "who"

We can join two sentences about people using the relative pronoun (who):

نستطيع ربط جملتين (للعاقل) باستخدام ضمير الوصل (who) (يأتي بمعنى الذي / التي).

- A businesswoman is a person. She works in an office.
- A businesswoman is a person who works in an office.
- A teacher is a person who teaches students.



- Mona is the girl who sits next to me.
- Ali is the boy who plays football well.
- These are the children who broke the glass.

Read and correct the underlined word:

- The man which sits by my father is his best friend.

			,

2. How to ask and answer about jobs السوال والإجابة عن طبيعة الوطائف

What do/does + subj. + do?

- What does an architect do?

An architect is a person who designs buildings.

- What doteachers do?

Teachers are people who teach students.

- What doengineers do?

They're people who design machines.

- What does a photographer do?

A photographer is a person who takes photos.

Read and correct the underlined word:

- What do a writer do?

'	1
4410004	 J





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:						
1. A scientist is a pers	sonstudies	science.	d) who			
a) whom	b) whose	c) where	G) WIIO			
2. What a	businesswoman do?		d) has			
a) is	b) do	c) does	CD			
3. A businesswoman	is a woman	works in an office	•			
a) where	b) whose	c) who	d) whom			
4. A teacher is a person	on teaches	students.				
a) who	b) what	c) where	d) when			
5. What do	do?		SB			
a) an accountant	b) engineers	c) a teacher	d) a sclentist			
6. I was reading abou	ıt a mansa	iled around the wo				
a) who	b) whose	c) whom	d) where			
7. What does a comp	outer programmer	?				
a) did	b) doing	c) does	d) do			
8. I met the girl	sang in the part	y.				
a) whom	b) who	c) when	d) what			
Read and correct	Read and correct the underlined words:					
1. A pilot is a person		() WB				
2. Mohamed Salah is	() WB					
3. What do writers dig	()					
4. Ali, whose bought	()					
5. These are the girls	when attended the pa	rty last week.	()			
6. The little girl, where	()					



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary		الرئيسية	المفردات		
marine biologist	عالم الأحياء البحرية	coral reefs	شعاب مرجانية	collect	يجمع
laboratory	معمل	terrible	فظيع	record	يسجل
research	بحث علمي	storm	عاصفة	especially	خاصة
ocean	محيط	results	نتائج	volunteer	يتطوع

Additional Voc	abulary	امتنه	لمفردات الاف		
test	يختبر	interview (ed)	يجرى مقابلة مع	Neweiba	نويبع
planet	كوكب	nice	لطيف	the Red Sea	البحر الأحمر
protect	يحمى	really	حقا	Thailand	تايلاند

Language Expressions		التعبيرات التعون	
go diving = go for a dive	يذهب للغمس	the worst thing	اسوا شيء

Prepositio	ns		ف الجز	حرو	
good at	جِيد في	decide to	يقرر أن	results of	نتائج ك ·
advice to	نمیحة اــ	find out about	يكتشف عن	on the computer	على الكمبيوتر

Words and Opposites	الكلماك وعكسها	
love '	hate	يكره



Language Notes

عروف الجر مع وسائل المواصلات: :Prepositions with means of transport (by / on / in)

مع كل وسائل المواصلات بدون فاصل (أداة أو صفة ملكية). by

- He travelled to Alexandria by train.
- She went to work by car.

مع وسائل المواصلات (التي يمكن الحركة فيها) مع وجود فاصل (أداة أو صفة ملكية). on

- He travelled to Alexandria on a train.
- She went to work on a bus.

مع وسائل المواصلات (التي لا يمكن الحركة فيها) مع وجود فاصل (أداة أو صفة ملكية).

- He travelled to Alexandria in a car.
- She went to work in a taxi.

الاصطال نستخدم (on) مع كلمة (foot)



She went to work on foot.

spend + time + (V + ing)

يقضى وقثا

• I spent three hours studying my lessons.

ينفق مالا spend

My father spent a lot of money last week on clothes.

Check Point

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
- 1. She travelled abroada plane.

 - b) in c) on d) with a) by
- 2. My wife spent 3 hours the food.
 - b) cooked a) cook c) to cook d) cooking

Reading and listening



Pre-reading question:

What's a marine biologist?

2. Listen to the interview and check your answers to Exercise 1.

SB page 56

My dream job

This week, we interviewed Nesma El-Soory, a marine biologist.

1. What's a marine biologist?

A marine biologist⁽¹⁾ is a person who studies the ocean ² and the plants and animals in it.

2. Why did you decide to become a marine biologist?

I'm good at science and I love the ocean. The animals in our oceans are really beautiful and interesting.

3. What's your day like?

In my job, every day is different! On some days, I go diving around coral reefs ³⁾. On other days, I test water from the ocean in the laboratory ⁽⁴⁾. I also spend a lot of time on the computer, writing the results ⁽⁵⁾ of tests.

4. What's the best thing about your job?

My research⁽⁶⁾ helps to protect the plants and animals in the ocean. That's the best thing. It's really important to look after our planet, isn't it?

5. And what's the worst thing?

There are bad things about every job, aren't there? Sometimes the weather 7) is terrible(8). It isn't nice to go out in a boat for a dive when there's a storm(9)!

Post-reading question:

- Where does Nesma go diving?



محيط (2)

الشعاب المرجانية (3)

معمل (4)

نتائج (5)

بحث علمي (6)

الطقس (7)

فظيع (8)

عاصفة (9)







Lesson



Listening



SB page 57

Pre-listening question:

What kinds of animals does Nesma study?

حيتان (1)

يجمع (2)

يسجل (3)

خاصة (4)

يتطوع (5)

4. Listen to the rest of the interview with Nesma.

Choose the correct answers.

Presenter: You visit some interesting places, don't you?

: Yes, I do! At the moment, I'm Nesma

working in the Red Sea, near Neweiba. Last year, I worked in Australia. And before that,

I worked in Thailand.

Presenter: Wow! And what different kinds of

animals do you study?

: Well, some marine biologists study large animals, like Nesma

whales(1) and dolphins. But I study fish and smaller animals

around coral reefs.

Presenter: It sounds like a dream job to be a marine biologist but it isn't

easy job, is it?

: No, it isn't. There's a lot of information to collect(2) and record(3. Nesma

It's hard work and it takes a long time. I work about ten hours

a day.

Presenter: What is your advice to young people who want to become

a marine biologist?

: Work hard at school, especially.4) in Science. You have to love Nesma

science to be a marine biologist! And find out everything you

can about the job. You can even volunteer (5) for dives.

Presenter: That sounds like great advice. Thank you, Nesma.

: You're welcome. Nesma

Post-listening question: - What should you do to be a marine biologist?

Vocabulary Exercises

	ect answer from a, b, c		WB
1. Mariam got the	of her test. She		d) result
a) book	b) cause	c) reason	WB
2. I love learning abo	out sea life. I want to be a	a marine	d) teacher
a) architect	b) biologist	c) engineer	WB WB
3. A/An(fo	or example, the Atlantic)	is bigger than a sea.	
a) ocean	b) sea	c) river	d) lake
4 The science teach	er asked us to	what we see in the ex	periment.
a) record	b) speak	c) reply	d) rebuild
	with my friend		efs.
a) driving	b) diving	c) playing	d) eating
	me English to	-	he exam.
a) study	b) to study	c) studied	d) studying
•	•		
· ·	us to lookou	c) up	d) for
a) after	b) at	•	
	test water from the oc	ean in the	d) clubs
a) companies	b) hospitals	c) laboratories	
9. Her wa	s to go to Hollywood ar		tar.
a) research	b) dream	c) test	d) planet
10. I'm very worried	about the results		
a) of	b) from	c) by	d) with
11. The weather is	because there'	s a storm.	
a) nice	b) fantastic	c) wonderful	d) terrible
12. My son is very go	ood maths and	d science.	
a) for	b) at	c) by	d) with
	st to teach us	about our planet.	
a) kept	b) volunteered	c) spent	d) tested
·	hot in August.	•	
a) special	b) specialist	c) especially	d) specialised
a/ special	b) specialist	c/ capecially	a, specialisea





Question Tag

- السؤال المذيل هو سؤال يأتى في نهاية الجملة الخبرية ويأتى قبله (,) و غرضه التأكد بمعنى (اليس كذلك؟).
 - يكون السؤال المذيل عكس حالة الجملة (مثبت إذا كانت الجملة منفية ومنفى إذا كانت الجملة مثبتة).

كيفية تكوين الاستفهام المذيل. How to form a question tag

?ضمير الفاعل + فعل مساعد ,جعلة خبرية

- She is a great teacher, isn't she?

- You will play the match, won't you?

- They haven't got the key, have they?

- إذا لم يكن بالجملة فعل مساعد ... نستخدم (V. to do) ... كالآتى:

المضارع Present

الماضي Past

do → مع الضمائر (اسم جمع / l / We / You / They) مع الضمائر (does → مع الضمائر (He / She / it)

مع جميع الضمائر -- did

- You like meat, don't you?

- He studied his lessons well, didn't he?

- She plays chess well, doesn't she?

- Mona didn't go to school, did she?

is not (×) - isn't (√)

- Marwan is a good student, isn't he?
- You played the match yesterday, didn't you?
- Miss Ghada is a businesswoman, isn't she?
- You like maths, don't you?

المنيل المنيسارات في الاستفهام المنيل.

- ٢- لا بد من التعويض عن الأسماء بضمائر.
- ٣- لا تحول الضمائر في الاستفهام المذيل.
- ٤- يتم الإجابة عن السؤال المذيل بـ (Yes/No).
 - Yes, she is.
 - No, I don't.

- لاحظ التحويلات التالية:

5 51

I'm aren't !?

- I'm a good student, aren't !?

I'm not ▶ am I?

- I'm not bad at maths, am !?

Let's ▶ shall we?

- Let's travel to Alexandria, shall we?

Let us ▶ will you?

(بدن) - Let us watch the film, will you?

'd + inf. ▶ wouldn't + ضمير الفاعل?

- She'd play the match, wouldn't she?



Language Exercises |

Choose the correct	t answer from a, b, c	or d:	SB
1. You want to be a ne	urse,?		
a) don't you	b) don't I	c) do you	d) do l
2. It isn't hot today,	411000411070411111141100041111411417		
a) isn't it	b) is it	c) has it	d) hasn't it
3. You won't forget to	phone me,	7	
a) won't l	b) won't you	c) will l	d) will you
4. There were a lot of	people at the meeting	9,?	·SB
a) were there	b) was there	c) weren't there	d) wasn't there
5. You don't have a b	rother,	?	·SB ₁
a) do you	b) don't you	c) haven't you	d) have you
6. Hoda is good at Er	nglish,?		
a) is she	b) isn't she	c) is Hoda	d)isn't Hoda
7. I'm a good player,			9
a) am not l	b) am l	c) aren't l	d) isn't l
8. Someone will give	her the money,	?	
a) won't he	b) won't she	c) won't it	d) won't they
2 Read and correct	the underlined word	ds:	
1. You like fish, <u>do</u> yo	ou?		() ·\$B;
2. She sleeps early, g	don't she?		(,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
3. He is happy, was h	ne?		(
4. Menna is a good s	student, <u>is not</u> she?		(**************************************
5. Kareem did his ho	omework, did he?		
6. He has lunch at tv	vo oʻclock, <u>isn't</u> he?		

Lessons

General Exercises

Complete the foll	owing dialogue:		
Radwa: What is you	ur name?		
Menna: My name i	s Menna.		
Radwa: You don't l	nave a brother, (1)	y	ou?
Menna: No, I don't	. But I have two sisters.		
Radwa : (2)		do you live w	ith?
Menna: I live with	my father, mother and	two sisters.	
Radwa: What is yo	ur favourite (3)		?
Menna: I like Engli	sh very much.		
Radwa: And what	are your favourite hobb	oies?	
Menna: I like draw	ing and (4)	***************************************	1990511 P
Radwa: (5)		you go to a prepai	ratory school?
Menna: Yes, I do.			
2. Choose the corre	ct answer from a, b, c	or d;	
1. A/An	is a person who hel	ps sick people.	
a) architect	b) pilot	c) engineer	d) doctor
2. A/An	is a woman who wo	orks in an office and	goes to meetings.
a) businessman			d) dentist
3. A/An	is a person who loo	ks after people's te	eth.
a) writer	b) dentist	c) pilot	d) accountant
4. A/An accountant i	s a person who works	mur.	nbers.
a) at	b) with	c) in	d) of
5. A/An	is a person who des	signs machines or e	
a) businessman			d) accountant
6. Her research helps	to the	plants and animal	s in the occan

c) kill

d) eat

a) protect

b) prevent

My future



7. The teacher's ad	vice st	udents is to study th	neir lessons hard.
a) for	b) from	c) to	d) at
8. This is the woma	anwor	ks as an actress.	
a) whose	b) whom	c) who	d) which
9. He went diving	yesterday,		
a) don't he	b) doesn't he	c) didn't he	d) did he
10. Nora hasn't got	any money,	?	
a) has Nora	b) does Nora	c) has she	d) does she
3 Read and corre	ct the underlined wo	rds:	
1. Hany is the boy	how lives next door to	me.	(.,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
2. I'm not good at	maths, <u>are</u> l?		(,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
3. Ali got the full n	nark in the exam, didn	t <u>Ali</u> ?	(,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
4. Mona will sleep	early, will not she?		()
Write a paragra	aph of EIGHTY (80) we	ords on:	
	"My drea	m job"	
Modernature opposite the state of the state	H \$Man-o	DDDD YSGUNYNG - GAARL GLEEGENAAN, MANEGARDAD BI BIBEEFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFF	univordo valoradado anun i diunivoras vigue madad (1977 a anamen mi pro part)
nes decomply) of and enember 5 progressions (1694 c	no amende do do meja meno appresente fil do mejaje il pièro priguent en comprehensativa i i i i a i i i i i i i	THE CONTRACT OF STATE AND ADDRESS OF THE PROPERTY OF THE PROPE	Delp dy wyng, o daaraa lantau dâddol dael dael dael jaren nyn downen y en wedd
400500m3440500030004401000000000000000000000000	dakku na pyrodoje jekusku korisoje jejada i sa spikojej (os posvojihovoje el i p. i. p. j. j.	dentermontal postpologistoccidal site Lancabara, assophyropyra	
d, as do to de responsación de la meser de ópócique en	radal Bounnami dobbojinoji kobbitani i m manaki (44 24 opisata (41 14 opisata (41 14 opisata (41 14 opisata (4	vojdoppeesses sypvamidessissassyvypyvyvärjävvätäääininkkevossi	>>>+++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++
filed do (1,104 Production 4,014 do hill wood damage de cit o de un	(1999-ppe-value l'abbuppe po po pobbuque por marie (de l'origina de l'origina de l'origina de l'origina de l'o	ma did ald did did did to equipment i i did did dispussion quando de su did del colo de destre e e	, («РЯКИЯ 914 100 КИХИХОО ЖУХ ТЁТ ТОРИЙ В РОРИЙОННЯ В ВРЕМЕНТИВНЕ СПОВЕНТИВНЕ СПОВЕНТИВНЕ СПОВЕНТИВНЕ СПОВЕНТ
**************************************	(caalaminares 536507661) i 13856 cold i 191 (männäe cold i 05504 ninä (del 5571 nina en		
hold ideal to bibble indequeque é éanadadel le propose e	a post de de composit en l'a representant a précédent en consociént és per pes con	re propinským rek i minimetri podlikatose avytých jskádká deckáh	1844 PD35(510) 514555494445 >49455+91141PP41149P4114815425-24#65540791
## + + + + + + + + + + + + + + + + + +	1222444 4444 4444 4444 4444 4444 4444 4		98111/63-8112746-63-112444-63-11444-61-114-63-114-63-114-63-114-63-114-63-114-63-114-63-114-63-114-63-114-63-1



SB pages 58 & 59, WB pages 109 & 110

Vocabulary

Key Vocabula	ry.	A STATE OF THE PARTY OF THE PAR	ع الرئيسية		
education	التعليم	culture	ثقافة	social media	_
pottery	الفخار	local	محلی	adult	بالغ
ن الماضى) tradition	عادة/ تقليد (م	workshop	ورشة	skills	مهارات
traditional		colourful وان	ملوِّن/ زاهي الألر	business	عمل تجاری
earn	يربح مالا	jewellery	مجوهرات	prefer	يفضل

Additional Vocabulary	ار استخدار شده راسری ا	المقردات الإطافيا	
hope (d)	يأمل/يتمنى	hard	उठ्न
continue (d)	يستمر	market	السوق

Langu	ıag	e Expressions		igoli i j	pula-sit.	
buy	-	an apartment	يشترى شقة	get	▶ a job	يحصل على وظيفة
get	•	married	يتزوج	go	▶ to university	يذهب إلى الجامعة
have	>	children	لديه أطفال	learn	▶ to drive	يتعلم القيادة
do	>	a job	يؤدى وظيفة	pass	an exam	يجتاز اختبارًا
		jewellery	يصنع المجوهرات	earn	► money	يكسب مالًا
make	•	pottery	يصنع الفخار	change	▶ jobs	بغير وظائف
		a basket	يصنع سلة	work	► hard	بعمل بجد

Propositions		حزوف الجر	
all over the country	في كل أنحاء الدولة	a way for	طريقة 1
plan for the future	يخطط للمستقبل	work in	يعمل في
around the world	حول العالم	learn to drive	يتعلم القيادة



Words and Oppos	sites		وعكسها	الكلمات		
teach يُعرس/يُعلم	learn	يتعلم	buy	یشتری	sell	6117
modern حدیث/ عصری	traditional	تقليدى	local	محلي	international	دولی

Language Notes

see/ hear

see/ hear + مفعول + (v- ing)

يرى – يسمع (جزءًا من الحدث أو بالمصادفة)

- I saw many people making pottery.

-Theard Sara singing.

see / hear + مفعول + inf.

يرى – يسمع (الحدث بأكمله)

- I saw my friend Ali play football. I saw the match from beginning till end.
- I heard Eman talk to Heba about sports.

learn (how) to + inf.

• Ali learnt (how) to drive his new car.

ینجہ فی succeed in یجتاز / پنجہ فی pass

Omar passed his exams.

(لا يأثى بعنها حرف جر)

• I succeeded in the driving test. (یأتی بعدها حرف جر)

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. I heard my neighbourby chance بالمصادفة.
 - a) to call
- b) calls

- c) called
- d) calling

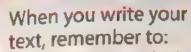
- 2. She learnt the food for her family.
 - a) cooks
- b) cooked
- c) to cook
- d) cook
- 3. Fatmaher final exams. She's very happy.
 - a) succeeded
- b) passed
- c) filled
- d) failed

Write it right



How to write about your future plans كيفية الكتابة عن خططك المستقبلية

- My name's (الاسم).
- I'm a student at a preparatory school.
- When I go to university, I want to study (المده).
- I'd like to get a good job in the future.
- When I get married, I'm going to have (عمد) children.
- In (Jule) years' time, I think I'll learn to drive a car.



- · end with a conclusion
- read your final text and check for any mistakes

عبد كنابة البص بدي بيال

- الحسم عفرة لتمله تتحلمله
- * اقر المقرة وباحد س عبد وسو أخطاء بها



"My future plans"

My name's Tamer. I'm twelve years old. I'm a student at a preparatory school in Giza. I always think about my future and make plans for .t. When I leave school, I'd like to join the university When I go to university, I want to study medicine. I'd like to get a good job in the future. I'd like to have my own clinic and help the poor. When I get married, I'm going to have two children, a boy and a girl. I'll look after them. In five years' time, I think I'll learn to drive a car. I'm going to have a modern car. I hope I'll achieve my dreams.

Now,	your	turn:
------	------	-------

عان دورك الأن:

Your full	ire predictions"
L SSELECT CARSON CARSON RESERVED 10 No. 1	\$\$****(*2147467).1 > + 1 = 1 (44) ++11 (= 1+4 (+4) 711+3344
(1970) Disk (1981) Disklander (Silladdillandilland) ob lan I (a d abberlitten)	
CHAMMADOR CHI MARTI ARRIVA GARLINGA CHI MARTINGA CHI MART	m (c www.lite(tibk4gedchtill.come) liegibil(1 44) 1.0 welliegeppel her 4004 6 7 60 5
Communication of the second second section of the second section of the second sections and the second section of the second section of the second section of the second section section second section section second section	andil (vormalnojili jil (orrobeljilikeska). Indes ladej i o likkej (liloedipjipudilao spoliniče: svipedibas
A ART 60 % "PRESE PRANT RESPECTANCE SPECIFICAL SP. F. A 'NI	ena. y . y en een 1 filliferthill fill littledthill fill littledthillibil-dage recties, verleeden wintestbedt ellebist
the actual parent announcements the state of the same state of the	11000 011 (III) SAIOMONIGONO, OTO OCRANISTANÇO NOVIL MORREMONISTI DO NOVILO NOVILO CONTRACTOR PROFINCIANO PROFILACIONE

Reading

Pre-reading question:

Lesson

Vacing the way way of the color

2. Read about Munir's plans for the future. Which sentence is true? SB page 58

I don't know which job I want to do when I'm older, but I think that education(1) is very important.

I hope that I pass my exams so that I can go to the university. I'm going to work hard. If I go to the university, I'll study maths. It's my best subject.



تعليم (1)

I don't like flying, so I don't want to travel around the world.

I want to get a good job in Egypt. I want to teach maths. If I have enough money, I'll buy an apartment near the Red Sea. I'll get married, but how many children will I have? I don't know!

Post-reading question:

- What subject does Munir want to teach?





Listening

Pre-listening question:

White is more tellerated like to whater

4. Listen to Rami and Amira talking about their plans for the future. Tick (✓) the things they want to do. What do they both want to do? SB page 59

Presenter: Rami, what do you want to do when you're older?

*I really want to be an architect. I must go to the university⁽¹⁾ for that, so I need to work hard. I won't pass⁽²⁾ my exams⁽³⁾ if I don't work hard! When I finish university, I want to travel. I'd like to get a job in another country, like South Africa. But after a few years, I'll come back to Egypt. I'd like

to get married⁽⁴⁾ one day, but I don't want to live in Cairo.

[prefer⁽⁵⁾ the countryside]

Presenter: Amira, what about you?

I want to go to university, so I hope
I'll pass my exams! If I go to the
university, I'll study science. I'd love to
be a scientist! It's a really interesting

job. I'd like to get a job in Cairo and buy an apartment⁽⁶⁾. I want to learn to drive so that I can visit my family. One day, I'd like to get married and have children, but I still have a long time for that!



(1) ILEIONE (1)

يجتاز (2)

الامتحانات (3)

يتزوج (4)

يفضل (5)

(6) 高端

Post-listening question:

Amira

- What would Amira love to be?



Reading

Pre reading question. Why I. It imponent to keep perchangulates

1. Read quickly and match the photos A–D to the texts. There is one extra photo.

SB page 60

Traditional jobs in Africa

Today many people in Africa work in modern offices, but traditional⁽¹⁾ jobs and skills⁽²⁾ are still important.

1. B

People started making pottery⁽³⁾ thousands of years ago in Egypt. Some people make pottery in workshops⁽⁴⁾ or their own homes. If you go to a village in Fayoum Fayoum, you will see many people making pottery. There is also a school where children and adults⁽⁵⁾ can learn the skill.



It is traditional to make jewellery⁽⁶⁾ in Kenya. You can see the colourful⁽⁷⁾ jewellery in markets all over the country. Today some local businesses⁽⁸⁾ also use social media⁽⁹⁾ and the internet to sell jewellery to people in different countries. It is an important skill because it continues an old tradition⁽¹⁰⁾ and it helps local people to earn⁽¹¹⁾ money.



It is an important part of Africa's culture⁽¹²⁾ to make baskets. It is also a way for women from small African villages to earn money. In Ghana, there are a lot of women who make and sell baskets. You can buy colourful baskets from Ghana in countries all over the world.

Post-reading question:

- How do you think these jobs will change in the future?









(1)	0.51	157

- 1		
1 21	=	مخة
4		I LIBA

7	3	١	1	٠	'n	a	
U	-1	. 1	11	-	n	.11	

ورش (4)

بالغون (5)

مجوهرات (6)

زامي الألوان (7)

عمل بجاری مملی (8)

وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي (9)

تقليد (10)

يربح مالًا (11)

(12) تقافة



Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the cor	rect answer from a, I	o, c or d:	
1. I hope that I	my exams so th	aat I can go to the un	iversity.
a) succeed	b) pass	c) fail	a) get
2. If I have enough	n money, I'll	an apartment near th	ne Red Sea. SB
a) do	b) make	c) buy	d) sell
3. People started	pottery thou	sands of years ago ir	Egypt.
a) going	b) earning	c) taking	d) making
4. I want to	a good job in Alex	andria as a hotel rece	eptionist.
a) get	b) earn	c) pass	d) gain
5. A/An	is a building where to	ols and machines are	e used for making or
repairing things			
a) school	b) workshop	c) theatre	d) cinema
6. Farmers come to	o the to sell t	fresh fruit and vegeta	ables.
a) workshop	b) university	c) market	d) basket
7. A mea	ns an ability to do son	nething well.	JWB.
a) skill	b) skull	c) skeleton	d) skip
8. His job is to	fantastic jewelle	ry for people.	
a) do	b) have	c) take	d) make
9. My brother got r	narried ten years ago.	. He three o	hildren.
a) makes	b) does	c) has	d) gives
10. She always	for her future. Sh	e hopes to be a jour	nalist.
a) plans	b) earns	c) makes	d) gets
11. The cost of the tr	ip is L.E. 100 for	and L.E. 30 for c	hil dren.
a) animals	b) plants	c) adults	d) baskets
12. The garden was f	full ofand fa	scinating flowers.	•
a) hopeful	b) tasty	c) modern	d) colourful



Company of the last of the las
الحالة الشرطية الأولى The first conditional (If)
• We use the first conditional to talk about the probable result of an action: • تستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى للحديث عن نتيجة محتملة عن حدث.
subject + will + int. → subject + will + int.
مضارع بسیط present simple ——> if / when ——> present simple
Examples:
 If / When I go to university, I'll study maths. I'll study maths if / when I go to university. If I don't work hard, I won't pass my exams. I won't pass my exams if I don't work hard.

Language Exercises

		-		
Choose the corre	ect answer from a, b	o, c or d:		
1. If I visit my grand	parents, I		SB.	
a) gave	b) gives	c) will give	d) giving	
2. Lara	to drive if she stays	in the city. She'll use t	ne bus.	
	b) won't learn		d) will learn	
3. lf l	to the university, I'll s	study to be an enginee	r.	
a) go	b) goes	c) went	d) will go	
4. If my father	a new job, v	we'll move to Cairo.	*SB	
a) get	b) gets	c) got	d) will get	
5. We	to the university if v	ve don't pass our exam	is.	
a) will go	b) go	c) won't go	d) didn't go	
6. I will get the full	mark when I	hard.		
a) study	b) studies	c) studied	d) had studied	
2 Read and correc	t the underlined w	ords:		
1.1 will buy a new o	ar <u>what</u> I have a lot o	of money.	()	
2. If I ate too many	sweets, I will be ill.		()	
3. I would buy a lot of things when I go to the shops. (
4. <u>Do</u> you be happy	y if you get a good jo	b?	()	

Lessons 3 & L

General Exercises

A company of the party of the formation of the second states	The same of the sa	sound board:	(نص الاستماع في نماية الكتاب
1) Listen and choose		from a, b, cor a.	•
1. Ali goes to school		3.1. 1	d) on foot
a) by car	b) by bike	c) by bus	,
2. He talks to his frier	nds at the		d) club
a) class	b) break	c) home	
3. His favourite subje	ct is		d) science
a) English	b) French	c) maths	d) science
4. After doing his ho	mework, he		Dtehos TV
a) studies English	b) sleeps	c) listens to music	d) watches TV
Read the following	g, then answer the	questions:	
Nader is a famou	s teacher of science	e in a prep school fo	or boys and girls. He
likes his job very mu	uch. He is also help f	ful to his students. I	He helps them to do
experiments in the s	science lab. He enjoy	ys growing flowers i	n the school garden.
			o daughters and one
son. He starts work a	it half past seven. He	e finishes <u>it</u> at half pa	st two p.m. He's very
kind to his students.	They will always go	to him if they have a	any problems.
A) Answer the following	ng questions:		
1. Where does Mr Na	ider teach science? .)(*))<>)[})<*(*)
2. Do you think stud	ents like Mr Nader? '	Why?	++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++
3. What is Mr Nader's	s hobby?		***************************************
) Choose the correct			
4. Mr Nader has got	children.		
a) one	b) no	c) three	d) two
5. The underlined wo	ord "it" refers to	ФФАРьшияффифура I	
a) work	b) garden	c) lab	d) problem
6. The word "helpful	"means a person w	ho	
a) helps others	b) has problems	c) grows flowers	d) learns from others
			/

3 Choose the corre	et answer from -	h a andi	WB
	an ability to do some		
-\ aleill	b) skull	a) skeleton	d) skip
1 Vou can see peop	le making haskets i	n thedown th	ne road. WB
a) workshop	h) field	c) farm	d) school
a) Workshop	d way to communic	c) farm cate with people in diffe	erent countries.
3 15 α goo	b) TV	c) Rocket	d) Social media
a) Radio			
	get a good job in t		d) travel
a) continue	b) hope	c) pass	money.
5. It is an important	t skill because it hel	ps local people to	d) learn
a) earn	b) win	• 🗕	
6. It is an important	part of Africa's	to make baskets.	d) traditionally
a) location	b) traditional	c) traditions	vs.
		get married in nowada	d) kitchen
a) department	b) apartment	c) room	
		l if hea good j	d) will get
a) gets	b) got	-	
9. The family	a new apartmen	t if they move to the cit	a) will buy
		c) buying	
10. If I go to the univ		c) will study	d) would study
a) studies			
Read and correct			
1. If you studied har	rd, you will get high	marks.	(,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
2. I would get up ea	arly if I sleep early.		()
3. When he eats we	ll, he <u>would</u> grow up	guickly.	(,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
	rd, I won't pass my e		(11104100000110011101111011111111111111
5 Write a paragrap	oh of EIGHTY (80) w	ords on:	
	"Traditio	nal jobs"	
\$400005444444444444441111111111111111111	***************************************	andere en	
HAS THE RESERVENCE OF SUPPLY DAY AND A SECTION OF SECTI	wd H \$ \$00.00 h \$ \$10.00 PM > 200 T 0 \$20 \$4 \$4 \$4 \$4 \$4 \$4 \$10 HH H H P 1 TP V V V V A h h h h H H H H H H H H H H H B P 1	уссьци ничиван с ресупносте не верходиванни весесом странавний весесом странства	6.) ####################################
Элинио нини и и бой бей бей бей обробо разичением оборобора ра	20 4 2 4 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2	III.D P BF F B P P P P P P P P P P P P P P P	
Books Mps, price all post price and a very price and a second a s	9,614 MAG INNINEEPENEE (4 fees bêêbeê + e terbêbê bêd 5 9647 pêtê MAG MA M	représ de la company de la La company de la company d	>>++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++
#64.640 paga (400 paga-1 paga 64.640 paga		((QUU QU PU QU	소매 Petr 18 보 변경 및 임습한 공능 및 수 수 를 로 수 는 점 E E 및 및 및 및 문 문 문 문 및 및 및 및 및 및 및 및 및 및



SB pages 61 & 62, WB pages 111 & 112

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary	a gunda di kada unik di dipulita sa di	din	مغردات الرئيت	11)	
prediction	التنبؤ	app	تطبيق / برنامج	robot	إنسان آلى
technology	التكبولوجيا	illnesses	أمراض	health	الصحة
cure	علاج	disappear (ed)	يختفى		

Additional Vocabulary ما المعالمة الإصاف الوصاف الوصاف الوصاف الوصاف الوصاف الوصاف الوصاف الإصاف الوصاف						
completely	تمامًا	happen (ed)	يحدث	the countryside	الريف	
dive	يغطس	exciting	مثير	change	تغيير	

Clang	guage:E	xpressions		iorall r	يترال		
		our life easier	يجعل حياتنا أسهل	spend	•	time with	يقضى وقتًا مع
make	>	predictions	يقوم بعمل تنبؤات	desigr	n Þ	an app a video game	يصمم تطبيقًا الكترونيًا
do	► volu	untary work	يؤدى عملًا تطوعيًا	have	•	a job in	 لديه وظيفة في
stay	▶ the	same	تظل کما ھی	find	•	cures for	يجد علاجات ا

Words and Opposites	الكلمات وعكسها
disappear	e appear يظمر



electric:

گهربائی (یعمل بالگهرباه):

- I hope to buy an electric car in the future.

make

make + (object مفعول + (adjective)

- Technology will make our lives easier and interesting.

make + (object مفعول) + inf.

- His joke made me laugh.

Check Point

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
- 1. My father decided to buy ancar to keep the environment clean.
 - a) electricity
- b) electrical
- c) electric
- d) electronic
- 2. He made his father because he failed in the exam.
 - a) happy
- b) pleased
- c) active
- d) angry

- 3. My mother makes us early for school.
 - a) gets up
- b) getting up
- c) get up
- d) got up





Listening

Pre-listening question:

What does Husseln want to design?

1. Listen and complete the fact files.

Presenter: What are your plans(1) for the future, Hussein?

Hussein: I've got a lot of plans for the future. Next year,

I want to learn to play the guitar. And before

I leave school, I want to design a video game!

Presenter: Wow! And what about later on? What will

yourlife(2) be like in ten years' time?

Hussein: In ten years' time, I want to have a good job. I

think I'll be a doctor. I'd like to live in the city.

Presenter: Thank you, Hussein.

Presenter: Khadeeja, what are your plans for the future?

Khadeeja: Well, one day I'd like to be a teacher. But there

are lots of other things I want to do first.

Presenter: Tell me about them.

Khadeeja: Well, before I get a job, I'd like to learn a new

language(3). I also want to learn to drive.

Presenter: And what will your life be like in 15 years' time?

Khadeeja: That's a long way into the future, isn't it? Well, in 15 years'

time, I'll have a job in a school. I think I'll get married, too.

Presenter: Thanks, Khadeeja.

Post-listening question:

- What would Khadeeja like to learn?



خطط، (1)

الحياة (2)

لغة (3)





Reading



Pre-reading question:

Do you think technology will make our lives more interesting?

2. Read Ahmed's text. How many of your ideas were the same? SB page 62

My predictions(1) for the future

By Ahmed

In the next 30 years, there will be a lot of changes in our lives.

Technology⁽²⁾ will make our lives easier and more interesting. Our phones will be even more important and we will have apps⁽³⁾ for everything.

Scientists will find new cures⁽⁴⁾ for illnesses⁽⁵⁾ so people will live longer. Some illnesses will disappear⁽⁶⁾ completely.

All our cars will be electric⁽⁷⁾. If this happens, it will be much better for the air in our cities, won't it? I don't think I will have to learn to drive because cars will drive themselves!

There will be a lot of interesting new jobs for people.

Robots⁽⁸⁾ will do some of the jobs that people do today.

But I don't think we will have robot doctors or teachers!

I think there will be a lot of exciting changes in the future, but some things will stay the same. Children will still go to school, learn new things and spend time with friends.

Post-reading question:

- Do you think all our cars will be electric?

- تنبؤات (1)
- التكنولوجيا (2)
- تطبيقات (3)
- علاج (4)
- أمرئض (5)
- يختفي (6)
- كمربي (7)
- إنسان آلي (8)







Listening [

Pre-listening question:

विकास विवास विभिन्न प्रकारि प्रकार है।

3. Listen and put Dina's plans in the correct order (from first to last).

WB page 111

Dina: I want to be a doctor, but I need a lot of skills to do that.

Tomorrow, I'm going to visit my uncle. He's a doctor, so he can give me some advice. Next summer, I'm going to study English in England. You need to speak good English to be a doctor.



Before I leave school, I'm going to do voluntary work at a children's hospital. In a few years' time, I want to go to a good university. Then, in about ten years' time, I think I'll be a doctor in a good hospital!

Post-listening question:

- Where is she going to study English?



Vocabulary Exercises

•	- Country E	E O O O O					
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:							
1. Technology willour lives easier and more interesting.							
a) have	b) take	c) make	U) leave				
2. A/An is	something on your p	hone that helps yo	u use maps, book				
tickets, etc.			-WB				
a) file	b) click	c) icon	d) app				
	draw something that ye	ou plan to build or n	nake. WB				
a) design	b) build	c) plan	d) hope				
	ne area that is outside a	town or a city.	WB:				
	b) city	c) countryside	d) town				
a) street	•						
5. Some illnesses wi	completely	c) make	d) die				
a) disappear	b) dive		•				
6. Robots will	some of people's jo		ما الم				
a) make	b) play	c) take	d) do				
7. I think there will b	oein the futur	e, but some things \	will stay the same.				
a) changes	b) lives	c) parts	d) similarities				
	d new for illne	esses so people will	live longer.				
a) doctors	b) health	c) diseases	d) cures				
	that he willa	video game in the f	uture.				
a) build	b) give	c) do	d) design				
•	on't have to learn to		will drive themselves!				
		c) drive	d) design				
a) dive	b) fly		a, acaign				
11. I think we'll live o	n other planets. This is	my					
a) information	b) prediction	c) action	d) relation				





Talking about your future plans

الحديث عن خططك في المستقبل

- Next year, I'm going to learn a new language.
- Before i leave school, I think I'll design a video game.
- In ten years' time, I'll be married.
- Before I go to the university, I'd like to learn to drive.
- In five years' time, I want to buy a new car.



Complete the following dialogue:

Maha: Hello, Dina. How are you?

Dina: Fine, Maha.

Maha: Can you tell me about your future (1).....?

Dina: Sure. In four weeks' time, I'm (2)..... to finish school.

Maha: What are you going to do when you finish school?

Dina: First, I'd (3).....to join the university of Engineering.

Maha: What else?

Dina: In five years' time, I (4)..... to learn a new language.

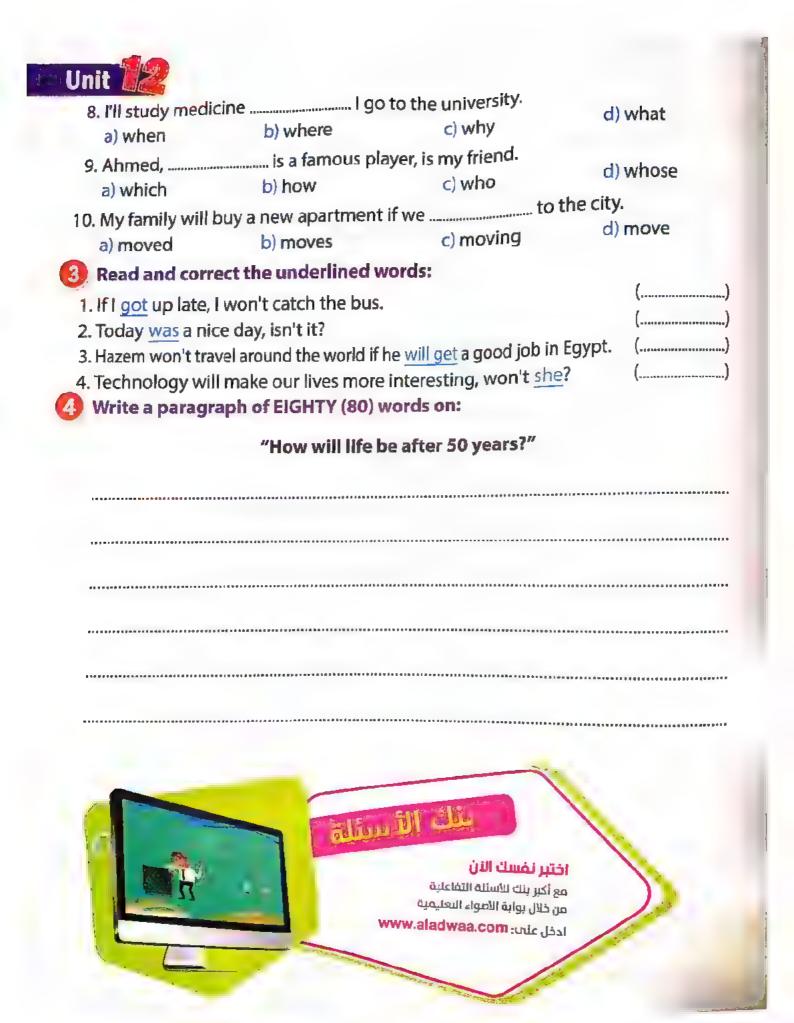
Maha: Great. What language (5)...... you like to learn?

Dina: Italian.

Lessons 5 & 6

General Exercises

Complete the fo	llowing dialogue:		
Ahmed: Where di	id you go on holiday	last year?	
		D) 00 24 10 44 9 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7	
Ahmed: Where di	id you (2)	144 DJ44 7) hi 44 7 \$ 00 7 \$ 1 1 \$ 2 \$ 4 \$ 1 2 \$ 4 \$ 1 2 \$ 4 \$ 1 2 \$ 4 \$ 1 2 \$ 4 \$ 1 2 \$ 4	
Rami : I stayed i			
Ahmed : (3)	161 PD/117V(+611441D0)48D011D01114411B314476144	did you travel t	nere?
Rami : (4)	do no posta de desponse a guar sam a aqui qua unha i de sua gon éga a p	3 1 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8	"train.
Ahmed: What did			C -l-
Rami : I usually	(5)) - 44 T I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I	пsn.
Choose the corr	rect answer from a,	b, c or d:	
1. Scientists will fi	nd new cures for illn	esses so people will live	- opanosizeddodpamencementacents &
a) taller	b) shorter	c) worried	d) longer
2	ill make our life easie	er and more interesting	
a) Technology		b) illnesses	
c) Predictions		d) Hospitals	
	will have	doctors or teachers!	
a) technology		b) robot	
		d) automatic	
c) diving	Lwant to	a new language.	
	b) dive	c) learn	d) hope
a) drive	•		•
	is quieter th	c) hospital	d) countryside
a) prison	b) court	_	d) courtifysiac
	ccident		al\ mas
a) cause	b) result	c) happen	d) get
7. Scientists are tr	ying to	cures for cancer.	
a) make	b) get	c) find	d) have





SB page 60

(1) stall

What job will you do when you are older? Will you be an engineer, who designs exciting new things? Will you be a doctor, who looks after sick people? Or will you be an architect, who designs new buildings and even cities?

These will all be important jobs in the future. But did you know that the ancient Egyptians did many of these jobs too? They helped to form the world we know today.

11763
\$ \$ 4 \$ \$\phi \$\phi \text{\$\phi \tex
أدوات (2)
A. +544,0-644 bypt I bygt birristen of them 1 gib run. +4
قرن (3)
Production despends . As more table to report a personal production
(4) 3152
dubes beine prifere pro-cate and a contract be been as

Engineers in ancient Egypt designed and built a lot of things, like boats. These boats used the wind.¹⁾ to help them travel to other parts of the world.

طريقة (5)

عمود (6)

طين (7)

The ancient Egyptians also learned how to move water from one place to the next. This helped farmers who worked far from the Nile. We use similar ideas to help farmers today.

A doctor was a very important person in Ancient Egypt. The doctor used a lot of different tools 2). We can see some of them in this picture. The ancient Egyptians also had dentists.

In the tenth century⁽³⁾, an Egyptian doctor invented the first kind of syringe⁽⁴⁾. Today doctors and scientists use syringes every day. Imhotep was the world's very first architect. He designed a new way of building pyramids using stone. He built the pyramid at Saqqara using this method⁽⁵⁾. He also used it to build the Great Pyramid at Giza. Imhotep also used stone to build columns. These columns⁽⁶⁾ made buildings very strong. Before this, the ancient Egyptians used mud⁽⁷⁾ and plants to build columns. These columns sometimes fell down. But every job can be important. If you do your job well, you can help to make a better world.



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary	gert and a supply of the suppl	شية	المفردات الرئيد		
design	يصمم	make pottery	يصنع الفذار	computer pro بتر	grammes برامج الكمبير
engine	ا موتورا محرك	meeting	اجتماع	article	مقال
marine biologist درية	عالم الأحياء الب	machine	آلة	terrible	فظيع
laboratory	معمل	research	بحث علمي	storm	عاصفة
dream	حلم	weather	الطقس	robot	إنسان آلى
prediction	التنبؤ	job	وظيفة	apartment	شقة
technology	التكنولوجيا	арр	تطبيق/ برنامج	plan	يخطط
get married	يتزوج	illnesses	أمراض	make jewelle رات	ry يصنع المجوه
have children	لديه أطفال	get a job	يحصل على وظيفة	earn money	يكسب مالًا
pass an exam	يجتاز اختبار	go to univers	ity يذهب إلى الجامعة	change jobs	يغير وظائف
do a job	يقوم بعمل (وظ	learn to drive	يتعلم القيادة		
	Jobs		ئف	وظا	
accountant	محاسب	architect	مهندس معماري	businessman	رجل أعمال
businesswoman	سيدة أعمال	computer pro	Ogrammer مېرمج کمبيوټر	dentist	طبيب أسنان
engineer	مهندس مدنى	photographe	مصور ۲	scientist	عالم
writer	كاتب	teacher	معلم	pilot	طيار



عمير الوصل (who) "A. Relative Pronoun "who" (who) عمير الوصل

نستطيع ربط جملتين (للعاقل) باستخدام ضمير الوصل (Who)

- A businesswoman is a person. She works in an office.
- A businesswoman is a person who works in an office.

2. Question Tag

الستوال المحيل

- السؤال المديل هو سؤال يأتي في نهاية الجملة الخبرية ويأتي قبله (,) و غرضه التأكيد بمعنى (أليس كذلك؟).
 - ●يكون السؤال المذيل عكس حالة الجملة (مثبت إذا كانت الجملة منفية ومنفى إذا كانت الجملة مثبتة)
- -You like meat, don't you?
- -She plays chess well, doesn't she?
- -He studied his lessons well, didn't he?

3. The first conditional الحالة البتير صية الأولى

نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى للحديث عن نتيجة محتملة عن حدث.

If / When

present simple مضارع بسیط subject + will + inf.

Subject + will + inf.

if / when

present simple مضارع بسیط

Examples:

- If Igo to the university, I'll study maths.
- I'll study maths when Igo to university.



Talking about your future plans العديث عن خططك في المستقبل

- Next year, I'm going to learn a new language.
- Before I leave school, I think I'll design a video game.
- In ten years' time, I'll be married.

Test

Based on Unit 12

1 Listen and choo	ose the correct answe	er from a, b, c or d: (کتاب	نص الاستماع في نهاية ال
1. Maths lessons h	elp the pupils to learn b) history	about	d) numbers
•	and draw inb) art	lessons. c) English	d) science
 Pupils like their a) hospital 	b) class	c) school	d) park
4te	lls us about countries. b) Art	c) Social studies	d) Science
	following dialogue: our day like?		
Nadia: Lusually	get up at six o'clock.		
Ali :When do Nadia : At 7 o'clo		breakfas	st?
		to school	?
	you (4)ock in the afternoon.	school?	
Ali :When (5)	######################################	you always do	your homework?
Madia • After lun	cn -		

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Menna loves technology. Her favourite hobby is playing video games. She usually plays them on her laptop, but sometimes she plays them on her mobile phone. Her favourite subject at school is computer studies! At break and lunchtime, she stays in the classroom and looks at video game websites on her phone.

3

Marwan loves nature. He likes watching the trees, animals, flowers and insects. He doesn't like being in the house; he likes being in the garden. He has got a mobile phone. He doesn't send messages or make video calls on his phone, but he takes photos of flowers.

A) Answer the followin	g questions:							
	1. What does Menna	love?		40094400=11162090900417=61090401129047041					
	2. What is Menna's favourite hobby?								
	3. What does Marwar	n do on his mobile?		72200,1,7421,640-1941,540-1941,911,911,911					
B,	Choose the correct a	answer from a, b, c or	d:						
	4. On your smartphor	ne, you can	IGANG B						
	a) take photos		b) make video call	5					
	c) send messages		d) all the mention	ed					
	5. The underlined pro	noun "them" refers to	2031111111000000001110111000000						
		b) hobbies		d) technology					
	6. Menna plays video	games on her							
		b) laptop	c) book	d) a & b					
4	Choose the correc	t answer from a, b, c	or d:						
	1. My father wrote a/a	anabout	sports in Al Ahram n	ewspaper.					
	a) article	b) office	c) book	d) photograph					
	2. She bought a new	washingt	o wash her clothes.						
	a) machine	b) meeting	c) article	d) engine					
	3. A/An	is the person who take	s photographs.						
	a) engineer		b) scientist						
	c) teacher		d) photographer						
	4. Although she is 70	years old, she	to work in the s	ame company.					
	a) continues	b) looks	c) helps	d) lives					
	5. He found a new wa	ybuying	his goods.						
	a) to	b) for	c) by	d) with					
	6. Ali decided to trave	l the worl	d and visit a lot of co	ountries.					
	a) al l	b) around	c) with	d) over					

Init						
7. H	e ma	arried when he was 24		d) did		
-	had	b) made	c) got			
8. A	doctor is the pers	son helps		d) when		
	who	b) whose	c) whom	a) viiicit		
9. lf	he visits the muse	eum, he fa	antastic statues.	d) caw		
a)	will see	b) would see	c) see	d) saw		
10. W	Valeed doesn't like	e camping,	?	D. J 18/slend		
a)) does he	b) doesn't he	c) doesn't Waleed	d) does waleed		
G R	ead and correct t	the underlined words:				
			,	***************************************		
		ose helped me to carry	,)		
		ou <u>would</u> earn a lot of r	noncy.) (WB.		
	_	ter English if you practis				
4.7	The man <u>whom</u> w	on the prize, is my neigl	nour. ()		
6 V	Nrite a paragrapl	h of EIGHTY (80) word:	on:			
		"Technolo	gy"			
•		, = = = < 4.0 0 1 D 0 2 D 0 3 D 0 4 D 0 0 4 D 0 0 4 D 0 0 7 D		**************************************		

	***************************************	, wood 4 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2)	*****************************		
		************************************	00(000(1001)00=47.49120)1004.0100107.492410			

	***************************************		944 heb-101 ben sudit 6 0 11 ben sun b (4 de sed 5 diúse)			
	******************************	440001899*********************************	774 200 101 60 51 61 51 44 H + 126 + H + 101 64 7 F H + 126 H			
	***************************************	0410400447111000001000100010000100001010000101000101	***************************************			
				* * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *		





Review

Reading

Pre-reading question: - Why should we pick up the rubbish from the beach?

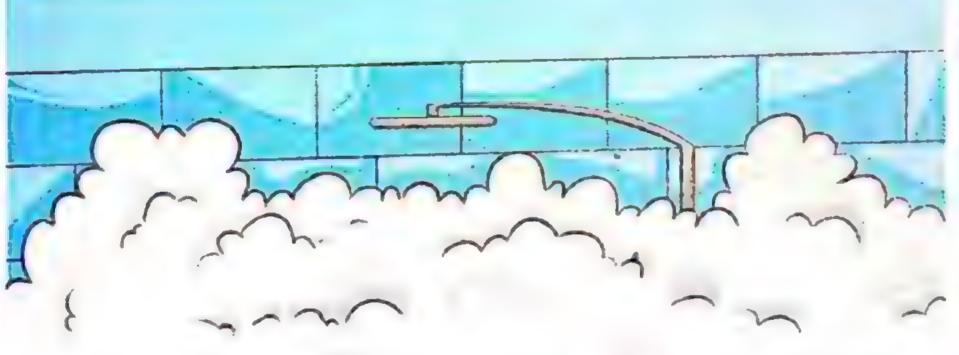
1. Read the story quickly. Why is Tarek worried?

There was a film about the dangers to our planet on TV yesterday. It was very sad. What can we do?



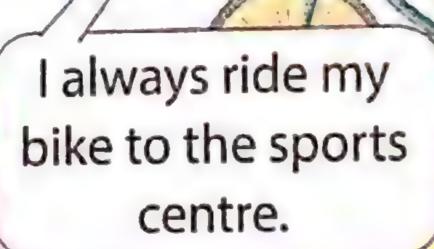
The multiplication of the state
If we pick up the rubbish from the beach, the animals won't eat it.

We must walk or cycle when we can.



If we have shorter showers, we'll save water.

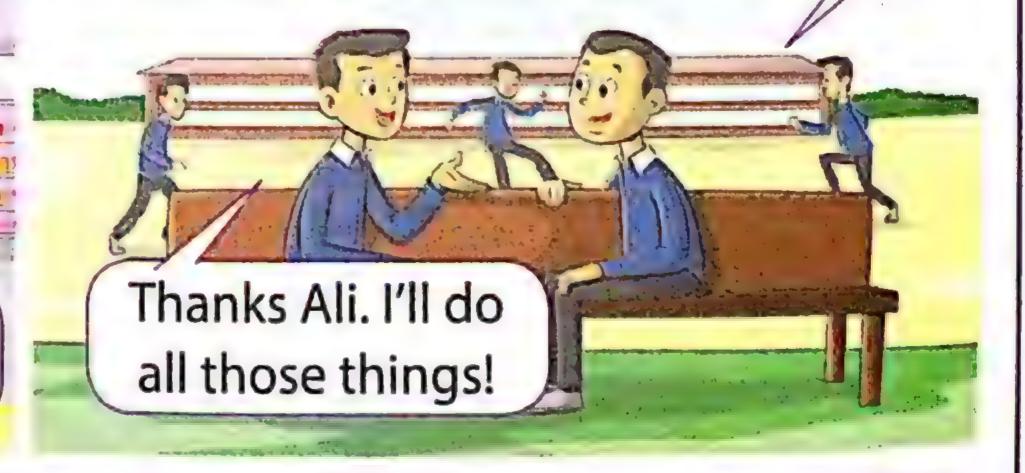
You mustn't buy plastic bag.



If we all do these things, we'll help to save our planet.



My shopping bag is made of cotton.
I use it every day.



Post-reading question: - What will happen if we have shorter showers?

Reading

Pre-reading question? - What does an aeronautical engineer do?

1. Read and complete the article with the words in the box.

WB page 114

In the past, many people had **traditional** jobs that people still do today. There were many teachers and bakers, for example. However, some jobs are quite new, **aren't** they? For example, an aeronautical engineer is a person **who** designs things that fly. If you **want** to become an aeronautical engineer, you will have to study science. It is not an easy job, but it is very **interesting**. If you want to help future technology, perhaps you **will** design drones. Many people think that drones will **carry** our post in the future. That will make the skies above our cities interesting, **won't** it?

Post-reading question: - Do you think people will stop doing traditional jobs?

Listening

3. Listen and match each speaker with what they are doing.

WB page 114

1. Guessing something

I'm not sure what this souvenir made of. Is it plastic or stone?

2. Giving instructions in order

OK, first look for the fruit that is yellow.

Then feel the fruit carefully. It should not be too soft.

So, if it's yellow and not too soft, what should you do?

Well, finally, take it carefully from the tree.

3. Checking information

Hello, so, it's Mrs Shabana, isn't it? And you have got two children in this class, haven't you? But Aya isn't in school today, is she?

4. Talking about future plans

Before I go to university, I think I'll travel for a few months. Then I'd like to work for a charity.



Listening

Pre-listening question:

- What are magazines made of?

1. Hala and Malak are doing a recycling project at school. Listen and tick (\checkmark)

the materials you hear.

SB page 65

Malak: Here are the boxes for the recycling project. Different rubbish

goes into different boxes.

Hala: Great! So which box does this bottle go into?

Malak: What is it made of - plastic or glass?

Hala: It's made of plastic.

Malak: OK, it goes into the yellow box.

Hala: Right ... There's another bottle here. This one is made of glass.

Malak: If it's made of glass, it goes into the blue box.

Hala: What about this magazine? It's made of paper.

Malak: It goes into the red box.

Hala: Where can I put this can?

Malak: If it's made of metal, it goes into the green box.

Hala: Yes, it's made of metal... I'm putting it in the green box.

Malak: What's left?

Hala: Just this T-shirt. We can't recycle that, can we? It's made of cotton.

Malak: We're not going to recycle the clothes - but we can give them to

other people so that they can use them. Put them in the orange

box, please.

Hala: The orange box ... OK.

Malak: Great. Everything is ready. Thanks for your help, Hala.

Post-listening question:

- What are T-shirts made of?



Based on Units 10, 11 & 12

6

Listen and ch	oose the correct ans	wer from a, b, c or d:	(نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)
1. The weather	in Egypt is	most of the year.	
a) cold	b) warm	c) hot	d) cool
2. The weather	in winter is	•••••••	
a) cold	b) hot	c) cool	d) warm
3. People go to	in spri	ing.	
a) parks	b) clubs	c) schools	d) buildings
4. It is	in summer, so p	people go to Alexandria	
a) hot	b) cool	c) cold	d) quite hot
Complete the	e following dialogue	e: -	
Ayman : Do yo	u like sports, Ramy?		
Ramy: Yes, I	(1)	***************************************	•••••
Ayman: Who	is your (2)	***************************************	sports star?
		reat (3)	
Ayman : Does	he (4)		a lot of goals?
		st player in the world.	
Ayman : What	team does he (5)	***************************************	for?
Ramy : Liverp			
•			

Read the following, then answer the questions:

A doctor who worked in a village was very angry because many people used to stop him in the street and ask his advice. In this way, he was never paid for his services and he never succeeded in earning much money. He thought to <u>put an</u> end to this.

One day he was stopped by a young man who said to him, "Oh, Doctor, I'm so glad to see you. I've got a pain in my left side." The doctor seemed to be interested and said, "Shut your eyes and get your tongue out of your mouth".

Then, he went away, leaving the man standing in the street in such funny appearance. People who saw him thought he was mad and laughed at him.



A) Answer the follov	ving questions:		
1. Where did the d	octor work?	***************************************	
3. What did the do	ctor ask the young n	nan to do?	
B) Choose the corre	ct answer from a, b,	cord:	
4. The doctor was	*******		
a) good	b) polite	c) interesting	d) unfriendly
5. A lot of people l	aughed at the	*******	
a) doctor	b) child	c) old man	d) young man
The underlined	phrase" put an end	to it" means	••••
a) stop it	b) play it	c) be angry with it	d) make it funny
Choose the con	rect answer from a,	b, c or d:	
1. His father was a	ngry because he bro	ke the window	••••••
a) stone	b) leather	c) glass	d) wool
2. Put the bread a	nd bake it in a hot	for ten minu	tes.
a) oven	b) tap	c) stone	d) wool
3. She has worked	dall her	r life to be a businesswor	man.
a) hardness	b) hardly	c) hardest	d) hard
4. After an hour o	f swimming, a	stung me in my l	nand.
a) whale	b) shark	c) jellyfish	d) turtle
5. Plastic bottles o	an bei	into clothing.	
a) recycled	b) grown	c) thrown	d) stung
6. I want a good	to desig	n my new villa.	
a) architect	b) pilot	c) teacher	d) doctor
7. There are some	countries which are	famous for	pottery.
a) doing	b) eating	c) taking	d) making
8. If we heat wate	r, it into	o steam.	
a) turn	b) turns	c) turned	d) will turn

9. We	to the moon in the	future.	
a) go	b) goes	c) went	d) will go
0. People	smoke in hospi	tals. It isn't allowed to	o do that.
a) must	b) mustn't	c) should	d) will
Read and corr	ect the underlined w	ords:	
1. Mona studied	her lessons well, didn'	t Mona?	(
2. Ali is the man	whom wants to marry	my sister.	(
3. There was a lo	t of houses in our area	in the past.	(
4. If you watch th	ne match, you would s	ee Salah score goals.	(
Write a parag	raph of EIGHTY (80)	words on:	
Tille a parag			
	your city	in the future"	
•••••			• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
The state of the s		س "عربی - إنجلیزی - فرنسی	onlä

End of Term Practice

(WB) Pages 116-117

Listen and choose	the correct answer fr	om a, b, c or d. (الكتاب	(نص الاستماع في نهاية
1. What does the wor	nan want to buy?		•
a) A newspaper.		b) A new bag.	
c) A new phone.		d) Some photogr	aphs.
2. The thing she decid	des to buy is	•••	
a) large and expensiv	ve	b) small and expe	ensive
c) small and cheap		d) large and chea	p
3. What does the assi	stant ask the woman a	about?	
a) Her name.	b) Her job.	c) Her hobbies.	d) The price.
4. The woman is a	•••••••		
a) photographer	b) painter	c) journalist	d) doctor
2 Complete the follo	owing dialogue.		
Tarek: You're goir	ng to go to university in	n September, aren't you	1?
Ali : Yes, but (1)	l go to uni	iversity, I want to impro	ve my English.
Tarek : How are yo			
		I to England in the sum	mer holidays.
	oing to a language sch		
		n English? In my (3)	
	glish is easier.		
		ive to go there. I'd rathe	r go to London.
	here before, didn't you		
	. It was reall		
Dond the followin	a Then answer the a	uestions.	

There are many beautiful mosques, but perhaps the most unusual is the Great Mosque in Mali, Africa. It is not made of bricks like most mosques. It is made of something called mud. This is the brown soil you often find at the bottom of a river. It is very soft in water. If you dry it, it becomes very hard. The building is

End of Term Practice

usually very strong, but there is a problem. People must put new mud on the building every year. If they don't, it will *collapse* when it rains! There are always enough people to do this because the people who help, get respect for their work.

A) Answer the follow	wing questions:		
1. What is unusual	about the Great Mosque i	n Mali?	
2 \\/\bat ic +ba ===:	- : -l	*************	
z. what is the mair	n idea of the passage?		
3. Do you think we	should keep ancient build	dings? Why? Why no	ot?
B) Choose the corre	ct answer from a, b, c or o	d:	
	nud becomes		
a) soft	b) hard and strong	c) difficult to use	d) very old
5. What do you thi	ink the word collapse mea	ns?	
a) Fall down.	b) Get bigger.	c) Disappear.	d) Turn to water.
6. The underlined	word "it" refers to	••••••	
a) mud		b) Africa	
c) Mali		d) The Great Mose	que in Mali
Choose the cor	rect answer from a, b, c o	rd.	
1. Most windows a	are made of		
a) wool	b) glass	c) cotton	d) paper
2. You can usually	paper, so don	't throw it away.	
a) recycle	b) cycle	c) heat	d) hit
3. We are going to	go across Sin	ai.	
a) trekking	b) tricking	c) fishing	d) swimming
4. We decided to p	play basketball at the sport	S	
a) match	b) wheel	c) funfair	d) centre
5. The teacher ask	ed the students to work in	pairs and	a quiz.
a) throw	b) do	c) make	d) let
6. The story is inte	eresting, it?		
a) does	b) doesn't	c) isn't	d) is

Practice			
7. I hope we	to the moon in the	future.	d) aging
a) will go	b) are going to go	c) went	d) going
8. The old car is	than the new ca	ar.	
a) noise	b) more noise	c) noisier	d) noisiest
9. Children usually e	njoy when t	hey play on the l	beach.
a) themselves		c) ourselves	d) himself
10. Khalid went to the	park ten minutes	••••••••	
a) since	b) then	c) ago	d) next
Read and correct	the underlined words.		
1. If I feel tired, I usua	ally will go to bed.		()
2. My uncle is a selle	r; he works on a big ship		()
	ne which looks after sick		()
4. Which animals hav			()
(6) Write a paragrap	h of seventy (70) words	on"How to kee	p a beach clean".
· Start with a topic			
· Write a short con	clusion.		
· Write details on h	ow to keep a beach clea	n.	
***************************************		• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	******************************
*************		•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	***************************************
******************	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	••••••••••••••••••••••••	er
*******************************	•••••••••••	••••••••••••••••••	••••••
***************************************		•••••••••••••••••••••••	••••••
***************************************	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••		•••••••••
***************************************	•••••••		***************************************





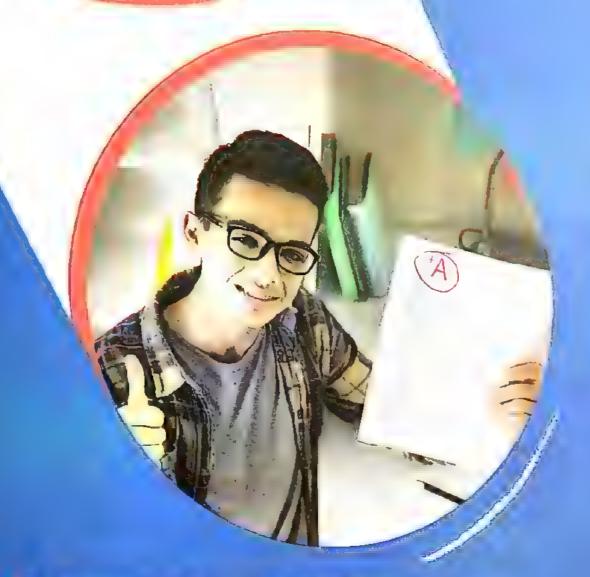




Skills & Research Projects







Learning Outcomes

- 1 Vocabulary Practice
- 2 Language Ractice
- 3 Speaking Practice

المراجعة المراجعة المحتوانات

والمنظمة المنطقة المنط

الاستورولي على المحال الفحارات

Unit 7 How was your weekena?

(A) Vocabulary Practice	
1 Find its correct verb:	20
do - listen - go - have - meet	5
11my best friend	•)
* Transporter and the second s	
3shopping	
*	
sa fantastic weekend	
Guess what it is:	(=
, Trusoe ate this on the Island. It was very nice.	(
When you put a stone in water, it will do this.	(
People first played this type of music a long time ago.	(
This type of music is sometimes very loud.	(
5 This person travels on ships or boats for a job.	(
Write where these people went:	
Let's go on the big wheel there!	. 5
I loved the fish, but I didn't see any whales there.	(=====================================
It was great at there. My team won 2-0!	(
We learnt a lot about the Earth and the moon there.	
The balls are very heavy there.	***************************************
Complete the sentences with the following words:	144444
storm - diary - delicious - adventure - nobody	3
6 Robinson Crusoe is anstory by Daniel Defoe.	
One day, his ship sank because there was a really terrible	
Crusoe wrote a	the telepoid
walked along the beach again, but I saw	ere Are
(6) I found a coconut on the beach today, It was	

B Language Practice
Complete with the past simple:
🕦 Whatyouyou (do) last weekend?

20

I ______ (not/watch) a football match yesterday,
 I _____ (ride) on the big wheel.

(see) an exhibition about dinosaurs.

🞉 l(go) bowling.

Find the mistake and correct it:

He drives to Alexandria with his family last month.

She went shopping with her mum next Sunday.

3 He has lunch in the school canteen with Sami yesterday.

He goes to the sports centre with his dad last weekend.

Do you alone?

Choose the correct words:

(How / Did) was your last birthday?

What did you (did / do) last weekend?

(Have / Do) you got a new school bag?

(Do / Can) Crusoe sleep in a bed?

🖲 (Were / Can) you see the island?

Write the questions:

I went to the museum two weeks ago.

No, i don't like jazz, but i like pop.

I like fruit because it's good for you.

procesis sectos i ente por enal presons jour decourse des supporteur processes des des estes estes estes des p

I come to school by bus.

No, I can't play chess.

Speaking Practice

1	Supply the	e missing parts in the following mini-dialogues:
	1 Tamer	: Where did you go last weekend?
	Nada	D INCOMES WAS COMPANIED TO PROPER BOUND AND AND AND AND AND AND AND AND AND A
	2 Mother	• (Standard Wilder Date (de de de constituto de District De de Constituto de Constitut
	Son	: My last English lesson was at twelve.
	3 Munir	S
	Munira	: I felt nervous when I started a new school.
	4 Dina	: What activities should you do for your birthday?
	Diana	S minuted to be been a continued to the continued of the continued to the
	5 Sama	d sockatements delicated sockatements of the second social
	Soad	il like jazz music.
	A	:What can't you do?
	В	d = 30 / dars product cover a special policies and a production of the special data and a
2	Complete	the mini-dialogues with the following words:
		OK - dear - terrible - great
	₫ A	: How was your weekend?
	В	Oh, It was I lost my mobile at the park
	2 A	: i watched a football match at the stadium. It was terrible because
		my team lost 5-2.
	В	* Oh «———————————————————————————————————
	S Ali	: Hi, Hisham. How was your weekend?
	Hisham	: It wasbecause I went to the bowling alley with
		my cousins.
	Suzan	: Hi, Judy. How was your weekend?
	Judy	It wason Saturday, although I had lots of
		homework. But I went to the theatre in the evening.



Unit 8

The amazing world around us

	A) Vocabu	lary Prac	tice)	
Match the words	with their mean	ings:		,
A				
1. cheap			В	
2. deep	a) not quiet			
3. noisy	c) not exper	g somethin	g from one sic	le to the oth
4. safe		13146		
5. wide	e) not dang	erous erous	m the top to th	ne bottom
iswers: 1.()	2.()	3. ()	4.()	5.()
omplete the ser	ntences with the	following	worde:	J. ()
capital - crowded -	emnty law			
The Red Diversi	empty - low - narro	w - further - n	oisy - populatio	n - wide - oper
stowdada w	id is	away fro	m the centre	of Cairo, so it
The Al Hamra To	ower in Kuwait fir	st	in 2011.	
Paridicov is file	CT T	hailand		
Ine	of Brasilia is ab	out four an	d a half million	
We need to buy	y some more wat	or Thic hass	la ia	
pe raicidi voli (UONT DIT VALIE has	od on the sta	- It I	
hasbic all	ia nikes rail no di	IWN that ros	AN DONOLLE SEE	
The teacher wa	is andry because		1U I DEC ALICO IT N	s very
		AN THE STIME	1976 taraban	
We can't swim	across the river by	AN THE STIME	1976 taraban	
ALC COLL & DAALLILL	acioss the livel b	an the stude ere because	it is very	ainloari 2002 (daadd access (3)) ar
The market is alw	vays very busy at th	an the stude ere because	it is very	ainloari 2002 (daadd access (3)) ar
The market is alw	vays very busy at th	an the stude ere because	it is very	ainloari 2002 (daadd access (3)) ar
The market is alw	vays very busy at th	ere because is time. Don't	ents were very it is very go now or it wi	ainloari 2002 (daadd access (3)) ar
The market is alw nd the mistake The Tahya Masr	vays very busy at the and correct it: r fridge is about 5	ere because is time. Don't	it is very go now or it wi	ainloari 2002 (daadd access (3)) ar
The market is alw Ind the mistake The Tahya Mass Many than 37,5	vays very busy at the and correct it: r fridge is about 5 500,000 people live	ere because is time. Don't 40 metres k	it is very	ainloari 2002 (daadd access (3)) ar
The market is alw nd the mistake The Tahya Mass Many than 37,5 The Gotthard B	vays very busy at the and correct it: r fridge is about 5 500,000 people lives Base Tunnel in Sw	ere because is time. Don't 40 metres k	it is very	ainloari 2002 (daadd access (3)) ar
The market is always and the mistake The Tahya Mass Many than 37,5 The Gotthard Babove the grou	vays very busy at the river rich vays very busy at the and correct it: r fridge is about 5 500,000 people liver says and the says and the says and the river rich value in Swand.	ere because is time. Don't 40 metres k re in Tokyo, itzerland is 2	it is very	ainloari 2002 (daadd access (3)) ar
The market is always and the mistake The Tahya Mass Many than 37,5 The Gotthard Babove the group How much people	vays very busy at the and correct it: r fridge is about 5 500,000 people lives Base Tunnel in Sw	ere because is time. Don't 40 metres k re in Tokyo, itzerland is 2	ents were very it is very go now or it wi ong. Japan, 2,300 metres	ainloari 2002 (daadd access (3)) ar

B Language Practice

L	_	_		
	2	C)	_
1	-		_	/

Put the adjectives between brackets in the correct form:	
My brother has a (tidy) room than me.	1
Australia is (big) than England.	\ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \
(good) now than yesterday.	
She's got (little) money than you, but she o	doesn't car
He thinks Chinese is	the world
Valencia played (bad) than Real Madrid yes	the world.
Cats are not	sterday.
Show me (good) restaurant downtown,	
(hot) desert of all is the Sahara and it's in A	
Who is (old) person in your family?	frica.
Find the mistake and correct it (only one sentence is correct	+)•
My flouse is big than yours.	(1):
This flower is beautiful than that one.	
This is about a second of the	l
This is the interesting book I have ever read,	A section of the last of the l
Non-smokers usually live longest than smokers	(
Non-smokers usually live longest than smokers. Which is the more dangerous animal in the work to	(and a company of the company of th
Non-smokers usually live longest than smokers. Which is the more dangerous animal in the work to	(a man-amalayana
 Non-smokers usually live longest than smokers. Which is the more dangerous animal in the world? A holiday by the sea is good than a holiday in the mountains Who is richest woman on earth? 	(
 Non-smokers usually live longest than smokers. Which is the more dangerous animal in the world? A holiday by the sea is good than a holiday in the mountains Who is richest woman on earth? 	(
 Non-smokers usually live longest than smokers. Which is the more dangerous animal in the world? A holiday by the sea is good than a holiday in the mountains 	Constitution of the second

(Speaking Practice)

1) Answer the following questions:	
Which pyramid is taller, the Great Pyramid of Giza or the Red Pyramid or	nid? 10
Which building is taller, the Shanghai Tower in China or the Al Hain Kuwait?	mra Tower
Which tower is more modern, the Shanghai Tower in China or the Tower in Kuwait?	e Al Hamra
Do you agree that Cairo is the biggest city in the world?	P44 + 94 2 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4
What's the most difficult subject at school?	21.1 = 242.00 = 240.000
Supply the missing parts in the following mini-dialogues: A: What's	5
need many people to play it.	do not
A: What's the best place to play tennis near here? B: I'm	
A:agree that Thursday evening is the most time to go to a sports club?	expensive
B: I disagree, because it's the same price every day.	
What do youabout going to the sports of tonight?	:lub
B: I think it's a great idea!	



Adventure!

100	100	A
William .	- Lote Chillian	
N. 18 A.	- 100	100

	rect verb:	
	look - have - try - go - take	\ 5
	a photo	, _
# # # # # # # # # # # # # # # # # # #	rock climbing	
назамончиноверния ресов.	on a boat trip	
S Between words	a picnic	
Gliocol.	Scary	
Guess wha		1
2 All vo.	go today because there is no wind!	5
		(4001217-1000-0170-71077-1
4 We some	ping down rivers. It's usually very quiet!	(*************************************
5 Hove thi	etimes go for two days or more, usually across the design sport because I'm good at swimming under the ways or more.	(
Choose 4	is sport because I'm good at swimming under the	sert, (
S C C	e correct word.	ater. (
2 It is not	very hot today.	,
* Thora is	very (sun - sunny) in August. very hot today because there are a lot of (clouds - clouds - c	5
4 The rose	(snow - snowy) at the top of that mountain. Look, it is are dangerous when it is (fog - foggy) because you	loudy) in the sle
Don't su	is are dangerous when it is (fog - foggy) because you mistake and correct is	t is all whitel
	with in the sea when it is (storm - storm) because you	can't see very
	and collect it.	erous,
* I'm read	ling on metal at	
2 I'm not	going to do anything scare to	5
a bike ir	the mountains	(assessmentali
		16
	ING OF MORCH, AUTOPATE ASILILI.	(*******************
5 This sur	nmer, I'm going in holiday with my family.	(
	samply with my family	(****************
		and the fact to unus in



1	Fill in the blanks with the correct reflexive pronouns:	1	0
	I did not want to believe it and then I saw it		
	The girl looked at In the mirror.		
	Farida, you'll have to do your homework		
	You don't need to help them. They can do it		
	I introduced to my new neighbour.		
	Boys, can you make your beds?		
	7 She made a pullover.		
	What happens when a fighting fish sees in a relation.	mirror?	
	The father decided to repair the car		
	We can move the table		
	Fill in the blanks with the sourcet forms of a in a to		
	Fill in the blanks with the correct form of going to:		10
	f I	· (n	neet)
	2 They to Dahab.	(c	drive)
	He to the football match.		(go)
	Sheher aunt.	((visit)
	We a test next Sunday.	· ()	nave)
	5 They them tea.	(0	offer)
	7. My friends their holidays in Hurghada.		end)
	My unclea birthday present for Harry.		(buy)
	🧈 l		feed)
	Winter holidaysin the first week of February.		(be)
3	Find the mistake and correct it:		
			5
	1 The cat nearly killed herself when it ran across the road.	(44,144,144,144,144,144,144,144,144,144,	
	4 He always looks at herself in the mirror.	()
	We helped yourselves to the coffee.	()
	The children enjoyed himself at the beach.)
	The two of you shouldn't do that. You'll hurt yourself.)
			11)





Welcome to my home!



A B				
1. sofa	a) wo	od		
2. table	b) lea	ther		
 curtains lamp 	c) gla	SS		
	d) me	d) metal		
5. fork	e) cot	e) cotton		
Answers: 1.()	2.()	3.()	4.()	5.()
Find the mistake a	and correct it:			5
The walls of the	houses were m	ada af balas		,
C THE HOUS OF CHE	LIORDED MELE II	lace of bakes,		
				int (
People usually sle	ept on the proof	because it wa	s very hot at nigh	
People usually sleThere weren't ar	ept on the proof ny tapes. People	because it wa got their wa	s very hot at nighter from the Nile	
People usually sle	ept on the proof ny tapes. People ions on the bed	because it wa got their wa I. They were n	s very hot at nigh ter from the Nile hade of cotton.	
People usually sle There weren't ar There were fashi	ept on the proof ny tapes. People ions on the bed	because it wa got their wa I. They were n	s very hot at nigh ter from the Nile hade of cotton.	Canada de constante de la cons
People usually sle There weren't ar There were fashi I'm working in a Guess what it is:	ept on the proof my tapes. People ions on the bed project for hou	because it wa got their wa I. They were n	s very hot at nigh ter from the Nile hade of cotton.	
People usually sleThere weren't arThere were fashI'm working in a	ept on the proof my tapes. People ions on the bed project for hou	because it wa got their wa I. They were n	s very hot at nigh ter from the Nile hade of cotton.	(1000000000000000000000000000000000000
 People usually sle There weren't are There were fashing in a great what it is: You can turn this You use these to 	ept on the proof my tapes. People ions on the bed project for hou s to get water. build a wall.	because it wa got their wa I. They were n	s very hot at nigh ter from the Nile hade of cotton.	Commence of the commence of th
People usually sle There weren't ar There were fashi I'm working in a Guess what it is: You can turn this You use these to	ept on the proof my tapes. People ions on the bed project for hou s to get water. build a wall.	because it wa e got their wa d. They were n uses for the fu	s very hot at nigh ter from the Nile hade of cotton.	(1000000000000000000000000000000000000
People usually sle There weren't ar There were fashi I'm working in a Guess what it is: You can turn this You use these to This is on the top You use this to c	ept on the proof by tapes. People ions on the bed project for hou to get water. build a wall. ook food or bre	because it wa e got their wa d. They were n uses for the fu	s very hot at nighter from the Nile nade of cotton. ture.	(1000000000000000000000000000000000000
People usually sle There weren't ar There were fashi I'm working in a Guess what it is: You can turn this You use these to	ept on the proof by tapes. People ions on the bed project for hou to get water. build a wall. ook food or bre	because it wa e got their wa d. They were n uses for the fu	s very hot at nighter from the Nile nade of cotton. ture.	(1000000000000000000000000000000000000

These machines can do many things for us. Some of them can t	alk. ()
This machine can fly, but it does not have a pilot.	(= = > + 1 + + + + + + + + + + + + + + + + +
They use the wind to produce electricity.	(4440172400000000000000000000000000000000
This car does not use petrol.	
Write what shape it is:	5
rectangular - round - square - triangular	
The ship's window is	ger than a square
The door isso people can walk through it.	
The roof is so snow and rain fall from it.	
The box isso you can put things in it.	
In Egypt, we use metal coins.	
B Language Practice	25
Find the mistake and correct it:	
A car door made of metal.	10
Car windows are making of glass.	(
Expensive car seats is made of leather.	(
Other car seats are made from plastic.	(**************************************
There weren't some bedrooms.	(**************************************
There were any cars in ancient Egypt.	()
There was boats in ancient Egypt.	
There were trains in 1900, but there were any TVs.	(Signature of the second of t
2 I think people would all use electric cars in the future.	()
think we have more robots in our schools.	1

5 4 %
42
15
like in 30
ice place?
uce biacet
19744146ennesan.o.,
1774416000000000000000000
ood,
ou.
15e
e) hotter?
e) notter?
(be)
(be)
10
ars.
EH 34
G1 34



on land and sea



(A) Vocabulary Practice

	23
Priesse bie ausgemen werels:	5
play - keep - make	
, a phone call	
a sport or game	
something from recycled plastic	
b community in a sandwich	
· ·	
Complete the sentences with the following words:	5
shell - poisonous - ocean - tails - flat	
The shark is one of the most dangerous sea animals in the	act popy of the process and the process of the second of t
A stingray is a big fish.	
A sea turtle has a hard	it.
Some sea life, like the jellyfish, is ammunicated and a sea sea sea sea sea sea sea sea sea s	
* Wholes hit with their big	
Quess what it is:	
	6
It can sting you.	(
# It has eight legs.	(
It has a hard shell to protect it.	
* It is poisonous.	(**************************************
It is the biggest and heaviest sea animal.	(10000000000000000000000000000000000000
it has bly teeth, it is a dangerous sea animal.	()

(10)

Match the words with their meanings: В a) get rid of what you do not need 1. environment 2. rubbish b) where we live c) a verb which means use again 3. throw away d) things we do not need, like old paper 4. recycle e) the top part of the Earth, where we stand 5. soil f) what plants grow in 6. cover 7. hole g) an empty space in something h) put something over something else to protect or hide it 8. seed i) a small, hard thing made by plants, which grows into new plants 9. ground Answers: 1. () 2.() 3.() 4.() 5.() 6.() 7.() 8.() 9.() Language Practice 25 True or false: You must wash your hands before lunch. You mustn't listen to your parents. You must break the windows at school. You must brush your teeth every day. You mustn't eat fruit and vegetables every day. Fill in the blanks with must or mustn't: 1 You _____ clean up your room. You _____ do your homework. Youplay with fire. 1 You be home on time. You turn the music too loud. 7 You help in the house. You annoy your little sister. You bite nails. You _____ brush your teeth three times a day.

Supply the suitable forms of the verbs in brackets:	107
plants cannot grow.	11
	/ell,
If Andy (d0) to Ded late, its	e up early,
I feel good if you	
6 What are a second of the sec	
7 Sandy always	er is good.
When I have a test, I always (revise) well.	
9 If I (be) very tired, I always sleep early.	
My mum always (become) angry when	I am late.
7 Triditi Girray S noncommunication and the second	1
(C) Speaking Practice	10
Supply the missing parts in the following mini-dialogues:	6
A: What on roads?	
B: We mustn't play games on roads.	
2 A: What should to plant	a tree?
B: First, wash an empty plastic pot and dry it.	
3 A:press the person's nu	mber?
B: Yes, you should.	
Complete the following dialogue:	
	4
Pizza de alla constitución de la	
Mariam: First, find a sunny place in the garden. Lama: Like this?	
V-1.1.2 VIII.	
Mariam: Yes, that's right, look at the ground. It m have lots of stones or other plants in it.	iust not
Lama : OK. What should I do	7
Mariam: About 2 cm. Next, put some water in the hole so it is not too	dry.
MATOR IT MONEY	
Mariam: Yes, you should. Finally, put the seed in the hole and cover it v	with soil.
(18)	



My future



	A Vocabulary Practice	25
0	Find its correct verb:	
	earn - get - travel - pass - make	10
	1 married	
	*	
	around the world	
	, appearance to the state of th	
	(E) ,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	
2	Complete the sentences with the following words:	5
	workshops - skills - pottery - culture - colourful	
	People started making thousands of years ago i	n Eavot.
	2 Some people make pottery in or their own hom	
	You can see the jewellery in markets all over the	
	!t is an important part of Africa's to make basket	
	Many people in Africa work in modern offices, but traditional job	
	are still important.	
9	Complete the sentences with the correct jobs:	10
	A is a person who helps sick people.	
	Anis a person who designs machines or eng	gines.
	3 Anis a person who works with numbers.	
	Ais a woman who works in an office and goes t	o meetings.
	🏂 Ais a person who looks after people's teeth.	
	6 A is a person who writes books.	
	7 Ais a person who flies a plane.	
	Ais a person who takes photos.	

Anis a person who designs buildings.

Als a person who studies science.

B Language Practice

Reorder the words to make sentences with a relative pronot	
a - teacher - who - students - A - is - person - teaches.	•
	1491
scientist - is - a - who - science - A - studies - person.	
person - a - pilot - flies - A - is - who - a - plane.	\$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$
who - A - person - a - photographer - photographs - is - takes.	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,
2 Complete the sentences with the correct question tags:	. 10
Mr Said is from Qalubia,?	
The car isn't in the garage,?	
You are John,?	2
She went to the library yesterday,	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
Fig. He didn't know me,?	3
© Cars pollute the environment,	(7
Mr Waleed has been to Scotland recently,	######################################
The trip is very expensive,?	
He won't tell her the truth,?	
Huda had a red car,?	
3 Find the mistake and correct it:	6
She is collecting stickers, hasn't she?	(1002 comes presental satisfaction)
We often watch TV in the afternoon, don't you?	
You have cleaned your bike, have you?	(additional new right being and
• John and Tom don't like maths, do he?	(HET THE TAKE OF THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TO THE PERSON NAMED I
Peter playing handball yesterday, didn't he?	(00100 401 mary and 4141 414141
They aren't going home from school, aren't they?	(*PROMIDELÉMENTE L'ENTRA PROPERTE C
20)	



Supply the missing parts in the following mini-dialogues:
(A: DESCRIPTION OF THE PROPERTY OF THE PROPER
B: An architect is a person who designs buildings.
A: What solvenometring to the solvenometric control of the solvenometric c
8: A marine biologist is a person who studies the ocean and the plants and animals in it.
& A:
B: My research helps to protect the plants and animals in the ocean. That's the best thing.
A: You visit some interesting places,
B: I really want to be an architect.
A:
B: In ten years' time, I want to have a good job.
** A: Where will you go if you take a holiday this year?
D.





Halli.



Prep Second Term

Final Revision





) Final Revision

- vocabularyVocabulary Exercises
- LanguageLanguageExercises

فراجعة عامة على أهم المفردات والقواعد مصدوية بتدريبات مجابة على كل جرئية



HALEH RENGIN



Unit 7

Key Vocabu	lary		ومروات البرنيس	
adventure story	قصة مغامرة /	hope (d)	يأمل	sailor
aquarium معرض الأحياء الماثية		move (d) to	ىنتقل إلى	school canteen
band	فرقة موسيقية	museum	متحف	مفصف اكانتين) المدرسة sports centre
bowling alley	صالة البولينج	musical instru	ıment	0 977
dolphin	الدولفين	musician	آلة موسيقية	storm قاصفة
exhibition	معرمان	nervous	موسيقار/عازف	swimming pool حمام سباحة
football stadio	football stadium		عصبی/متوتر	trumpet بوق
funfair	ستاد كرة الفدم	planetarium a	مبني القبة السماوي	weekend عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
Tulliali	الملاهى	prefer (red)	يفضل	عجلة سيارة/ ملاه ِ wheel
bad	mport	ant adjectives	مة	مفات ها
fantastic	سيئ ۔		عظيم	لا بنس به
	رائع Types ،		شيق	terrible مظیع ارهیب اسیی جدا
classical	he d	of music	اسیقی ٔ	أثواع المو
jazz	کلاسیکی	-	الأوبرا	موسيقى الروك rock
-	موسيقي الجاز	pop	موسيقى البوب	traditional تقلیدی

Preposi	tions & Lang	uage Express	ions فيعالله والأفاقة	المرابعة الم
look for		يبحث عن	decide to + inf.	يقرر أن
frightened of نائم من		help with	یمرز ان پساعد فی	
ride on the big wheel الملاهي		يركب عجلة الملاهي	share with	يشارك مع
plan to +	plan to + inf.		meet ▶ my best frien	
have ▶a	maths lesson	لديه حصة رياضيات	go bowling	يذهب للعب البولينج
do 🕨	activities	يؤدى أنشطة	play in a band	يعزف في فرقة
	homework	يؤدى الواجب المدرسي	What type of?	ما نوع؟



Unite

Key Vocabulary	نشرة القرائيس نيال	
	design (cd) pany	square metre
	entrance time	statue
amazing معشن	famous مشهور	الله sunny
bridge جسر/حوبين	glass floor ارصية من الزحاج	suspension
موقف السيارات car park	guide book دليل الارشاد	tower
century (ماعلم) قرن	historical objects	<i>₽</i>
city centre مسطد المدينة	instorical objects أشياء تاريخية	treasure
column assec	on display معروض/في العرص	TV show عرص تلمربوني
منافسة/مسابقة competition	مؤدب polite	valuable نىم بوتېمة
بلدائولة country/countries	protect (ed) يحمى	welcome (d)
cross (ed) يعبر/يمر على	space مساحة/فراغ/فصاء	writer 🚉
	Question words with "How"	
ما عرض/اتساع؟ [How wide?	How deep?	How old?
ما طول/كم المدة ؟ ? How long	ما ارتفاع؟ ٢ How high?	How many? 5
Adjecti	/es	الصفات
مزيحم crowded	alپ high	near
easy سهل	منخفض low	noisy الضوضاء
empty فارغ	مدیث/عصری modern	quiet quiet
far sue,	narrow ضيق	wide
Propositions 9.1 and		
Prepositions & Lang	uage Expressions as	السبرا
a view of	examples of Jathe	reason for
at sunset في وقت الغروب	far from بعید من	refer to الشيرالي
یقارن بـ	(be) able to + inf.يكون قادرًا أن	similar to
crowded with مزىحم بـ	popular with محبوب لدى	space for
easy for سهل لـ	proud of قخور بـ	the capital of
have > a holiday	get ▶ يقضى إجازة	busier

Unit 9

Key Voçabula	гу	البلة	غزدات الرثب	II.a	
adventure sport &	oler hunt	guide	مرسداداتان	railway line	جحفا سادة الاسارة
British	بريطاني	important	paninia	skill	مهارة
challenge	أتحدي	newspaper	درىدة	tent	معب
complete (d)	بكمل	online	عبر الإنترنت	towel	عوطة
date (ٍ تاريخ (اليو	photo album	أليوم صور		
equipment	معدات	postcard	بطاقة بريدية	transport	المواصلات
Water sport	المائية \$	الرياضات	Mountai	الجبلية n sports	السافات
diving وص	ً الغطس/الغ	windsurfing	ركوب الامواج		
kayaking	التجييف	mountain bik في الجبل	ing ركوب الدراجات		الارتمال التجوال
sailing	الإبحار	mountain clir	nbing تسلق الجبال	zip lining	الانزلاق بالصل
have separately and the second	Weathe	r words	طقس	كلمات ال	
Noun الاسم	Adject	الصفة evi	Noun	مسا Adjective	
ينطبة cloud	cloud	ر غائم	storm	stormy	
nain مطر	rainy	ممطر	sun	Sunny شمس	<u>-i-osc</u>
Show ett	snow	ثاجي /	wind	341111	مشعس کثیر الریاح عاصه
Prepositions	& Land	Wane Evnre	cionella	والتعبيرات اللغور	
a form of		نوع اشكل من			izupis iluci
by the beach			go trekkin	g across	پٹرحل عبر ـــــــ
dry with		بجوار الشاطئ	get to		يضل إلي
different to/from	~	ر يجفف بـــ	on time	4	في الوقت المحد
forlunch	П	مختلف عن	stay with		يبقى ليقيم هغ
look+adj.			would like		يود ان
take > a cha	llongs	ينو	have >	~	يحصل على دليل
	ming	يأخذ تحدينا ينهب للسبادة	keep >	warm	يبقى داعقا
sailin	g down	the Nile		a photo album	يقد ألبهم صور
go trekk		يدهب للإبحار غي النبا e mountains يرتحل في الجبال	make •	a mistake	يرتكب خطأ

Unit 10

Kéy Vocal	bulary	and the same of th	. grange		
a driverless		electricity	الكمرباء	statue	لأنمز
diagram	۔۔۔۔ رسم توضیحی	lamp	لمية المصاح	tap	صنورا صمية
bricks	طوب	oven	مرن	teaspoon	رداش مقعم
curtains	ستائر	robot	إئسان آلي	technology	نكولوحيا
cushions	وسائد	roof	السطح (سطح المبني)	traditional	رعبلق
drone	ـــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــ	sofa	كنبة	village	مَرية
		solar panel	أبواح الطاقة الشمسية 3	wallet	محفظة نقود
earthquake	سيارة كهربائية	space	مساحة/ فراغ/ فضاء	wind turbines	وريبات الرياح
electric car	Shapes	The state of the s	A STATE OF THE STA	الأشكال	
rectangular		round	مستدير الشكل	square	مربع
	Materia	ls The second	عام تسميد المستودي	المواد الذ	
cotton	قطن	metal	معدن	stone	دجر
glass	زجاج	paper	ورق	wood	فشب
leather	جلد	plastic	بلاستيك	wool	سوئ
(Cather					

Prepositions & Lan	iguage Expre:	ssions 👢	عاوق النجر <mark>فالتحجيرات الثلثو</mark> ر
for holiday	من أجل الإجازة	live in	يعيش غي
important for	هام ا	on holiday	
be born in	يولد في	sleep > c	on the roof ينام على السطح
design buildings	يصمم مباثى	paint ► I	rouses ينوم بدهان العنازل
get electricity	يحصل على الكهرباء	use 🕨	BD printers بسنظم طابعال ثلاثية الابعاد

Unit FF

Key Vocabulary		-	مغرواه بالرث		
air	, هواء	healthy	صدی	rubbish	تحامة
brave	وعث إ	land	اليابسة	save (d)	عثي
danger	لحطر	nature reserve	محملة فلببعية	sea life	لبحة العبرية
environment	البيلة	ocean	محيط	seed	ىدرة
fisherman 4	صیاد سا	planet	كوكب	skeleton	میکل عظمی
fishing line 44	صنارة ص	poisonous	واسا	soil	ترــة
frighten (ed)	خين	protect (ed)	يحمى	sting	ا يلدغ
gloves	قفازات	recycle (d)	يعيد تصنيع	throw away	یرمی بعیدا
ارنس headphones	تبادا وسر	respect (ed)	يحترم	worried	ير ي ـ ـ ـ <u>تا</u> ق
	Sea ani	imals	البحرية	الحيوانات	
coral reef مرجانية	الشعب الم	shark	سمكة القرش	whale	***
jellyfish _y	قنديل اليد	stingray	لسمكة اللامفة		-4-
осториѕ	خطبوط	turtle	سلحقاة بحرية		

die from do ▶activity	يموت بسبب	pull to/or یؤدی نشاط		test	يصطلا سمكنا لديه لفتنار يعيد تصنيع البلا
dangerous for	حطير على	protect from	يحمى من	be ▶ in danger	
cover with	يغطى بــ	most of	معظم	use for	ستخدم ك
bad for	ضار ب	in danger	فی خطر	throw into	يلقى في
angry with	غاضب من	hit with	يضرب بـ	take off	يظع (ملابس)
agree with	يتفق مع	find out	يكتشف	swim away	يسبح بعيدا
a piece of	قطعة من	fill with	يملا ب	share with	بشارك

Unit 11

Key Votal	bulary		بردات الرئيسية		
a marine bio		earn (ed)	ונול אוצ	record (et.,	4
adult	بالغ	education	\(\rho_{\text{t}}\\ \phi_1 \\ \phi_1 \\ \phi_2 \\ \phi	research	- e - e - e - e - e - e - e - e - e - e
app	 تطبیق/برنامج	engine	مرتورا محرك	results	⊅ _{16 16} ≰
businesses	أعمال بجارية	illnesses	أمراص	the countryside	-tayl
	 ملوں/زاهی الألوان	jewellery	محو هرات —	skills	معارات
computer pr		laboratory	معمل	social media الل الاحتماعي	بسائل التواد
culture	ثقافة	local	مجلي	changes	تىرات تەرات
cure	علاج	machine	الة	injury	مانة
disappear (e		pottery	الفخار	volunteer (ed)	بنطوع
dream		prediction	تنبؤ	workshop	ورشة
O, Com	Jobs			الوظائف	
accountant	محاسب	computer p	rogrammer مبرمج کمبیوتر	pilot	طيار
architect	ممنىس معمارى	dentist	طبيب أسنان	scientist	عانم
businessman	رجل أعمال	engineer	ممتنس مدني	teacher	ملعه
businesswom			مصور فوتوغراغي	writer	كاتب

Prepo	siti	ons & Lang	uage Expre	ssions	ويت	النبير إلى إلات	موف الجي وا
advice f	or		نصيحة ال	good at			جيد في
design	•	an app / a vi	deo game يصمم تطبيقنا إلكت	make	>	our lives ea	يحفل حياتنا اسمل
design	a building	يصمم مبنى			pottery	يصع الفذار	
do	•	a job	يؤدى وظيفة	pass		an exam	يجتار اختطرا
earn	•	money	یکسب مالا	program	>	computers	ببرسج الكمبيوتر
find	•	cures for	يجد علاجات ــ	study	•	science	ينرس العلوم
get	•	married	يتزوج	teach	•	students	يعلم الطلاب
look afte	r▶	sick people	يعنني بالمرضي	score	>	a goal	يستل ابدرز هدف

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

and we rode	
The Sell topped Selection of the Selecti	6,000
A second	and the second
lay, it was	discussion-
OSS Over a river	ditenfole
-14	
vould liberte	d) tunnel
al	
Sport Sport	d) zip lining
c)cave	की और
_1 _ 5	
C)COIOURS	d) materia's
s will dows to keep light out.	
c) curtains	d) sheets
most dangerous sea animals	
c) jellyfish	d)turtle
c) octopus	d) coral reef
	as to still a
·	d) builds
	n. d) up
	ajup
of dogs.	d) good
c) frightened	
lt takes long to go to	d) high
usually sleep in a	d) flat
	THE WASHINGTON TO STATE OF THE PARTY OF THE

PART 1

16 To save water,	we should repair old		
- Long London	Is\ tanes	C) (cilys	d) tips
1 ar	e things which the fis	hermen use.	
	4. 1. 20 L. Com 224 L. L. L. C.		d) Sea birds
A marine	is a person w	ho studies the ocean	and the plants as
animals in it.			
Logiantict	b) dentist	c) biologist	d) research
We should	our parents	and teachers.	
to All control	h) sink	el tenhan	d) hate
There is a lot of	in the ea	arly morning. People	can't see well,
n) for	b) wind	c) rain	d) storm
The the future De	onle will all use	cars.	
-1 oloctrical	b) electronic	C) electricity	d) electric
a) electrical	is an area of land in w	hich animals and pla	nts are protected.
m) maturo rocari	(a b) rubbish bin	c) ground	d) soil
a) nature reserv	my exams s	so that I can go to un	iversity.
a) succeed		c) fail	d) get
	usical		
-) confirment	b) machine	c) instrument	d) tool
The Equipment	useum is full of a lot o	of object	ts.
	b) adventurous		d) historica
		Atlantic) is bigger tha	
_		c) river	d) lake
a) ocean	b) sea	•	•
		ound in	
a) ship	b) shape	c) shop	d) sheep
	is someon'e who ca	itches fish as a job.	
a) soldier	b) officer	c) journalist	d) fisherman
Technology will.	our lives	easier and more int	eresting.
a) have	b) take	c) make	d) leave
She uses a/an	after the a	ccident. She can't w	alk.
a) armchair	b) bike		d) wheelchar
	and analogs	c) sofa	u/ W



A Past simple tense

أجاب للمارت في المجسود



التصريف الثاني للفعل + Subject

- Mona watcheda nice film last night.
- •They had a fantastic weekend in the aquarium.

Key words الكلمات الدالة

Past simple Expressions

yesterday - اماضى - last - الماضى - in the past - في الماضى - in the past - منذ ago - أمس (in 2010)

2. Questions

1. Yes/No questions:

Helping/Auxiliary verb + subject + complement?

Were you at the zoo yesterday? -Yes, I was.

2. Wh-questions:

Q. word + helping verb + subject + complement?

• When did you go to school?

Unit 8

Adjectives	arative and superlative of	مراحوالاها حامصا مالعه
	Comparative	Superlative
Short adjectives	er + than + er + than - The Nile River is longer than the Amazon.	the + الصفة لقصيرة + est - Ali is the tallest boy in our clas
Long adjectives	more/less + الصقة الطويلة + than	the most/the least + الصفة الطويلة
	- The lion is more dangerous than the dog.	- This is the least popular book in the library.

PART (1)

Unit

"going to" for future plans

اسم مفرد (is not (isn't)

He, She, It, اسم مفرد is not (isn't)

You, We, They, اسم جمع are not (aren't)

- I am going to visit my grandfather on Friday.
- My sister is not going to **go** kayaking.
- Are your brothers going to try diving? Yes, they are. No, they aren't.
- When is he going to try trekking?
- He's going to try trekking this weekend.

Reflexive pronouns

الضمائر المتعكبية

+ going to + inf.

نستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة عندما يكون فاعل الجملة ومفعولها متماثلين:

	نستخدم الضفائز الفلغفسه عليها يحول عس				
الفاعل		We	You	You	
القمير المنعكس	myself	ourselves	yourself	yourselves	
	<u>بئۇسى/نۇسى</u>	بانفسنا/أنفسنا	Luni/ sturing	بأتفسكم/اتفسكم	
الفاعل	He	She	It	They	
الضمير المنعكس	himself	herself	itself	themselves	
	مسفنامسفنې	المسفا/امسفنر	بنفسه/نفسه (مقرد غیر عاقل)	بنفسهم/أنفسهم	

- I did my homework (by) myself.
- Ali and I hurt ourselves with a knife.
- You all should do your homework (by) yourselves.

I is/are made of

Subject + is/ are + made of (material)

- The sofa is made of leather.
- . The cushions are made of cotton.

السؤال Question

What + is/are + subject + made of?

- What is the sofa made of?
- What are the cushions made of?

2. There was/ There were

- نستختم (there was/ were) بمعنى (كان هناك) للتعبير عن وجود شيء/أشياء في الملضي.

- There was a kitchen in his house.
- There wasn't any juice in the fridge.
- There were boats in ancient Egypt.
- There weren't any bedrooms at their houses.

3. Making predictions about the future

Subject + will/won't + (inf.) +

- There will be electric cars in the future.
- There won't be robot teachers in the future.

Unit 11

1. The Zero Conditional الحالة الجمل السرطية

If/When ---> present simple ---> present simple

- •If/When we heat water, it evaporates.
- تستخيم مع الحقائق الثابتة والعلاات.

• I feel tired when/if it's late.

Situation isomition " new Bland Sinks

Obligation: الإلزاق

> mustn't + inf, الجيالا must + inf, يجب أن

- Wemustn't throw rubbish into the ocean. -Wemust save our planet.

النصيحة Advice:

> shouldn't + inf. عبيالا يجب أن should + inf.

- We shouldn't use plastic bags just once, - Weshould recycle more materials.

Unit 12

1. Relative Pronoun "who" عبديا الوصل (Who)

نستطيع ربط جملتين (العاقل) باستخدام ضمير الوصل (who).

- A businesswoman is a person. She works in an office.
- A businesswoman is a person who works in an office.

2. Question Tags

(Approximation of the contraction of the contractio

 السؤال المنيل هو سؤال يأتى في نهاية الجملة الخبرية ويأتى قبله (,) و غرضه التأكيد بمعنى (أليس كذلك؟). ■يكون السؤال المذيل عكس حالة الجملة (مثبتًا إذا كانت الجملة منفية ومنفيًا إذا كانت الجملة مثبتة).

- -You like meat, don't you?
- -She doesn't play chess well, does she?
- -He studied his lessons well, didn't he?

3. The First Conditional الحالة الشرطية الأولى

نستندم الحالة الشرطية الأولى للحديث عن نتيجة محتملة عن حدث.

present simple if/When subject + will + inf. مضارع بسيط

present simple Subject + will + inf. if/when مضارع بسيط

Examples:

- If/When Igo to university, I'll study maths.
- I'll study maths if/when Igo to university.

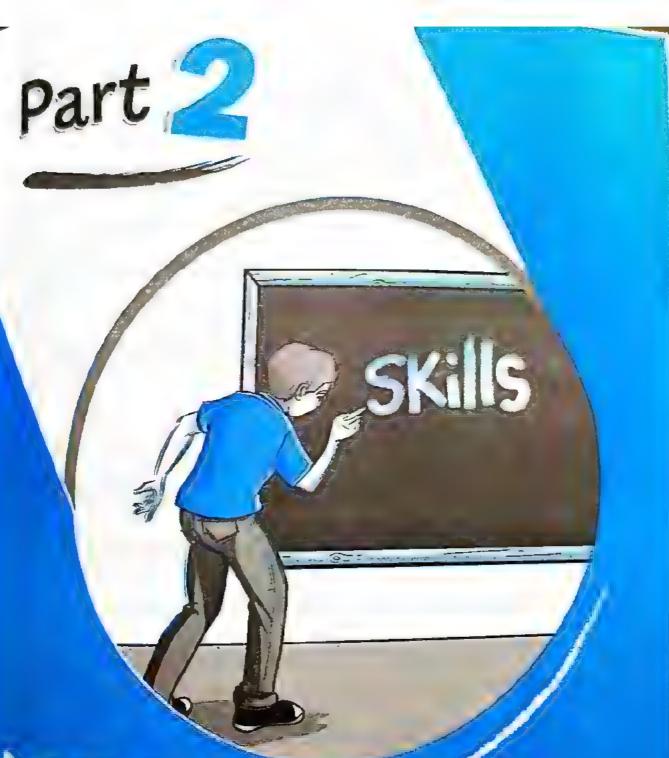
Language Exercises

		man la samet	
(1) Choose the	correct answer fro	m a, b, c or a;	
Ollistened t	o music three days	121477499044440044449999999999999999999999	
1 400	W/ last	s) next	d) yesterday
	. Mona like pop mu	isic?	•
	₽ 7 ⊓a5	r\ 15062	d) Do
A Ho	to play the piar	no when he was you	ung.
	Di leams	c/ (Curry	d) learned
a This Techirt i	s small, I want a	one.	
_		-1 0133-1	han d) as big
a) biggest	imbing is	sport of all.	
6 Mountaire	aprous	b) the mos	t dangerous
a) more dan		d) most da	ngerous
c) dangerous	crow/aeu uja	n Aswan.	
G Cairo is	b) the most	c) the least	d) more
a) the	way room Whe	nto cle	ean it?
You didn't cle	an your room. Whe	ng c) will you	d) did you
- 1 are 16011	D) are you go.		
1 Imad, make	a cup of t	c) herself	d) itself
a) yourself	b) himself ghada was exciting	Everyone enjoye	d there.
The trip to Hur	ghada was exclure	c) yourselves	d) themselves
a) himself	D/ Hersen		
My shirt	cotton.	c) made of	d) is made of
a) made	b) is made		
There	any cars in ancie	c) weren't	d) were
	 	-,	
Olf sleep late, I al	ways ti	b) will become	9
a) Decome			
c) am going to b	ecome the mountains whe	a) pecanic	ad. It's dangerous.
WYouwalk in	the mountains whe	in the weather is a	d) have to
" ITIUSI	In a market to the		
Your father's got a	green car,	7	
isn't he		b) hasn't he	ther
Bwe tyour father	•	d) hasn't your fa	
	t if it doesn't rain to	morrow.	d) going
a) to go	b) went	c) will go	(15)
	-		(3)

PART

Read and correct	t the underlined words:
------------------	-------------------------

Read and correct the undermited	(do)
A: Do you play tennis? B: Yes, Idid.	(who)
This is my friend when won the competition.	(went)
Hegoes to Alexandria with his family last Wednesday	(meet)
Al didn't met my best friend yesterday.	inger than)
The Nile River is longer the Amazon.	
The older museum in Cairo opened in 1835.	(oldest)
One of themore beautiful parts of the museum is the entrance	most)
Basmala is beautiful than Malak. (more	e beautiur)
Tamer drew a picture yourself.	(himself)
The bird hurthimself and flew away.	(tself)
We're goingvisit Alexandria Library tomorrow.	(to visit)
Pyou are going to go diving in the Red Sea?	(Are you)
13 My watch is made from plastic and metal.	(of)
Therearen't any pupils at school last week.	(weren't)
13 I think wewould use electric cars in the future.	(will)
16 There wasn't some tree here last year.	(a)
If it will rain, we get water.	(rains)
1 feel tiredwhile it's late.	(when)
1 Youmust play in the middle of the road. It's too dangerous.	(mustn't)
Mr. Waleed is the teacherwhich teaches us English.	(who)
2 Youmust throw rubbish on the ground.	(mustn't)
@ Idon't pass my exams if I don't work hard.	(won't)
② I'mgo to learn a new language next year.	(going)
There wasn't a school twenty years ago, wasit?	(here)
Youhave a brother, do you?	(don't have)
He came to school latealthough he didn't catch the bus.	(because)
He came to school ute attrough the distribution of the came to school ute attrough the distribution of the came to school ute attrough the distribution of the came to school ute attrough the distribution of the came to school ute attrough the distribution of the came to school ute attrough the distribution of the came to school ute attrough the distribution of the came to school ute attrough the distribution of the came to school ute attrough the distribution of the came to school ute attrough the distribution of the came to school ute attrough the distribution of the came to school ute attrough the came to school ute attrough the distribution of the came to school ute at the came	(although)
Wore my coatbecause to wash a cold.	



) Skills Revision

- Speaking Skills
 Speaking Skills Exercises
- Writing Skills

الزاجعة علمة على أهم معارات التحدث والكتارة، مصحوبة بتدريبات منابة عار



Skills Revision



(III) Speaking Skills)

Unit 7

1. Ask and answer questions about past events Situation ما يقال في هددًا الموقف

Response

جملة الرد

-When did you have breakfast?

متى تناولت الإفطار؟

* I had my breakfast this morning. - تناولته هذا الصباح. - تناولته هذا الصباح.





- Where did you go last weekend? اين نمبت العطلة المضية؟

* I went to the museum.

🕜 📞 - ذهبت إلى المتحف،



2. Ask and answer about favourite music

ما يقال في هذا الموقف Situation

Response

جملة الرد



- What type of music do you like?

ما نوع الموسيقي التي تحبها؟

* I like jazz best.

* I like the sound of pop.

- الجاز هي أفضل موسيقي أحبها.





3. Responding to past events

Situation ما يقال فى هذا الموقف الرد على أحداث في الماضي

Response جمئة الرد



- How was your weekend?

كيف كانت عطلتك الأسبوعية؟

* It was great/fantastic! 😅 😅 😅

- كانت عظيمة/ رائعة.

* It was (really/very) interesting. 🙂 😃

- كان شيقًا جِدُّا،

* It was terrible! 🍣 🛎 🏩

٧ - كانت فظيعة

Deple 17

1. Ask and answer about measurements

Situation

ما يقال في هذا الموقف

Response

جملةالرد



- How long is the Cairo-Alexandria desert road? ما طول طريق القاهرة الإسكندرية الصحراوي؟

* It is 220 kilometres long.

ر - إنه ۲۲۰ كيلو مترا۔



- How wide is the Tahya Masr Bridge?

ما عرض کوہری تحیا مصر؟

* It's about 67.36 metres wide.

- حوالي ٦٧,٣٦ متر.



- How deep is Lake Baikal?

ما عمق بحيرة بالكال؟

* It is 1, 642 metres deep.

💽 🎤 - إنها ١٦٤٢ مترا.



- How old is Luxor Temple?

ما عمر معبد الأقصر؟

* الله أقل من ٢٥٠٠ عام بقليل. . It's just under 3,500 years old. *



ما عدد الناس التي تعيش في القاهرة؟ How many people live in Cairo? -

* More than 20 million people live in Cairo.

ِ - أكثر من ٢٠ مليون شخص،



2. How to ask and answer questions to make comparisons

كيفية السؤال والإجابة لعمل مقارنات

Situation

ما يقال في هذا الموقف

Response

جملةالرد



- Which pyramid is taller, the Great Pyramid of Giza or the Red Pyramid? اى هرم هو الأطول، الهرم الأكبر بالجيزة أم الهرم الأحمر؟

* I think the Great Pyramid of Giza is taller.

🦽 - أعتقد أن الهرم الأكبر بالجيزة أطول.



 Which building is taller, the Shanghai Tower in China or the Al Hamra Tower in Kuwait?

- أي مبنى هو الأطول، برج شنغهاي بالصين أم برج الحمراء بالكويت؟

ا think the Shanghai Tower in China is taller. ر - اُعتقد ان برج شنغمای بالصین اُطول،



3. Asking about opinion

Situation

ما يقال في هذا الموقف

Response

جملة اثر د



Which subject do you think is more difficult, English or Arabic? أى مادة هي أصعب في رأيك، اللغة العربية أم اللغة الإنجليزية؟

* In my opinion, English is the most difficult of all. - في رأيي اللغة الإنجليزية مي الأصعب على الإطلاق





What's your opinion of the Tahya Masr Bridge?

ما رأیك فی كوبری تحیا مصراً

* I think the Tahya Masr Bridge is the greatest project in Egypt. مصر هو اعظم مشروع في مصر. - اعتقد ان كوبري تحيا مصر هو اعظم مشروع في



Making and responding to suggestions عمل اقتراهات والرد عليها

5	ituation	ما يقال فى هذا الموقف	Response	جملة الرد
	0	- Let's go rock climbing.	هيا نذهب لتسلق الصخور،	/
	7	*That sounds a bit scary.	- يبدو هذا مخيفًا قليلًا.	
Charles of the	0	- I'd rather visit the park.	أفضل زيارة الحديةة.	S. the
P		*Good idea!	- فكرة جيدة!	4)
	6	- Shall we play tennis?	هل نخمب للعب التنس؟	
		* Great idea.	- فكرة عظيمة.	
A Property of the state of		How about playing football?	ملذا عن لعب كرة القدم؟	A STATE OF THE STA
		*I'm not sure.	- است متأكدًا،	Contraction and the second
STATE OF THE PARTY	-	Why don't we go for a walk?	لما لا نذهب للتعشية؛	
The state of the s		*OK. Why not?	ي حسناً ولم لاء	
		* Great idea. How about playing football? * I'm not sure. Why don't we go for a walk?	هل نخهب للعب التنس؟ - فكرة عظيمة. ملذا عن لعب كرة القدم؟ - لست متأكدًا.	



Saying what things are made of Situation ما يقال في هذا الموقف



- What is the wallet made of? مم تصنع المحفظة؟

* It is made of leather. * تصنع من الجلد.



- What are the socks made of? مم تصنع الجوارب؟

* They are made of wool، - تصنع من الصوف





- What is the tablet made of? هم يصنع التابلت؟ * It is made of glass and plastic.



🧼 - يصنع من الزجاج والبلاستيك.

Unit 11

1. Describing a sea animal الوصف Description



- It can swim fast. It's got eight legs. يمكنه السباحة بسرعة. لديه ثماني أرجل.

* An octopus! - الأخطبوط.





– If it knows a shark is coming, it jumps out of the water! لو علمت بقدوم سمكة قرش، تقفز خارج الماء.

A stingray! - السمكة اللابغة.





الله الله الديوانات البحرية في المحيط.

* A shark! - سمكة القرش.



Ty.

- It has a hard shell to protect it. لديما مدغة مالبة احمايتما،

* A turtle! - السلحناة البحرية.



2. What must/ mustn't you do in/ on ...? ما يجب وما لا يجب قعله في ...؟

We mustn't play games on roads. We must play games in the sports centres. We must be quiet in the classroom.

لا يجب أن ناسب على الطرق. يحب أن تلعب في المراكز الرياضية. يحب أن نهداً في المصل.

3. Asking and giving instructions طلب وإعطاء التعليمات

1. V	Vhat should I do to plant a	Response	جملة الرد
	فعل لزراعة شجرة؟	ر مادا يجب أن	
	* First,	manhermore verseres Xgi =	
	* Second,	7001 2001 000 000 LIG	3
	*Then,	4-12-07-02-1-07-1-07-1-07-1-07-1-07-1-07-	
	*Next,	- التالي: محمد معمد محمد	
	* Finally,	- ولفيرا	4)
2.5	hould I (water it now)?		
	ويها الآن؟	هل يجب أن أر	
(-)	should./ No, don't (give it i		7

Unit 12

Talking about your future plans

الحديث عن خططك في المستقبل

Next year, I'm going to learn a new language.

Before I leave school, I think I'll design a video game.

th ten years' time, I'll be married.



Speaking Skills Exercises

Complete the following dialogue:

0

Hanaa : Hello, how are you?

Dalia : I'm fine thanks. What about you?

Hanaa : I'm good. So what are you going to do this weekend?

Dalia: Well, on Saturday, I'm going to go to the park.

Hanaa : When are you going to come back from the park?

Dalia: We're going to come back at 7:00 p.m.

Hanaa : Are you going anywhere after dinner?

Dalia : No, I don't think I'm going anywhere after dinner.

Hanaa : I see. How about watching a film together?

Dalia : Well, you know I want some rest. I have much work.

0

Tamer : Hey, Sarah. How are you?

Sarah : Good. I heard you are from a big city.

Tamer : That's right. I was born there and I lived in the city for many years.

Sarah : Cool. What is the most interesting thing about your city?

Tamer : Well, it has many interesting things, but the most interesting thing

is probably the stadium.

Sarah : Well, that's really cool. So you like sports so much.

Tamer : Of course. Football is my favourite sport.

Sarah : What is the most beautiful place in your city?

Tamer : In my opinion, it's the park. That area has the best views of the city.

Sarah : Wow. It sounds like the place I would like to see.

5mmar :So we're talking about holidays. Are there any good holidays that you remember?

Hadeer: Well, one of my favourite holidays was when I went to Greece two years ago.

Samar : Wow, Greece. How is it?

Hadeer: Greece is a very beautiful country. The houses and the beaches are so beautiful.

Samar : So what did you do in Greece?

Hadeer: I relaxed at the swimming pool and the beaches. At night, I went shopping.

Samar : Oh, that sounds interesting. Who did you go with?

Hadeer: I went with my mum, dad and brother.

Samar : And how long did you stay there?

Hadeer: We stayed for three weeks.

Nessim: So Karam, tell me about your favourite music!

Karam : I think my favourite music is jazz.

Nessim: Why do you like jazz music?

Karam : Hove it because it makes me happy.

Nessim: So your parents listen to it.

Yes, we all like jazz music. What aboutyou?

Nessim: I like traditional music.

Karam : What musical instrument do you like?

Nessim : like the drums so much. And you?

ldon't feel the same as you about that. I like the guitar.







1. How to write about "Your last weekend"

My last weekend

Last weekend, I went to the funfair. I went with my family. We went there by car. My father bought us the tickets. There were a lot of interesting games. I rode on the big wheel. I felt afraid but it was fun. My brother went on a ride. He was really happy. My little sister swam in a small plastic swimming pool. My father and mother went for a walk. We all had a wonderful time. We decided to go there again very soon. We went back home late at night. It was fun.

2. How to write about "A terrible/ fantastic day"

A terrible day

Yesterday was Sunday. I had a terrible day. I got up at seven thirty in the morning. I got dressed and packed my school bag. I missed the school bus because I was late. I took a taxi to school. I arrived at school very late. My teacher was very angry with me. He asked me for my homework but I forgot my notebook. I felt really sad. I went back home at three o'clock. My little brother was hot. We took him to hospital and finally he got better. I was worried about him. When we went back home, it was night and I couldn't do my homework. What a terrible day I had!



Units

1. How to write about "An important building"

The Cairo Tower

Egypt has many amazing places. You can visit these places in Cairo like the Cairo Tower and the Egyptian Museum. The Cairo Tower is one of the most famous buildings in Egypt. It took five years to build. It opened in 1961. It is 187 metres tall and stands next to the Nile. There is a restaurant at the top. It moves, so you can see all of the city below you. There are 24 windows on each floor of the building. If you want to walk to the top, there are 2,500 stairs! At night, the colours on the tower change. It is a wonderful building!

2. How to write about "The Tahya Masr Bridge"

The Tahya Masr Bridge

Egypt is a great country. It has lots of great achievements. We should be proud of that. One of the newest and greatest achievements is the Tahya Masr Bridge. It's the world's widest suspension bridge. It's a great project. More than 4,000 people helped to build it. They started building it in 2014. It opened in Cairo in May 2019. It is 67.36 metres wide. It's 540 metres long. It crosses the Nile's Warraq Island. Many people enjoy walking across the glass floor of the bridge. I think the Tahya Masr Bridge is the greatest project in Egypt.

3. How to write about "Historical places in Egypt"

Historical places in Egypt

Egypt has a lot of historical places which tourists like to visit. These places are in many cities like Cairo, Giza, Aswan and Luxor. The Egyptian Museum has a lot of historical objects. They are the most valuable treasures. The Grand Egyptian Museum welcomed its first visitors in 2019. One of the most beautiful parts of the museum is the entrance, with its big plants and statues. There are other places like the Valley of the Kings In Luxor, the Karnak Temple and Habu Temple.





1. How to write about "Your plan for tomorrow"

My plan for tomorrow

We should all plan for our future. I also planned for tomorrow. Tomorrow will be a busy day with lots of things to do. Firstly, I'm going to get up at six as usual, then I'm going to have my breakfast before I go to school. I'm going to meet my friends before lessons start. I go home at one o'clock. My father is going to take us to Sinai. I'm going to go diving there. My sister would like to try kayaking. My brother is going to go rock climbing. I hope it will be a wonderful trip.

2. How to write about "An adventure sport"

My adventure sport

I like adventure sports. There are lots of adventure sports like rock climbing, windsurfing and zip lining. I like mountain biking. I liked it many years ago when my father bought me my first bike. Today, I am going to go mountain biking. So I get dressed and phone my best friend. He is the person who I go mountain biking with. We go to a forest with mountains. After my friend arrives at my house, we make sure that all of the equipment is safe on the bike. With water bottles filled and bikes ready to go, we are off. It makes us feel happy.





1. How to write about "Homes in ancient Egypt"

Homes in ancient Egypt

The ancient Egyptians lived thousands of years ago. They were clever and invented a lot of things. Their homes were really traditional. The walls of the homes were made of bricks. They were very strong. The doors were made of wood. There weren't any bedrooms. They slept on the roofs of their homes because the weather was very hot at night. They painted their homes in white and the doors in red. They were really great. There was a kitchen in each home. They used to make delicious food. They ate broad beans for breakfast.

2. How to write about "Your future predictions"

My future predictions

In the future, we will have very small computers in our clothes. We have the technology now. So I think it will also be in our clothes. At school, I think computers will be our teachers, but we should always have teachers. I think we won't live under the ground. I think we won't live on other planets, too, in the future, we will have small electric cars. They will be easy to drive in traffic. These cars won't use petrol. They will use electricity. They will be better for the environment. They will be very fast.





Unit III

1 How to write about "Keeping our environment clean"

Keeping our environment clean

It's important to live healthy life. The environment is the place where we all live. We must keep it clean and healthy. When plastic stays in the environment, there is a big problem. Some of the plastic is about 100 years old! Every year, many sea animals die from plastic. We must try to use other materials like paper and glass. We must use our shopping bags more than once. We mustn't throw them away. We mustn't stop trying using them. We must keep our planet clean. We must save it!

2. How to write about "Recycling"

Recycling

Materials have many different uses. Recycling materials is very important for us. We must find a new use for old plastic. There are many good ideas for recycling plastic. We can make pots to feed birds from old bottles. We can make kitchen containers. We can make plastic pencil cases, too. We mustn't throw it away. A lot of animals and birds die from poisonous plastic in the sea and on land. We mustn't stop trying old materials because this is very useful for us.

3. How to write about "A story you like"

A story I like

Reading is a very useful hobby. I like reading stories. My favourite story is Robinson Crusoe. It's by Daniel Defoe. It's about a sailor who lived on an island alone for many years because his ship sank into the seal. The main character is Robinson Crusoe who made a home for himself seal planted wheat and made his food. He made a boat and could catch a lot of fish to eat. He caught goats and made cheese from their milk. He could make his clothes. The story teaches us to depend on ourselves.



1. How to write about "Your dream job"

My dream job

My name's Kareem. I'm twelve years old. When I grow up, I'd like to be a teacher like my father. He works in a big school in Benha. A teacher is a person who teaches students. Although teaching is tiring, it's very interesting. It helps our country to be great. A teacher helps students to achieve their dreams and get the job they dream of. I like it because I want to help students to learn new things. It's an interesting job.

2. How to write about "Your future plans"

My future plans

My name's Tamer. I'm twelve years old. I'm a student at a preparatory school in Giza. I always think about my future and make plans for it. When I leave school, I'd like to join the university. When I go to university, I want to study medicine. I'd like to get a good job in the future. I'd like to have my own clinic and help the poor. When I get married, I'm going to have two children, a boy and a girl. I'll look after them very well. In five years' time, I think I'll learn to drive a car. I'm going to have a modern car. I hope I'll achieve my dreams.







2021

st Prep Second Term

Ongoing Assessment & Exams





) Ongoing Assessment

- D Lessons digration
- 2) Unitique
 - عمولج اعتبار المعير عامل عكل وحبث

- املاً عاص بكل مرسين

- حضار ني دركمة اشكرت الحكمة العلم يعملني الألها eyiis إنها الإساري (على المعالم الأله المعالم الأله المعالم الأله المعالم ا



Unit 7 Quiz

1 Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c	or d:	10
1 my be	est friend two hours	ago.	SB
a) had	b) played	c) met	d) went
2 Let's go on the bi	ig wheel at the	this weeker	nd! WR
a) valley	b) stadium	c) funfair	d) aquarium
O I loved the fish, b	out I didn't see any w	hales at the	WB WB
a) funfair	b) museum	c) aquarium	d) planetarium
It was great at th	ie	m won 2-0!	(WB)
 a) football stadit 	um b) bowling	c) planetariun	
We learnt a lot a	bout the Earth and th	ne moon at the	WB
a) valley	b) planetarium		
	y heavy at the		WB
	b) aquarium		
Mum likes playi	ng sports, but she do	es not like	sports.
a) going	b) listening	3	d) watching
	. you do last weekend	d?	(SB)
a) do	b) does	c) did	d) were
	ot a phone? B: Yes, I h		SB
a) I have		c) Have you	d) You have
	my team lo	st 5–2.	(WB)
a) although	b) because	c) so	d) but
2 Read and correct	the underlined wo	rds:	5
1 Do you listen to	o music yesterday?		(
②You can play a	musical instrument?		(SB)
What did youh	ad for breakfast this	morning?	COMMUNICACIONAL STRANGE SE
When are you	last go to the aquariu	ım?	(*************************************
5 Did what you s	see there?		(peakabbeecerplesere) SB
			(7)



Unit 8 Quiz

1 Choose the correct a	answer from a, b,	c or d;	
Assuit is not a very	big		10
a) city	b) tower	c) pyramid	d) bridge
We need to buy so	me more water Th	nis hottla is	o) bridge
a) empty	b) crowded	c) tali	
3 Be careful you don a) busy		the dear to	d) old
a) busy	b) high	c) low	
The teacher was an a) deep	IGTV because all the	c) IOW	d) long
a) deep	b) empty	students were very	
We can't swim acr	Oss the river have h	c) long	d) noisy
We can't swim acra) wide	b) low	Decause it is very	
The market is alw	avs very busy state:	c) narrow	d) crowded
6 The market is alw	->3 very busy at thi	s time. Don't go ne	ow or it will be very
a) crowded	b) low	el em (WB
What do youa) agree	about asi	c) empty	d) long
Mount Everest isa) than	higher	c) think	d) disagree
	7,01	-1.5	aro,
The Nile River is	the A	c) from	d) and
a) longer	b) longer than	nazon.	SB
Cairo is more	b) longer than	c) longest	d) long
a) bigger	h) noision	_	SB
Read and correct t	he underlined we	c) crowded	d) faster
Ahmed did not a	- washined Mo	ras:	5
Ahmed did not cMy sister didn't li	ome to school yes	terday <u>but</u> he was	ill. (
- • •	me the book, and t	IOVED it	(
My grandmothe	r is <u>oldest</u> person i	n my family.	(*************************************
Egypt is sunnier	and hot than Gern	nanv.	() SB
6 In my opinion, h	istory is most inter	esting subject.	(



Cumulative Test I (Based on Units 7 & 8)





1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



- How many people helped to build the Tahya Masr Bridge?
- يام في نهاية الكتاب

a) 40.

b) 400.

c)4.000.

- **d)** 40,000.
- How long did it take to finish it?
 - a) 32 months.

b) 23 months.

c) 13 months.

- d) 30 months.
- In which month did they open it in 2019?
 - a) in April.

b) In March

c) In May.

d) In June

- How long is it?
 - a)514m.

b) 450 m.

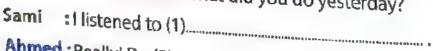
c) 540 m.

d) 504 m.

Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed: Hello, Ahmed. What did you do yesterday?



Ahmed : Really! Do (2)_____ music?

Sami : Yes, of course.

Ahmed: 1 (5)...... like jazz.

Sami : Jazz is not my favourite.

Ahmed: Who's your favourite musician?

: Marvin Allstar.



Reading Comprehension

Read the following, then answer the questions:



The Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM), also known as the Giza Museum, welcomed its first visitors in 2019. It is further from the city centre than the old museum, but only two kilometres from the Pyramids at Giza and 15 kilometres southwest of Cairo. In 2002, there was a competition to design a bigger and more modern museum. The competition had 1,557 designs from more than 80 different countries, making it the second largest competition in history. One of the most beautiful parts of the museum is the entrance, with its big plants and statues. The biggest statue is the 12-metre statue of Ramses II. It has more space for valuable objects, more people can see them and it is able to look after the objects really well.

A) Answer the foll	owing questions:		
What is the G	iiza Museum?		ån 1 747 122 1874 m 1 naggi 1 de 1 hödeski böt öðren þer
	sage, what do you like		
3 Where is the	GEM?		24 h de 1 mm = (4) y pri i iii defenê û di (4 6 7 10 4 2 4 1 4 4 1 4 4 1 4 4 1 4 4 1 4 4 1 4 4 1 4 4 1 4 4 1 4
B) Choose the cor	rect answer from a,	b. cord:	14 - 17 y pa 1 411 6464 6411 141 66 51 1 141 66 7 1411 66 649 9 66 9
The underline	ed pronoun "it " refers	to the	35-104 A
a) competitio	n b) new museum	c) old museum	d) entrance
The GEM is	kilometr	es from Cairo.	
a) fifty	b) five	c) fifteen	d) two
6 The old muse	eum is t	han the new muse	eum.
a) larger		c) more modern	
D	Vocabulary an		
	t answer from a, b,		
	he glass		Deidere
a) floor	b) ground	c) land	d) roof

My grandfather always gives meadvice. It is very useful.

c) terrible

b) valuable

a) helpless

d) ugly



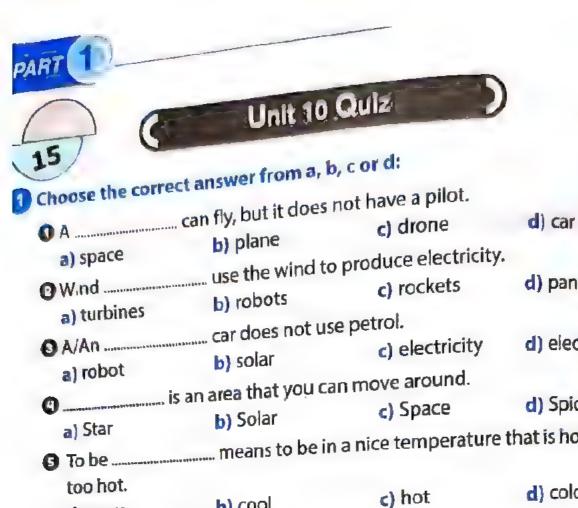
		It co.	sts a lot of money
	car because it's very . b) narrow	c) expensive	d) dangerous
a) cheap	D) Harron		
There is no war	ter in the bottle. It's	c) modern	d) big
a) far	b) empty	at the weekend.	
We always	b) empty what to do	al the stan	d) climb
a) travel	b) make	· ~ Alexandria?	
Mhich has a b	iggerCi	c) population	d) pollution
a) dictionary	b) instrument	c) population	alpointion
The children	b) instrument were very	when they were	playing. I couldn't
	vere very	4	
do my work. a) nervous	b) noisy	c) tired	d) old
a) nervous	to get to than	Rome.	
	b) easy	c) more easy	d) more easier
a) easier	hink is	dangerous animal i	n the world?
	nink is	c) most	d) more
a) the most	b) the more		,
	. have my dinner last i	night.	d) am not
a) didn't	b) wasn't	c) don't	a) all not
	t the underlined wo		4
We bought mo	ost expensive house i	n the city.	***************************************
	than your room.		(10012540011212111500044504)
	ou go on your last hol	iday?	The section of the se
A: Can she swi	m? B: Yes, <u>we</u> can.		(a to it is it in the first of
	E Writ	ing)	
6 Write a paragrap	oh of EIGHTY (80) wo	ords on:	
			•
# \$3 pong	"The Tahya M	lasr Bridge"	
* 414 * 444 * 144 *			h9414-094-014-4411-044-0-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1
	~~~~~ <del>~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~</del>	# 0011	
在自在中 1 1 1 1 4 1 4 1 4 1 4 1 4 1 4 1 4 1 4	医加克氏试验 [ () () () () () () () () () () () () ()		
	# (up;pp;14)	hanidkajās sbands nedhū ej vānsahaha da	2 号
35	P40439HPH0644491HP164#526B4H00H0555		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
	#10434#4=====		
(14)		**************************************	\$ P H H H H + > > 4 L H b 0 A C H A S B P A P H P V A P H P P P P P P P P P P P P P P P P P



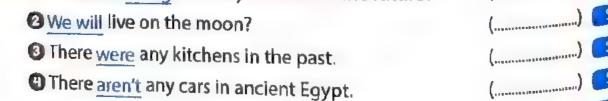


## Unit 9 Quiz

Choose the correc	t answer from a, b	, c or d:	7-10-1
O Hassan	windsurfing wit	h his family.	SB
a) went	b) did	c) made	d) took
A Hassan thinks re	ockis da	ngerous.	58
a) sailing	<b>b</b> ) diving	c) climbing	
Imad and Hassa	an think mountain	looks sca	•
a) biking	<b>b</b> ) sailing	c) diving	d) lining
Hassan thinks z	iplooks	fun.	SB
a) sailing	<b>b</b> ) lining	c) diving	d) biking
3 Imad would like	e tozip i	ining.	SB
a) do	<b>b</b> ) make	c) have	d) try
		perience when sor	mething unusual or
dangerous hap			WB
	b) travel	c) trip	d) picnic
		ep in when you go	camping. WB
a) camel	b) guide	c) tent	
• Are you going	your home	work this evening be	efore you eat? WB
a) to doing	_	c) do	
(9) Who		ir meal this evening	g? WB
a) is	b) is he	c) he is	d) he
	cake.I made it	and him and the control of the contr	WB
a) myself	b) himself	c) herself	d) yourself
Read and correct	the underlined w	ords:	(5)
• He went to the	dentist by itself.		( SB
Patma took a p	hoto of himself.		SB
They sat by the	fire to keep oursel		( SB
We bought the	Welves a now hear	ves warm, The book was for	(mper calques 17/4 190 plans) SB
6 Mona drew him	nsolf in a mind	ine book was for t	US. (************************************
(18)	HI a picture, S	he was in the pictu	re. (marriage and marriage and



	Wind	PI LODOrs	c) rockets	d) panels
	a) turbines	car does not use	petrol.	WB
	a) turbines  A/An	b) solar	c) electricity	d) electric
				58
	Cis a	n area that you car	c) Space	d) Spice
	a) Star	b) Solar	- mico temperatur	e that is hot but not
	a) Star  To be	means to be in a	a file temperatur	38
	too hot.			d) cold
	a) warm	b) cool	c) hot	
	a) wann	happens when t	the ground sudde	nly moves. SB
	=1 robot	b) rocket	c) train	ca) carting
	2 It was hot outside	, but it was nice an	d in	my bedroom. WB
	a) stormy	b) hot	c) cold	d) cool
	People	drive a car in 2	2080.	SB
	a) won't	<b>b</b> ) wouldn't	c) don't	d) didn't
	We will all	a driverless	car in 2080.	5B
	a) has	b) having	c) have	d) had
	10 In 2080, students	s will	a book when a c	computer on the car
	drives them to so			70
	a) read	b) reads	c) reading	d) be read
2	Read and correct t	he underlined wo	rds:	5
	Will there being	ordinary mobiles in	n the future?	(,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
	We will live on the			(THEATPERPRETER AND IN THE
	3 There were any k	itchens in the past	t.	(mentale management of the second sec
	There aren't any	cars in ancient Egy	pt.	(transcongamentoptatelent) 58



There was a lot of boats in the river yesterday.

## Cumulative Test Z (Based on Units 9 & 10)







- How should you listen to other people?
  - a) Carefully.
- b) Carelessly.
- c) Badly.
- d) Terribly.
- 2 A: What should you do when decide something important?
  - B: You should ..... with the others.
  - a) trek
- 😘 b) play
- c) negotiate d) argue

- Who should you get the best ideas from?
  - a) Yourself.
- b) Each other.
- c) Kids.
- d) Bad people.
- Is negotiation about winning an argument?
  - a) Yes.
- b) No.
- c) Sure.
- d) Surely.



### Complete the following dialogue:



:I will spend a great time next weekend. Amir

Basmala:(1)_____you go?

: I will go to the zoo. Amir

Basmala: Who will you go with?

: I will go with (2)_____. Amir

Basmala: What time will you go?

:We (3)......go at 10:00. Amir

Basmala: How will (4) your time there?

*We will (5)..... many animals! Amir

Basmala: I hope you spend a nice time.



## Reading Comprehension

	Dond the	following	then	answer	the questions:
(C)	Reau me	Initosamid,	F112-11	F1610 41	44.4

6

Trekking is an adventure hobby that most children, who love nature, like. It is both a hobby and a sport. Taking up trekking as a hobby is also useful to children. Trekking is quite exciting. Here's some advice when you go trekking. Always go with an elder person. Start exercising at least a few weeks before the trekking trip. Make sure to carry your food, water and all your equipment before you leave the camp. Carry dry fruits and sweets. Leave your money, passport, travel tickets and other valuables at the camp or at the hotel. Do not make loud noise or throw litter here and there during your trip. Keep the mountains clean and bring back all your waste from the mountains. Take rest when you feel sick. Always follow your guide and stay close to your group. Many schools organise trekking to develop love for nature among the students.

	kekking to gevelop to	VE TOT HALAIC ATTIO	·9 ····	
A) Answer the fol	lowing questions:			
<ul><li>Is trekking a</li></ul>	water or a mountain	sport?	2 2 d 0 7 7 7 1 - 4 1 4 4 2 2 2 7 7 5 12 12 12 12 12 2 2 2 2 4 4 2 2 4 4 2 2 4 4 4 2 4 4	•
2 What does the	ne underlined word "y	waste" mean?		
3 Why do you t	think you need dry fru	uits and sweets who	en you go trekking?	
B) Choose the cor	rect answer from a,	b, c or d:		
4 You should ke	eep your valuables at t	the w	hen you go trekking	j.
a) school	b) camp	c) hotel	d) both b and c	
You should st	tay close to your	when yo	ou go trekking.	
a) group	→ b) animals	c) plants	d) parents	
<b>6</b> Trekking is	to childr	en.	6.1	
a) bad	<b>b)</b> ugly	c) useless	d) useful	
D	Vocabulary a	nd Structure		1
	ect answer from a, b		(10	ナ
<b>1</b> A	is a person who sh	ows a place to to	urists. WE	3
a) visitor	b) pilot	c) nurse	d) guide	
	means to be in	a nice temperatu		
too hot.			SE	5
a) warm	b) cool	c) hot	d) cold	



	( 1	Dictation & Cumulat	lve Tests	18AF
A plane which o	doesn't have a pilot i	s called a		
a) space	b) plane	c) drone	d) car	WB
Al put all my pho	tos in a photo	of differential true &	ci) cui	
a) book	b) note	c) album	d) guide	
My sister likes th	ne sea, so she would	like to try	ereabibilitandess a	
a) climbing	<b>b</b> ) trekking	c) sailing	d) zip lining	g
6	lressed and went ou	t with my friends		
a) took	b) gave	c) got	d) went	
When did you le	earn to	a bike, Aya?		
a) drive	b) sail	c) fly	d) ride	
You will	to the moon o	ne day.		SB
a) go	b) went	c) goes	d) gone	
Don't worry! He	can do itb) herself	c) nimseli	d) yourself	
a) going to	b) am going to	c) all going	d) going	4)
Read and correct th	ne underlined word	usry day		SB
There will is rocke	ts that leave earth e	very day. (	**************************************	
② Did both of you d	to this job by yourse	(.	***************************************	
There weren't son	ne toys in the shop. making of best meta	l. (-	P114141-417444	
	(E) Writin	g	7	6
Write a paragraph o	of EIGHTY (80) word	is on:	"	
"You	r future plans for th	e next weekend		
4980422002200000000000000000000000000000		#4+4++++=+=+=	and Library and party.	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
A++1+4149016A++4++4+4+4+4+4+4+4+4+4+4+4+4+4+4+4+4+4		食物 國際國際國際共享 化水液 医氯甲烷 电电阻 医克尔氏病 计分析器	\$ Western Education State of S	ad 94 to 10 to
- erpa på fance		2 國際權用物 4 4 5 11 12 14 14 15 15 15 16 16 16 16 16 16 16 16 16 16 16 16 16	( sulfamonates teactions.	
***************************************		为有之一,而不是你是否有实在不会有的现在的现在分词,但是是不得。	医超出性性皮肤炎 化二甲基甲基苯甲基甲基	
	A	· 中文表:原表中文中央中央政治教育等原理者(1000年) 计多数信息中央 (1000年)	) 电运感电影传播中央	
35	100000000000000000000000000000000000000	recepteeredecein nemièneceseèces		
.,,,,,,,,,				25



## Unit of Quiz

	ct answer from a,	b, c or d:		10
Φ A *102304-101091300014 \$5 pc	oisonous.		Po A Al	WB
a) whale	b) snake	c) shark	<b>d</b> ) turtle	
@ Tois to	get rid of what yo	u do not need.		58
a) hear about	b) listen to	c) turn to	<b>d</b> ) throw av	
Our mountain, is	the place where we	live.	•	58
a) plant	b) air	c) planet	d) space	60
Ф То меняменя mea	ns to use again.		D. conito	SB
a) recycle	<ul><li>b) keep</li></ul>	c) cycle	d) write	60
6is the t	hing we do not nee	d, like old paper.	I) Canco	SB
a) Plant	<ul><li>b) Rubbish</li></ul>	c) Plastic	a) space	14/0
6 Don't throw awa	ay those glass bottle	es. We can	them.	WB
+1 make	<ul><li>b) recycle</li></ul>	c) boll	(i) par	NUD
Ahmed lost his ph	one, so his mother was	s when he di	idn't phone her.	WB
a) happy	<b>b)</b> worried	c) glad	d) scared	MAIO
O You respectable and run	across the road. You	u must walk.	Judon't	WB
a) must	b) mustn't	e) ao	d) don't	CO
When you leave	ice in the sun, it	water.	d) becomes	<b>SB</b>
a) became	b) becoming	c) become		SB
When you	away plastic, it stay	ys in the environm	d) throwing	
a) throw	<b>b)</b> throws	c) threw		$\supset$
2 Read and correct to	he underlined word		5	
1 You must walk or	the grass.		(.,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	
2 You shouldn't wal	k and <u>written</u> a text a	at the same time! (	(100-2101ACE(AELYMGAGELGA)	
If you touch a jell		(	CERTABRASE (\$4654116-1274-5)	
	s knowing a shark is	coming,	\	
it jumps out of th			(,	
6 If a shark loses a t	ooth, a new one gre	w- (.	,,	
			(29	9)



#### Unit 12 Quiz

				/
Choose the corre	ect answer from a, b,	, c or d:		1
A toacher is a D	erson who	students.		
altoaches	b) learns	c) studies	d) writes	
• to architect is i	person who	buildings.		
a) builds	b) designs	c) paints	d) sells	
A pilot is a persi	on whoa	plane.		
a) flies	b) rides	c) arives	d) carries	•
@ An	works with money an	d numbers.		
a) architect	b) accountant	c) engineer	d) office	
O 4 is	a man who works in l	business.		
a) dentist	b) businessman	c) scientist	d) teache	_
<b>Δ</b> Δ	oks after people's tee	th.		
a) vet	b) teacher	c) dentist	d) scientis	
<b>7</b> A WO	orks in science.			
a) businessman	b) dentist	c) nurse	d) scientis	
O it's really importa	ant to look after our p	lanet,	it?	
a) hasn't	b) has	c) is	d) isn't	
O You	your job, don't you?			V
a) didn't like		c) don't like	d) like	
🗓 If I pass my exam	s, I go to	university.		S
a) has	b) does	c) is	d) will	1
lead and correct th	ne underlined words	• •		5
There were a lot of	people at the meeting	g, weren't they?	()	58
	bish from all the ocea			
better for sea life.		1113, 1114, 1111	(**************************************	WB
	ich, I'll swam every day	in the summer.	(,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	WB
	f books, I won't to be able			
				24
# NOT ALC:		and the second s		- 1 - 1
Mr Al-Gamal is the	teacher which teaches	us matns.	1237-061010001100041100007	(33

# Cumulative Test 3 (Based on Units 11 & 12)





# 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



- How does Ali go to school?
  - a) By car.

  - c) By bus.

- b) By bike.
- d) On foot.

b) break

b) French.

d) club

- 2 A: When does he talk to his friends? B: At the ......
  - a) class

  - c) home
- What's his favourite subject?
  - a) English.

  - c) Maths.

- d) Science.
- - a) studies English

b) sleeps

c) listens to music

d) watches TV

#### Language Functions

#### Complete the following dialogue:

Amal: What are you doing?

Sara: I'm reading a (1)......

Amal: (2).....it about?

Sara: It's about modern farming in Egypt.

Amal: I see. Egyptian (3)...... are very clever.

Sara: What (4)..... farming in 100 years' time?

Amal: I think robot farmers will grow our plants.

Sara: And the (5)..... is very good. They can grow many

crops in it.

Amal: In the future, it will be much better than today.

Sara: Lagree that life will be different.







#### C Dictation & Cumulative Tests Reading Comprehension

0	Read the following, then	Description
	hend the remaining, their	answer the questi-
	Madoric a famous to a	and digestions:

Nader is a famous teacher of science in a prep school for boys and girls. He likes his job very much. He is also helpful to his students. He helps them to do experiments in the science lab. He enjoys growing flowers in the school garden. He is about twenty five years old. He is married. He has got two daughters and one son. He starts work at half past seven. He finishes it at half past two p.m. He's very kind to his students. They will always go to him if they

have any problem	ns.	Tricy will all	vays go to him if they		
A) Answer the fo	llowing questions:				
Where does	Mr Nader teach scie	nce?			
2 Do you think	students like Mr Na	der? Why?	**************************************		
<b>What is Mr N</b>	ader's hobby?		<b>ウラコミカムかはくと 点に見 デロマ 明母 [ トヨコモ ウェミモ ロ 日 ドロ・田 ウ : ピトウル・マン・・アンモモ L.ムウ</b>		
B) Choose the co	rrect answer from a	a, b, c or d:	######################################		
Mr Nader ha	s got	hildren,			
a) one	b) no		d) two		
The underlin	ed pronoun " <u>lt</u> " rafe	rs to	<b>4</b> / two		
a) work			d) problem		
The word "fre	lpful" means a pers	on who	-/ problem		
a) helps othe	ers	b) has proble			
c) grows flow	rers		d) learns from others		
	Valagularing	manname			
Choose the corre	ct answer from a, b	cord			
We should to	- and the morning	, coru.	10		
a) lose	oa lot	of trees to help the	environment.		
	b) plant	c) keep	d) attend		
a) C:-	e big, her	that hit with their	big tails.		
- Jungrays	<b>b)</b> Whales	c) Walls	d) Snakes		
Most of the plas	tic goes	the ocean.			
- 44.5	b) into	el for	d) by		
He decided to pa	a: a plant into a	filled wit	h soil.		
a) pot	b) sandwich	c) seed	d) stone		



part 2



## )SB & WB General Exercises

- Vocabulary Exercises on each unit
- Language Exercises on each unit.

التدريبات الطاهة بالمفردات وفرواعد اللغة على يعدة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات



### SB & WB General Exercises

# ( Unit

Vocal	oulary	about dolphins.	- Acr	SB
a	aquarium	b) planetarium	c) park	d) exhibition
<b>2</b> 1.	looked	he stars. b) saw	c) watched	d) listened
<b>@</b> 1.	rode	the big wheel. <b>b)</b> saw	c) did	d) heard
<b>4</b> 1	bre	akfast this morning.	a) gave	d) went
a) (5) [	took swi	<b>b)</b> had mming last weekend	c) gave I.	SB
a)	went	b) played	c) did	d) had
a)	crowded	means not with oth <b>b)</b> quiet	c) orphan	d) alone
		someone who works <b>b)</b> sailor	on a boat or ship. c) waiter	d) doctor
<b>②</b> To	is	to go down into wat	er.	d) think
	sing be	<b>b)</b> float is to be very bad.	c) sink	WB WB
<b>a</b> )	terrible	b) good		d) sad
	ke bananas	, but it is difficult to a <b>b)</b> figs	c) coconuts	d) dates
-1	cailor	as a and sailed	5 In. and	d) nurse
<b>②</b> Do	sailor you I ke worki	<b>b)</b> drivering with other people	c) player e, or do you prefer	to work
a)	quiet	b) easy	c) a line	d) alone

2:	1

a Ldidn't like	this story. I thought th	ie writing was	WB
	ni lembie	c) mantenea	di amazina
an na you thin	ik this glass portie will	in the	water? ws
2	ni ulank	C) SILIN	d) think
& Pohinson C	rusoe was a sallor on a	Stylby www.collowschargeness. B	WB
lana	b) snip	C) Dus	d) rocket
Crusoe ate a	a fish and	it was not very nice	e. WB
2 4024	b) died	c) ales	d) death
a) dead a Hwasn't alw	ays very hot	the island.	WB
	la) with	C) IOI	d) on
There was a/	/an, but the	ere were no caves o	on the island. WB
	h) tablet	c) jungle	a) internet
@Lwent to mV	cousin's house last we	ekend. It was	because we
played all my	y favourite games!		WB
a bad	b) fantastic	c) boring	d) ugly
⊅ My father dr	ove us to the park or	Saturday. It took	an hour to go two
kilometresi II	wasbeca	ause there were so	many cars. WB
a) good	b) OK	3 1	d) happy
Alwent on hol	iday last summer. It w		
yery old.	iday (abe barren		WB
a) good	<b>b)</b> ОК	c) terrible	d) happy
2) People first n	layed mu	•	
a) traditional	_	c) new	d) fast
•	nusic is sometimes ve		W8
a) Quiet	b) Rock	c) Stone	d) Wali
	D) NOCK	4)	·
Language			
			•
	you go to the	museum?	
3 A: When	you go to the	museum? go.	SB
A: When	e museum four days a	go.	d) did
A: When	e museum four days a	go. c) do ol? <b>B:</b> I come to sch	d) did nool by bus SB
A: When	e museum four days a  b) are do you come to scho	go. c) do ol? <b>B:</b> I come to sch	d) did nool by bus SB d) Who
A: When  B: I went to th  a) have  A:  a) When  A: Can you pla	e museum four days a <b>b)</b> are do you come to scho	go. c) do ol? <b>B:</b> I come to sch c) How play chess.	d) did nool by bus SB d) Who
A: When	e museum four days a  b) are do you come to scho	go. c) do ol? <b>B:</b> I come to sch	d) did nool by bus SB d) Who

## PART (2)

			. 11	
	② It was great	I went to	the bowling alley.	d) because
	a) but	<b>b</b> ) although	c) and	
	a) but  lt was OK on Sat	urday,	nad lots of 110	d) when
				WB
	<ul><li>a) because</li><li>B His ship sank</li></ul>	tnere we	c) so	<b>d</b> ) and
	a) because	b) but	't want to eat anoth	er dead fish! WB
		b) Although	c) But	d) So
	a) Because			
2	Read and correct t	he underlined w	ords:	( ************************************
_	When did Dina's	birthday?		(pressional SB
	Author did Dina's 1	family went to the	restaurant?	
	3 It's Wednesday to	oday, so it was Tue	sday this morning.	() SB
	2016 was four year	ars <u>last</u> .		annountablished the system of 20
	Ahmed is twelve.	He was born in 20	000.	(31111111111111111111111111111111111111
	• A: What time is it	? <b>B:</b> It was quarter	past ten.	(**************************************
	A: Do you like jaz	z? <b>B:</b> Yes, l <u>like</u> .		(
	A: Have you got a	new jacket? <b>B:</b> N	o, l <u>don't</u> -	() ASB
	19 How did your last	birthday?		(*************************************
	What did you did			(xxx40444444444444444444444444444444444
	O Do you got a new	school bag?		() SB
	② She went to school	ol because she fel	t ill.	(
	19 You can see the isl	and?		( DELEASED DE NOTE ATTENDADE LA CALLES
	What time you do	go to school?		(
	1 Did youwent shop	oping at the week	kend?	(*************************************
	19 You have got a blu			() WB
	10 Do you taller than			() WB
	13 Can your best frier	nd speaks French	?	(
1				Activities and an arrangement of the second

# ( Unit 8

U				
	a) Old The Pyramid is j a) about The tunnel is 2.3	b) About just8 b) deep 3 kilometres	eople live in Paris. c) Under 350 years old. c) under under the grounder c) high exandria desert road?	SB
	a) high  The Tahya Masr	b) Tunnel is the talle b) Tower very important t	s over tne Nile in Cairo.  c) Tower  est puilding in Egypt. c) Tunnel	d) many WB d) Bridge WB d) City WB
	a) think  3 What do you thin a) about  9	nkal  b) in  ans something th  b) Long  means not to b	nimals like horses and c) from hat is not expensive. c) Cheap	d) under SB d) Deep SB d) noisy
	a) Wide  (2) mea  a) High  (3) To be  a) deep	b) Deep  b) Deep  means not to b  b) cheap	c) Wide e dangerous. c) safe	d) Long  SB  d) expensive
	Which pyramid is a) more tall	, the Great Py b) tall	ramid of Giza or the Red l	d) taller

(	<b>B</b> l'm t	than my friend.		SB
	a) more taller	b) tallest	c) taller	d) tall
(	<b>3</b> Some people thi	nk maths is the	subject	of all.
	a) a difficult	<ul><li>b) difficult</li></ul>	c) most difficul	it a) more amicult
	DI think maths is	social stu	ıdies.	58 58
	a) easier than	b) the easiest	c) easy	d) easier
	On Saturdays, the	e market is	on Fridays.	d) quieter than
	a) more quiet	b) quiet	c) quieter	
(	D Tennis is less dan	gerous	rootball.	d) than
	a) this	b) that	c) then	SB
S	This is the	popular book i	c) more	d) little
	a) least	b) less		
6		tfastest	c) the more	d) the least
	a) the	<b>b)</b> the most people ill th	*	•
-		b) much	c) many	d) some
•	a) more			<b>,</b>
		he underlined word		(SB
	An elephant is big	ggest than a camel.		
		happy after they mov		
		as more high than we	-	(
	Cheese is bad for			(
6		pples because the rec	d apples are	
	most expensive.			() SB
_		l <u>y noisy</u> than moderi	n cars.	(araciderenciacadasendanana) SB
	A train is faster a b			( SB
8	The museum is us	ually <u>crowded</u> on a S	Saturday	
	than a Sunday.			(sontenunaranooneedonana) (SB)
. 9	I think the blue dre	ess is more nice than	the red dress.	(marina heres processor pr
	Adel is tall, but Rar			() SB
0	don't like this hot	el and it is not very i	modern.	() WB
(1)	I think motorbikes	are more dangerous	s bikes.	(56
13	The Nile is the long	river in the world.		( SB
•	The Nile is longest	than the Amazon.		(SB
42		The medical and a		feetomesensussandensus. 6



Vocabulary		-	
• We can't go	today beca	Buse there is no	11
ajaiving	<b>D)</b> Windsurfing	c) trekking	all lists
All you need to g	gois a	boat and some wind	11
a) climbing	b)zip lining	c) trekking	d) sailing
1 love going	to go dow	n rivers. It's usually v	ery quiet! WR
a) kayaking	<b>b)</b> trekking	c) biking	d) lining
We sometimes of	30 for t	two days or more, u	sually across the
desert.			WB
a) diving	<b>b)</b> windsurfing	c) trekking	d) kayaking
6 Hove	because I'm good	at swimming under	the water. WB
a) kayaking	<b>b)</b> sailing	c) trekking	<b>d)</b> diving
6 Try	You start really high	, but you finish on th	ie ground. You go
very fast!			WB
a) wind surfing	<b>b)</b> zip lining	c) diving	d) sailing
<b>?</b> the t	hird of March, Ahme	ed's going to leave R	as Shetan. SB
a) In	<b>b)</b> On	c) At	d) Of
<b>8</b> Ais a	a person who show	s a place to tourists	WB
a) visitor	<b>b</b> ) pilot	c) nurse	<b>d</b> ) guide
OAis a	a long trip from one		WB
a) swim	<b>b</b> ) journey	c) walk	d) dive
Ol love waking up	in a	and hearing the	birds sing in the
mornings.			VVB
a) nool	<b>b</b> ) tent	c)picnic	d) tint
We want to have	a to	show us the marke	et, because they
know all the best			
a) visitor	b) pilot	c) nurse	d) guide
	Michigan		(43)

c) tent b) journey d) guide a) experiment 1 don't want to have a/an ..... on holiday, I want to sleep by a pool! WB c) adventure d) travel a) experiment b) tent (1) It is usually very ...... in August. WB c) sun d) sunny b) wind a) rain B It is not very hot today because there are a lot of .....in the sky. WB c) storms d) rains a) clouds b) winds There is ...... at the top of that mountain. Look, it is all white! WE c) snow b) rain a) wind The roads are dangerous when it is ..... because you can't see very well. d) clouds c) sunny b) foggy a) fogs Don't swim in the sea when it is ....... It is dangerous. WB c) rain d) sun b) stormy 19 We can't sail because there is no ....... WB d) wind b) snow a) fog .....shall we do this weekend? W8 c) Why d) Where b) How a) What WB don't we go kayaking? d) Where b) Why c) When a) What Maher and Karim can ..... windsurfing or diving. #SB b) play c) do **d**) go a) make Maher asks Karim to find photos ..... themselves and their other SB cousins. a) at b) of c) by d) near Language going to travel home by bus after school? WB a) You are d) You do b) Are you c) Do you What are you going to .....tomorrow? WB a) wearing b) worn d) wear c) wore

### ( Unit 10)

Vocabulary			
	s made of		
	b) metal	c) leather	d) cotton
Car window	s are made of	144441-0444 - 0	
a) plastic	b) sand	c) stone	d) glass WB
Expensive c	ar seats are made of	04410000044250044420444	WB
a) leather	b) wood	c) metal	d) plastic
You can turn	n on the t	o get water.	WB
a) tap	b) tip		d) tube
<b>5</b> The	is on top of a hou	use.	WB
	b) tap	c) oven	d) roof
	to build a wa		WB
a) breaks	<b>b</b> ) bricks	c) ovens	d) taps
You use a/a	n to cook	food or bread.	WB
a) roof	b) oven	c) brick	d) tan
<b>◎</b> We put	panels on a roof. They	produce electricity us	ing the sun. WR
a) space	b) robot	c) drone	d) solar
We can use	the sun or the wind to	produce	WB
<ul><li>a) electricit</li></ul>	y <b>b)</b> wind	c) sian	d) rocket
<b>(1)</b>	can do many things	for us. Some of them	can talk. W8
a) Rockets	b) Robots	c) Turbines	d) Minds
w My aunt ma	ide us some bread and	when we ate it, it was	still WB
a) warm	D) cold	c) rainy	d) windy
Some hous	es fell to the ground a	ofter the	. WB
a) wind	b) snow	c) ialoo	d) earthquake
This is a	shape. It is a	triangle.	WB
a) triangula	ar <b>b)</b> triangle	c) rectangle	d) rectangular
This is a	shape. It is a	circle.	WB
a) circle	b) round	c) rectangular	d) triangular
Language		,	
0			
Read and cor	rect the underlined	words:	
<b>W</b> Inerewould	dn't be any ordinary	cars in the future	(
Ca i mink men	ould live on the mo	on: it is my dream.	SB
Will therea	re electric cars in the	future?	( SB
We will goin	ng to the moon.	- well to	(ANDMONTAL SECTION SEC
-			

# 2

# ( Unit

Vocabulary			
O A sedestraveacheasantino	can sting you.		
a) turtle	<b>b</b> ) shark	c) stingray	WB
@ A/An .amossociation	has eight legs.	3-2)	d) whale
a) snake	b) octopus	c) coral reef	d) turtle
3 A merendaniya	has a hard shell to p	otect it.	. WB
a) coral	<b>b)</b> whale	c) shark	d) turtle
Trees are ver	y good for our	because they give	
	ent <b>b)</b> house	c) space	d) street
6 Earth is one	of eight th	at go around the	sun. WB
a) planes	b) plans	c) plants	d) planets
<b>6</b> We don't need	that dirty piece of paper	: You can put it with	the WB
a) plant	b) rubbish	c) plastic	d) space
7 The	is the top part of th	ne Earth, where we	e stand. WB
a) ground	b) roof	c) wall	d) attic
8 Plants grow i	n the ***********************************		WB
a) hole	b) dust	c) air	d) soil
<b>9</b> A	is an empty space in	something.	WB
a) whole	b) hull	c) hole	d) hall
<b>1</b> To is	to put something over so	mething else to pro	tect or hide it. WB
a) build	b) cover	c) cycle	d) recycle
🛈 Ais a sm	all, hard thing made by pla	ants, which grows int	o new plants.
a) sand	b) seed	c) soil	a) saii
② A lot of	catch fish from	the Red Sea. It's tr	ieii jobi
- N	1 - 1	- Indicemen	(I) Hallette
13 My grandmot	b) businessmen ther is 65 and knows a lo	ot! We all	d) water
Judy felt very	b) hate after she	was ill, but sne is	d) kind
a) friendly	b) strong	c) weak	(47)

### PART 2

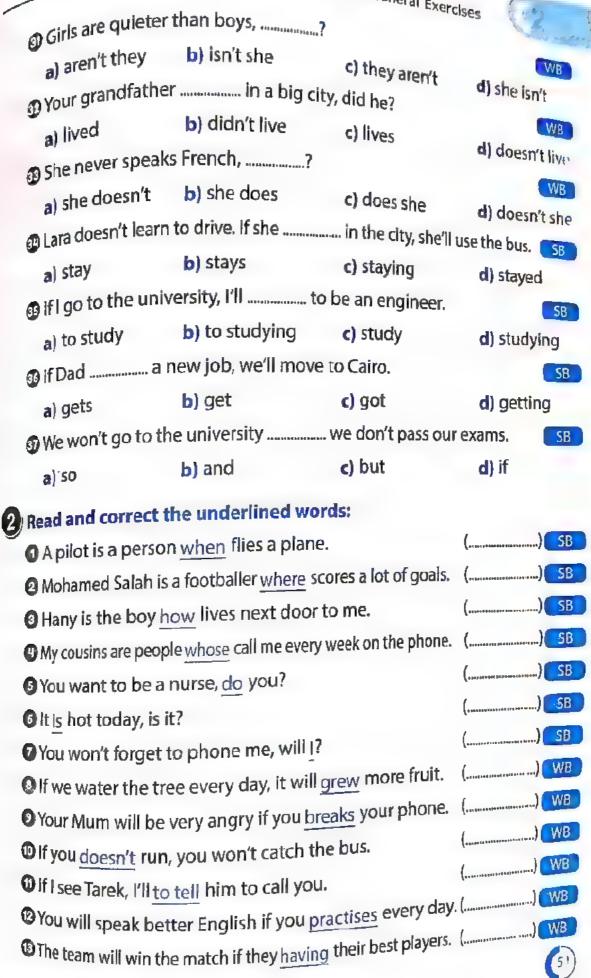
243		s ald ani	mal Its hones.
In the museum	, we saw a	of a very old ani	mai. its bones were
very big!		a sail	d) star
a) sand	b) skeleton	c) soil	d) Stai
Language			
1 You was a supplementary	play games in the	e road.	WB
al mount	b) mustn't	e) would	d) wouldn't
When you cros	s a road, first you	find a safe p	lace to cross. WB
a) haven't	b) have	c) mustri t	a) must
When you cros	s a road, you	look left and	right. WB
a) muset	b) are	c) aren't	a) mustn t
19Is	ee rubbish on the g	ground, I throw it in	the bin. SB
a) Recause	<b>b</b> ) If	c) Although	' <b>a)</b> 20
a seed	gets water and ligh	nt, it grows into a h	ealthy plant. SB
a) Because	b) When	c) Although	d) So
_	take water when	wou do to the desi	ert. SB
29 You	take water when	you go to the des	13.1
a) must	b) mustn't	c) have	d) has
a) must Read and correct	<ul><li>b) mustn't</li><li>t the underlined w</li></ul>	c) have vords:	d) has
a) must Read and correct	<ul><li>b) mustn't</li><li>t the underlined w</li></ul>	c) have vords:	d) has
a) must Read and correct You mustn't for	<b>b)</b> mustn't <b>t the underlined w</b> got why you are do	c) have vords: ping the activity.	d) has
a) must  Read and correct  You mustn't for  You mustn't list  You shouldn't s	b) mustn't  t the underlined was  got why you are do  ten to other studen  thare your ideas wit	c) have  rords:  bing the activity.  ts'ideas.  th others.	() SB () SB (
a) must  Read and correct  You mustn't for  You mustn't list  You shouldn't s	b) mustn't  t the underlined was  got why you are do  ten to other studen  thare your ideas wit	c) have  vords:  bing the activity.  its'ideas.	() SB (
a) must  Read and correct  You mustn't for  You mustn't list  You shouldn't s	b) mustn't  t the underlined was  got why you are do  ten to other studen  share your ideas with  nade all the decision	c) have  rords:  bing the activity.  ts'ideas.  th others.	(
a) must  Read and correct  You mustn't for  You mustn't list  You shouldn't s  You shouldn't n  You must to tak	b) mustn't  t the underlined was  got why you are do  ten to other studen  share your ideas with  nade all the decision	c) have  rords:  oing the activity.  its'ideas.  th others.  ons or rules yoursel	() SB (
a) must  Read and correct  You mustn't for  You mustn't list  You shouldn't s  You shouldn't n  You must to tak  You must wear	b) mustn't  t the underlined ware do  got why you are do  ten to other studen  share your ideas with  nade all the decision  shoes. You must ta	c) have  rords:  ping the activity.  its'ideas.  th others.  ons or rules yoursel  ke them off.	(
a) must  Read and correct  You mustn't for  You mustn't list  You shouldn't s  You shouldn't n  You must to tak  You must wear  When a turtle is	b) mustn't  t the underlined was got why you are do ten to other studen share your ideas with made all the decision te turns. shoes. You must ta	c) have  rords:  oing the activity.  its' ideas.  th others.  ons or rules yoursel  ke them off.  to its shell.	() SB (
a) must  Read and correct  You mustn't for  You mustn't list  You shouldn't s  You shouldn't n  You must to tak  You must wear  When a turtle is	b) mustn't  t the underlined was got why you are do ten to other studen share your ideas with made all the decision te turns. shoes. You must take in danger, it go in simming away fast	c) have  rords:  ling the activity.  lts' ideas.  th others.  ons or rules yoursel  ke them off.  to its shell.  when it's in dange	() SB (
a) must  Read and correct  You mustn't for  You mustn't list  You shouldn't s  You shouldn't n  You must to tak  You must wear  When a turtle is  When l'm hungs	b) mustn't  t the underlined ware do  got why you are do  ten to other studen  hare your ideas with  nade all the decision  te turns.  shoes. You must take in danger, it go in  simming away fast  ry, I had something	c) have  rords:  ping the activity.  Its'ideas.  Ith others.  Ins or rules yoursel  ke them off.  to its shell.  when it's in dange  g to eat.	() SB
a) must  Read and correct  You mustn't for  You mustn't list  You shouldn't s  You shouldn't n  You must to tak  You must wear  When a turtle is  When I'm hungs  When I'm tired,	b) mustn't  t the underlined way  got why you are do  ten to other student  hare your ideas with  nade all the decision  se turns.  shoes. You must take  in danger, it go in  mimming away fast  ry, I had something  lam going to bed.	c) have  rords:  ling the activity.  lts' ideas.  th others.  ons or rules yoursel  ke them off.  to its shell.  when it's in dange  g to eat.	(
a) must  Read and correct  You mustn't for  You mustn't list  You shouldn't s  You shouldn't n  You must to tak  You must wear  When a turtle is  When I'm hungs  When I'm tired,  I always laughed	b) mustn't  t the underlined way  got why you are do  ten to other student  hare your ideas with  nade all the decision  te turns.  shoes. You must take  in danger, it go in  imming away fast  ry, I had something  I am going to bed.  d when I watch the	c) have  rords:  rords	(
a) must  Read and correct  You mustn't for  You mustn't list  You shouldn't s  You shouldn't n  You must to tak  You must wear  When a turtle is  When I'm hungs  When I'm tired,	b) mustn't  t the underlined way  got why you are do  ten to other student  hare your ideas with  nade all the decision  te turns.  shoes. You must take  in danger, it go in  imming away fast  ry, I had something  I am going to bed.  I when I watch the  he travel on a boat	c) have  rords:  rords	() SB

# ( Unit

#### 1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

#### Vocabulary a) workshop b) hospital c) school d) office A/An ..... designs machines and engines. WB a) teacher b) accountant c) engineer d) sailor I didn't like the book. I thought it was .................. WB a) good **b)** terrible c) wonderful d) fantastic Mariam got the ..... of her test. She did very well! WB d) result a) book b) cause c) reason 3 I love learning about sea life. I want to be a marine ................ WB b) biologist d) teacher c) engineer a) architect 6 A/An ......(for example, the Atlantic) is bigger than a sea. WB d) lake c) river b) sea a) ocean The scientist did lots of tests in the ...... WB d) laboratory b) playground c) library a) office 13 To ...... is to get money by working. WB d) make c) earn b) win a) do is something that you wear such as rings and necklaces. d) Glass c) Wood b) Paper a) Jewellery WB O A/An ..... is a fully grown person. d) toddler c) baby b) adult a) child A.....is a room or small building where people make or repair things. c) workshop d) grocery b) store a) laboratory WB ② A ..... means an ability to do something well. d) skip c) skeleton b) skull a) skill WB 3 .....is the art, ideas, beliefs, etc. of a group of people. d) Culture c) Art b) Science a) Reading is something made from clay such as pots, dishes, etc. d) Glass c) Wood a) Jewellery b) Pottery WB To you need a lot of ...... to make a beautiful basket. d) skills c) scales b) jewellery a) skutl

13 You can see noo	ple making baskets ir	the down	the road. WB
a) workshop	b) park	c) farm	d) school
My cousin is a/a	n now. She w		WB
a) boy	b) child	c) adult	d) baby
	uallya lot of r	noney.	WB
a) win	h) earn	c) give	d) see
(P) Tourists learn a lot	about ancient Egyptian	when they	visit Egypt. WB
a) culture	b) book	c) science	cr) maths
My father bought	this for my m	other when they go	t marri <mark>ed. WB</mark>
a) jewellerv	b) pottery	c) wood	u) glass
1 love the red, blu	ue and green pottery	in this workshop. I	t is very
			WB
a) hopeful	b) terrible	c) helpful	d) colourful
My father has go	t a camera, but he do	esn't often	. it. He prefers his
phone.			WB
a) useful	b) use	c) hope	d) hopeful
◆ The black and will  ■ The black and w	hite maps you gave r	ne are very	WB
a) useful	b) use	c) hope	d) hopeful
d and a second			
Language		THE RESERVE AND THE PARTY OF TH	
A scientist is a per	erson studies		WB
a) where	b) which	c) who	d) what
Sara wants to be	a marine biologist, .	she?	WB
a) does	b) is	c) isn't	d) doesn't
3 Your grandmoth	er doesn't like fish,	she?	WB
a) does	b) doesn't	c) don't	d) do
You did your hor	nework last night, di	idn't?	WB
a) she	b) he	c)	d) you
Nasser will write	to me when he gets	there,?	WB
a) won't Nasser	b) won't he	c) will he	d) will Nasser
There weren't ma	any people at the m		
a) she	b) they	c) there	d) it
A lot of people p	refer living in Cairo,	2	WB
a) they don't	Land and the same		
,	~, don't they	c) they do	d) do they



# Part 3



#### ) Final Tests

- 1) (17) Al Testa
- 3)(2,11/1, 1/2hall Exer :

- V . V. V. Chard are rate P. Agarage =

المتبارث فهرار اللاب ويريد

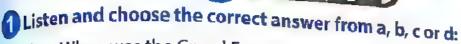
10Pestar



# Final Tests



### Listening



- a) 2000
- **b)** 2009
- c) 2019
- d) 2002

2 How far is the museum from the Pyramids at Giza?

a) Two kilometres.

b) Ten kilometres.

c) Twenty kilometres.

- d) Twelve kilometres.
- What is the most beautiful part of the museum?
  - a) The hall.

b) The main room.

c) The entrance.

- d) The second floor.
- 1 How big is the biggest statue in the museum?
  - a) Two metres.

b) Twelve metres.

c) Twenty metres.

d) Twenty two metres.

## Language Functions 🕽

#### 2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed: Where are you going?

Marwan: I'm going to the doctor.

Ahmed : (1)..... with you?

Marwan: I don't feel well.

Ahmed : Do you practise sports?

Marwan: No, I (2)......

Ahmed: Why don't you practise a sport?

Marwan: Because I'm (3)...... I study all the time.

Marwan: That's a good (5).....





# Reading Comprehension



3 Read the following, then answer the questions: Everyone has a hobby. My hobby is listening to music and watching TV. Everyone has a noppy, My Hosely matter whether I listen to happy, sad, or I like all kinds of music and it doesn't matter whether I listen to happy, sad, or I like all kinds of music and it does not my favourite songs. At the weekends, joyful music. When I'm free, I listen to my favourite songs. At the weekends, Joyful music, when I in thee, I listed the downtown to buy good CDs. I usually I usually go to music shops in the downtown that has the nower listed to the power list the thing that has the nower listed to the power list the thing that has the nower list the thing the nower list the nower li I usually go to music shops in the thing that has the power to make listen to traditional music. Music is the thing that has the power to make me happy. I spend an hour after dinner watching news and programmes, me nappy. I spend all float the World Here and There" because it is exciting. I enjoy a programme called "The World Here and There" because it is exciting. ing questions:

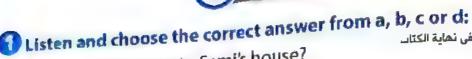
A) A	<b>Inswer the fo</b> What kind o	f music does th	e writer like listening	to?
6	Where does	the writer buy	good CDs?	. ~ 5 26 2 5 5 7 7 7 6 5 5 5 5 5 6 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7
•	How long of programme		r spend after dinner	watching news and
			from a, b, c or d:	A STATE OF THE STA
	a) film	<b>b)</b> play	c) programme	d) book
	a) busy	<b>b)</b> not busy	•	d) working
6		<b>b)</b> cassettes	from the downtov c) tables	vn. <b>d)</b> CDs
		Vocabula	avana Stanatur	e )

Choose the cor	rect answer from a, b	, c or d:	10
A marine	is a per	son who studies th	e ocean and th
plants and an	imals in it.		
a) scientist	b) dentist	c) biologist	d) guide
You can enjoy	the glass	in the Tahva Ma	asr Bridge.
a) Hoor	b) ground	c) land	d) roof
Marwan,	five, is	frightened of the da	ark.
a) age	b) old	c) aged	d) young





#### (A) Listening



تصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب



- When did you go to Sami's house?
  - a) On Saturday.
  - c) On Monday.
- Which sport did they play?
  - a) Basketball.
  - c) Volleyball.
- Who helped me with my homework?
  - a) My father.
  - c) My friends.
- What is in the sports centre?
  - a) A playground.
  - c) A swimming pool.

- b) On Sunday.
- d) On Tuesday.
- b) Handball.
- d) Football.
- b) My mother.
- d) My grandmother.
- b) A gym.
- d) A stadium.

#### B Language Functions )

#### 2 Complete the following dialogue:

Munir: I'm happy to see you, Assem.

Assem: I'm happy, too.

Munir: (1)......you going to go?

Assem: I'm going to go to the (2)_____centre.

Munir: What are you (3)..... there?

Assem: I'm going to go swimming.

Munir: I didn't know you like swimming.

Munir: That's a good (5).....

Assem: OK. I will wait for you at the sports centre.



#### Final Tests Reading Comprehension

Read the following, then answer the questions:



If you want to be good at English, the best thing you can do is to build up your words. First of all, you should read a lot. You can read short stories, comics, newspapers, magazines, etc...... As you read, you can guess the meanings of new words. If you cannot, then look them up in a dictionary. Another way is to watch movies in English. Keep a vocabulary notebook and write down a few words each day. You should revise them. In my opinion, to speak to people all you need is to use the words you learned.

Practice makes per	fect.	S = Heed 12 to USE	the words you learned.
A) Answer the foll	owing quest	ions:	
<b>1</b> What is the m	ain idea of th	e passage?	
<b>9</b> What is the m	ost importan	t thing when you s	peak to people?
<b>3</b> What does the	e underlined	pronoun "them" re	fer to?
B) Choose the corr	ect answer f	rom a, b, c or d:	
Oon't stop if y	ou read a wo	rd you don't under	stand, you can
Manage of the second of the se	meaning of n	ew words.	ocaria, you can
a) guess		c) lose	d) make
You should kee learn new voca	ep a noteboo bulary.	k for new	to help you to
a) grammar b	) woras	c) passages	d) letters
o the word "mo	vies" is anoth	er word for	
a) dictionaries		b) stories	51177111111111111111111111111111111111
c) films		d) books	
	ocabular/	y and Structu	re )
Choose the correct	aneway fram	- h d -	
The Haby Temple	pac selemin	a, b, c or a:	those at Karnak.
a) on	) in	similar	d) to
The furtle puts it	head into its	C) al	uj to
a) plastic buts its	) bin	c) tail	d) shell

	about a new	raliway line across India
3 Jules Verne read a newspaper	-	d) article
a) passage b) text  The piano is a musical	c) instrument to Hollywood and	d) whiteboard d become a movie star.
a) research b) dream		cars.
<ul> <li>a) electrical</li> <li>b) electronic</li> <li>Which team does Waleed Solima</li> </ul>	c) electricity	d) electric
a) in b) for my lunch	c) from then I tried to do	d) out my maths homework.
a) eat b) ate	person in n	ny family.
a) older b) the older  The analysis of the older b and the old		
a) learn b) learning	c) learned	d) learns
<ul> <li>Read and correct the underlined</li> <li>Is she go to try rock climbing?</li> <li>Which pyramid is tall, the Green</li> </ul>		(Interpretation of the section)
<ul> <li>The table are made of wood.</li> <li>I will walk to school if the bus d</li> </ul>	li <u>dn't</u> arrive.	( ************************************
E	Vriting )	
6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (8	0) words on: ns for tomorrow	6
iour piai		
011.00====##############################	***************************************	4 = 1 = 2 = 4 = 5 + 5 = 4 = 1 = 5 = 7 = 7 = 7 = 7 = 7 = 4 + 5 + 6 = 2 = 4 + 7 = 6 = 1 = 1 = 1 = 1 = 1 = 1 = 1 = 1 = 1
***************************************		~ * * * * + * + * * * * * * * * * * * *
***************************************	***********************************	
35	**************************************	
***************************************	*********************	의 공장 마시 및 전 및 보다 및 및 보내 및 보고 및 및 및 및 및 및 및 및 및 및 및 및 및 및 및 및 및



#### Reading Comprehension



3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

There are many kinds of houses. Most people in the United States live in houses made of wood or bricks. In Eritrea, the nomadic people build their houses of straw. The homes are small and cool. They can move their houses when they want to move. They take their animals to new places in order to find food. People who belong to Peru build their houses of trees. They also live on islands that are made of trees! Their boats are made of trees too! About 2,000 people live on these man-made islands. They started to build their own islands about 500 years ago.

their ov	vn islands ab	out 500 years ago.		ey started to build
		wing questions: t people in the Uni	ted States live?	
€W	hy do the no	mads take their ar	imals to new plac	es?
See W	hat is the nu	mber of people wh	no live on man-ma	ade islands in Peru?
_		ect answer from a		T+TEETOJUTOTTSTTTF00;0F02;E010;4010;E \$
a)	wood	b) trees	c) bricks	d) straw
_		the nomads are		O le aillean
	cool	b) cold They"refers to	c) hot	d) boiling
		e United States		
				of the nomadic people
	D		y and Struct	ture )
		answer from a, b		10
He we	ent out of the	e sea and	himself	with a towel.
a) he		b) cooled	c) emptied	d) dried
¶ ∘ Some	illnesses wi	***************************************	completely in th	ne future.
a) dis	sappear	b) dive	c) make	a) have
<b>a)</b> ser	nd	b) recycle	c) eat	d) plant
00)				

. shane)	ct 30 years, there will be a	lot of	in our lives.
a) crisis street	t is quite	The big truck car	n't cross it.
-/ PT	n Di Ciliber		
Most vour	ng people read	stories. The	ey are exciting.
Literate Co.	D/ SdQ	C) Dau	oj agventure
The Tahya	Masris al	bout 67 metres w	vide.
-) Ctadium	n D lower	C) River	<b>d)</b> Bridge
A There Was	water on	the floor.	
a) a	b) an	c) any	d) no word
A Who is	you or your	sister?	
a) old	b) more old	c) older	d) older than
My parents	will buy	a new car.	
a) himself		b) herself	
c) yourselve	es	d) themselve:	s
·	rect the underlined wor	ds:	4
1 Tennis is les	s dangerous then footbal	11.	()
	self a cup of tea.		()
	be quiet in the classroom	l.	()
4 He will buy a	a new car, will he?		(,)
	(E) Writing	ng )	
6 Write a paragra	aph of EIGHTY (80) wor	ds on:	6
	"A sport you	u like"	)
10ph-10ph/10ph/10ph/10ph/10ph/10ph/10ph/10ph/	***************************************		
*****************	*************************************		<b>• P• 2 •</b> • P 6 6 2 • F 6 • 6 • F 1 1 11 14 6 • T 0 • B 1 • F → Å 6 • E • •
Tenenca de 184 mante 200 maio de 186 maio			
(abra) bightor	94 (2) 49 20 20 40 40 40 40 40 40 40 40 40 40 40 40 40		
***************************************	^	04 \$45 E61 W   40   W   40   10 4 A   40 A	
	***************************************		
35	*************************************		
33	***************************************		
			4148444





1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

ر الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب



- What is the text about?
  - a) The past.
  - c) The future.

- **b)** The present.
- d) Nowadays.
- 2 Where will you go for a holiday in 2080?
  - a) To the moon.

b) To the beach.

c) To the desert.

- d) To the forest.
- How will you go to the moon?
  - a) By plane.

b) On foot.

c) By bus.

- d) By rocket.
- 4 How long will the journey to the moon take?
  - a) 12 days.

**b)** 12 weeks.

c) 12 hours.

d) 12 years.

Complete the following dialogue:



Kareem: The holiday will be in two weeks. Are you happy?

Hanan: Of course. I'm (1) _____ to travel.

Kareem: Where are you going to travel?

Kareem: Wow! Are you going to (3) ......your family?

Hanan: No, I'm going to travel with my uncle Sayed.

Kareem: (4) ......you stay there?.

Hanan: Two weeks.

Kareem: I hope you enjoy your time there.

Hanan : (5) ......





#### Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Amir. I am twelve years old. We have a small toy shop in our town. My father says Fridays are the busiest day in our toy shop. So after we have breakfast, my mum takes me there to help my dad. That's another reason why I like Fridays. We let children play with the toys when they are in the store. My father says I should watch the toys and that I need to make sure nothing breaks. Many children from my school also come to the shop to look at our new toys. It is always noisy here, because there are a lot of babies and small children. Little girls like to go for dolls, boys go for cars. Some just want to play with the toys, some really want to buy them. It's a bit tiring for me, but I like going to the shop and helping my father.

A) Answer the f	ollowing question  Amir help his father	S:	
② What do th	e girls like to look a		
What does	the underlined "the	re" refer to?	00 1977 (
	orrect answer from	n a, b, c or d:	
-	helping		
a) minds	<ul><li>b) dislikes</li></ul>	c) hates	d) enjoys
The word "s	tore" means a	negaman birida, (bilb d) es ( a lip lavora - v	
a) shop	b) toy	c) doll	<b>d)</b> kid
6 Amir is	years	old.	
	<b>b</b> ) twenty		d) eight
D	Vocabulary a	ınd Structure	
	t answer from a,		10
<b>3</b> A	is a hole just	under the ground.	
a) bridge	b) tunnel	c) pyramid	d) cave
Hassan	windsu	rfing with his famil	y last weekend.
a) did	<b>b</b> ) played	c) went	d) made
	person who	buildings.	
a) designs	b) flies	c) writes	d) builds

4 You should		m the cold. Put on yo	ur coat.
a) protect	b) help	c) sting	d) hit
There's a	in the living	room where I can rel	ax.
a) sofa	<b>b</b> ) table	c) TV	d) book
Crossing roads is	a neglekykanen nyénkembankan dagah kutang biji lan iga a	for old people.	
<ul> <li>a) dangerous</li> </ul>	b) flat	c) poisonous	d) crowded
My father sent n	ne a/an	which contains	a new camera.
a) parcel	<b>b</b> ) letter	c) email	d) post
The weather	fine th	is morning.	
a) was	b) did	c) are	d) does
<ul><li>If I feel thirsty, I</li></ul>	always	water.	
a) will drink	<b>b</b> ) drinks	c) drank	d) drink
<b>1</b> We	work hard to pas	s our exams.	
a) shouldn't	<b>b</b> ) mustn't	c) won't	d) must
<b>5</b> Read and correct	: the underlined w	vords:	(A)
What are the g	irls does now?		(
2 This room below	ngs to me and my	brother. It's mine.	()
_	me peppers in the		()
		e school, I aren't ver	
	Ph of EIGHTY (80)	riting )	
			6
	All adve	enture sport"	
****************************	77 I 4 5 6 8 8 8 6 6 6 6 7 7 7 6 6 7 8 7 6 7 7 7 7	/*	*******************************
************************			**************************************
4447714044741882808240844444	***************************	************************	\$ 4 44\$ \$ 45 7 4 7\$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$
hadha- oh- erottomenwittiggph		Manhattadan	1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1
***************************************			क के के साथ है के कि का के समय सकत व्यवस्था कर के स्थाप के कि साथ के क स्थाप के कि साथ कि साथ के कि साथ के कि साथ के कि स
	·		
	***************************************		·····································
25	P# 90 0 1 1 1 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2	90 hm-s 5 b b 1 1 4 < 5 0 5 5 2 4 0 4 0 1 2 5 4 5 4 5 4 5 4 5 4 5 4 5 6 6 6 6 7	. ************************************
33			हे के प्रमृक्षित स्थाप प्रमृक्षित स्थल स्थल स्थल स्थल है के स्थल स्थल है के स्थल स्थल स्थल स्थल स्थल स्थल स्थल





### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب



- Which sea animal is the slowest?
  - a) The turtle.

b) The stingray.

c) The octopus.

- d) The shark.
- Which sea animal is poisonous?
  - a) The turtle.

b) The stingray.

c) The octopus.

- d) The whale.
- Why does the turtle have a shell?
  - a) To eat it.

b) To protect it.

c) To drink it.

- d) To build it.
- 4 How many legs does the octopus have?
  - a) Eight.
- b) Six.
- c) Four.
- d) Two.

### B Language Functions

#### 2 Complete the following dialogue:



Marwa: Good morning, Menna. Where were you yesterday?

Menna: Good morning, Marwa. I travelled to Alex (1)...... my family.

Marwa: Really! (2)...... did you visit there?

Menna: We went to the beach in the early morning.

Marwa: What did you do after that?

Menna: We went to the (3)......where we saw a lot of animals.

Marwa: Wow! What a fantastic place!

Menna: Also, we went to Alexandria Library.

Marwa: (4)..... return to Cairo?

Menna: (5)...... 11 o'clock p.m.



### Reading Comprehension



### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Yesterday was Sunday. I had a terrible day. I got up at seven thirty in the morning. I got dressed and packed my school bag. I missed the school bus because I was late. I took a taxi to school, I arrived at school very late. My teacher was very angry with me. He asked me for my homework but I forgot my notebook. I felt really sad. I went back home at three o'clock. My little brother was hot. We took him to hospital and finally he got better. I was worried about him. When we went back home, it was night and I couldn't do my homework. What a terrible day I had!

A) Answer the follo  O How did he go	wing question to school?	nadi Is:	
2 Why did he arr	ive at school ve	ry late?	7 h M s = かかりか 中央の間間の前間でかけるがです。
How was his b	rother when he	went back home after scho	ool?
B) Choose the corr			a duning fide of enemy and addressed a
a) half past se	ven	b) quarter past seven	
c) quarter to s  My teacher wa		d) seven se l	
<ul><li>a) didn't do m</li><li>c) forgot my n</li><li>l returned hor</li></ul>	otebook	b) forgot my book d) lost my notebook	
<ul><li>a) in the morr</li><li>c) at night</li></ul>	ning	<ul><li>b) in the afternoon</li><li>d) at noon</li></ul>	
D	TO CONTRACTOR OF THE SECOND OF	randStructure )	(10)
Choose the correct		a, b, c or d: He always flies planes ard	aund the world.
a) engineer	b) pilot	c) dentist	d) scientist
a) played	<b>b)</b> did	ekend. It was wonderful. c) had	d) went



When did the a	ccident	2	•
a) result	b) cause	-1.1.	
4 He was born	2nd Mar	c) happen	d) get
a) on	b) in		
6 My son always !	ikes to spend time	c) at his frier	d) by
6 Nardeen is goin	g to	c) to her lunch at a nice	d) in
a) make	b) have	c) give	erestaurant.
7 His	is to play for a	c) give big club and become	d) design
a) research	b) dream	c) test	a great footballer.
There	a dog in his	s house yesterday. I co	d) planet
	** *** CI311 L	el lacoro	
Additional contents over 1 marging to be to debogs	high is th	Te Caizo Towara	d) weren't
a) How	b) When		
Merna hasn't got	any brothers	c) Which	d) What
a) has Merna	b) does Merna		
			d) does she
6 Read and correct the	1e underlined w	orde	
			4
1 Ali is the nicer neighbour in our street.			(**************************************
2 My father bought a new villa on 2016.			()
roumustn't follow the school rules			
Soha will do the h	nomework tomor	row.will she?	()
			\$ 1-21.0220.011114011401100}
	(F) Mat	tina )	
6 Weiss	The Same of the Same		
6 Write a paragraph o	f EIGHTY (80) w	ords on:	
<b>"</b> H	OW you coost w	our last weekend"	
*********	ow you spent yo	our last weekend	
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	**********	#P###K##440=0440  046  ##\$\$#########	
***************************************	****************		#### > 4 #   # w \ Q4 \ D \ \
Table to be a part of a post when the state of the state			
Tin bandananan ratas		145000 mmond grid berbarreben.	nedes liberoruphes dibe.
***************************************	4		Perdagane and damage and an arrange and arrange arrange and arrange arrang
*Iq I O O O O O O O O O O O O O O O O O O	****************************	145 )   4   B   B   4   4   4   4   4   4   4	4 9 63 7 5 9 7 5 6 9 5 6 12 5 6 12 5 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7
**************************************			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
		***************************************	*****************************
3		· 有农业工工会工业会理解需要提供基础基础企业企业企业企业企业企业企业企业企业企业企业企业企业企业企业企业企业企业	
35		*******************************	44/404 pag = 2744
*******			Angura tanan chee annan tanan
	4 > = = = = + + + + + + + + + + + + + + +	泰斯····································	(67)







- 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
  - - a) modern b) new
      - c) ancient d) present
  - How many houses were there in Deir el-Medina?
    - a) 68. b) 86.
    - c) 80. d) 60.
  - What colour were their doors?
    - a) White. b) Blue.
    - c) Black. d) Red.
  - What were the doors made of?
    - a) Wood. b) Bricks.
    - c) Plastic. d) Metal.

### B) Language Runctions )

Complete the following dialogue:

Ramy : Is this your first visit to Egypt?

Tourist: Yes, it is.

Tourist: I visited the Pyramids and the Grand Egyptian (2)......

Ramy : How (3)...... you stay in Egypt?

Tourist: I'll stay here for 2 weeks.

Ramy : Are you going to visit other places?

Ramy : What places will you visit there?

Tourist: I'll visit the Karnak (5).....







# ( Reading Comprehension )



# 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

There are fish in seas, rivers and lakes. There are over 30.000 kinds of fish in the world. Their sizes range from 2 cm to 20 cm long. Their fins and tails are used in swimming. Most fish feed on other fish. Some eat plants. Fish are very important food. We also get other products from fish such as fish oil and glue. Now, fishing has become a big industry. There are lots of fish farms in many countries today. These provide big amounts of fish for eating and processing.

A) Answer the  Where do	fish live?	ns:	**************************************
How many	kinds of fish are th	ere?	2 g M 2 c d g q 2 c l 18 m 2 c g   1 c q c b b c s s s s c a 2 c d s 2 c s s c a 2 c d c b b c
S How big a	re fish?	s - s s y dy't o og ( 7 H i H s s y y H H p y d I i dy y diff s om del s' diss ha dels s s no e	w 440+ 46 ( 4 p x 342 ) 2 @ \$-\$ 6 6 6 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8
<ul> <li>a) fins</li> <li>a) fins</li> <li>The underling</li> <li>a) fish</li> <li>c) many course</li> <li>Most fish feature</li> </ul>		b) fish farms d) the amounts of fish	d) a&b d) glue
4 Choose the correct			10
There is no juice	in the glass. It's	c) big	d) empty
2 A sea	b) turtle	shell to protect it. c) whale	d) stingray
3 We went to the	to	c) museum each Alexandria to me c) a long	d) stadium eet my friends. d) longs



	My father boug	ht a new house. We	to i	t two months ago
	a) moved	b) rode	c) swam	d) removed
	6 My work is nea	r my home. It is 100 n	netres	Davonie
	a) way	<b>b)</b> a way	c) away	d) ways
	My family sits b	y the fire to		-7 Wdy5
	a) give	<b>b</b> ) do	c) keep	d) go
	If I feel hungry,	l always	healthy sn:	arke
	a) will eat	b) eats	c) ate	
	You want to be	a teacher,		d) eat
	a) don't	<b>b)</b> don't you	c) do you	-13 f
	10 In the future,	we will not	t/do you	<b>d)</b> do (
	watch films on	tablets.	ΤΟ	cinemas, we will
	a)go	<b>b)</b> went	c) gone	d) goes
	Read and correct	t the underlined wo		7,5=05
	Mo did-u	4		
'	We didn't go to the university if we don't pass our exams.  A: Do you happy? B: Yes, I am.			ns. ()
	Jan Do you nap	py: <b>B:</b> Yes, I am.		()
	Misurant fill	es when it <u>was</u> cold.		()
	s your father	old than your mother	?	()
		E) Will	droj ))	( The state of the
	6 Write a paragra	ph of EIGHTY (80) w	Ords	
		"Recyc		6
	***************************************			**************************************
	FF514	*************************************		5 ÷ 4 h u m d u e d 4 f 4 h 5 h h u u h d 5 h d 4 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d 2 h d
	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	************************************		\$4 = 3 & \$4 & 5 & 5 & 5 & 7 & 5 & 5 & 7 & 7 & 7 & 7
		***************************************		10 444 6 6 74 8 8 6 6 6 7 7 7 7 8 8 1 6 7 7 9 9 9 9 9 9 7 7 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1
		********************************		***************************************
		,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	då sapopasa pri de spadar i braepud paradore	***************************************
		*}*************************************	**************************************	*******************
	35	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	******************************	***************************************
		## (***********************************	***************************************	144141414444



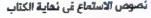






- 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
  - ص الاستماع في نماية الكتاب









c) Pollution.

d) Seeds.

What can you plant?

a) A nut.

b) A fruit.

c) Both a and b.

d) Neither a nor b.

Who should help save our planet?

a) Rich people.

b) Some people.

c) Everyone.

d) No one.

What can help to keep our air healthy?

a) Trees.

b) Pollution.

c) Cars.

d) Planes.



- 2 Complete the following dialogue:
  - Lamees: Hello, Nora. What a beautiful T-shirt!

: Hi, Lamees. (1)...... you very much. Nora

Lamees : Is it new?

Nora : (2)....., I bought it yesterday.

Lamees: (3)...... is it?

Nora: It is 500 pounds.

Lamees: Where (4)..... it?

: I bought it from El Horia Mall. Nora

Lamees: What is it made of?

: It is made of (5)..... Nora





# ( Reading Comprehension



Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name's Sherief. I love football. I am a great fan of all football teams. I am also interested in cars. I'm crazy about driving and I also enjoy fixing cars. When I was ten, I had many toy cars. I played with them, repaired the ones my friends broke. I also helped my dad fix his car. So, I want to become a mechanic and open up my own shop. My parents are happy with my choice, too. They think it's important that I do a job that I like. I have a good job now and I really enjoy it. I'm planning to get married soon. Who knows, maybe I will have a car shop in the future.

	•	car shop in the	-	ca 30011. Wilo kilows,
		<b>owing questic</b> loes Sherief like	≘?	
<b>2</b> W			nk of his choice to be	a mechanic?
<b>3</b> W			ronoun " <u>them</u> " refer	
			om a, b, c or d: e is	99   T   T   C   11 M   11 M   17 P   C   C   C   C   C   C   C   C   C
a) c)	Sherief's jo Sherief and	b choice football	b) Cars in our life d) Sherief and his	s friends
a) <b>③</b> Sh	car nerief helpe	<b>b)</b> toy	c) toy car his car	d) car shop
	(D)	Vocabular	y and Structure	
4 Choose	the correct	t answer from	a, b, c or d:	
My fa	ther likes tr	aditional musi	C	10
1 In the	never I go o ilt	won't have to	c) stav	d) the betterhome before dark. d) returnbecause cars will
a) div		<b>b)</b> fly	c) drive	d) design

Scientists will tr	y to	cures for cancer.	
a) watch	b) take	c) find	d) teach
A Press your finge	er	the soil to make a	small hole about
2 cm deep.			
	<b>b)</b> on	c) into	d) for
The walls of the	villa were made of	fThe	y are very strong.
	b) plastic	CI Glass	U) Direits
O INTO USO 3	to know	the meaning of new wo	oras.
- Litchoard	b) diary	Clulcuonery	d) notebook
O 1.	s your dirti	lady: Di it's in may	d) Who's
and a	hi who	CLASSION	a) wiles
My sister made t	his delicious cake	a) ourselves	d) herself
			houses
A There	any kitche	ens in ancient Egyptiar	d) aren't
a) wasn't	b) weren't	c) isn't	a) alcire
		. Jan	
Read and correct th	ne underlined wo	oras:	
Travelling by car i	s good than trave	liting by bus.	(
• If we heat ice, it w	ill become water.		()
والمرابط الإحالات المحالات	a well vesterday.		(,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
You must eat too	much meat. It is b	ad for you.	<b>\</b>
	E Write	ing )	
<b>6</b> Write a paragraph o	FIGHTY (80) WO	ords on:	6
wnte a paragraphi o	How will life be	in the future?"	
·	HOW WIN INC DC		,
4=+2240444444444444444444444444444444444			*********************
444900641244464404444444444444444444444	(中国中华美华中国美国工作人名 人名 人名西西班牙斯特尔		4 4 0 2 2 7 7 8 8 2 8 4 8 2 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8
toldadelocupess standabout essent at 44 st	\$ \$ 1 d   \$ 1 D   \$ 1 + 4 + 4 + 4 + 4 + 4 + 4 + 4 + 4 + 4 +		***********************
***********************************	P	) (	***********
491944511504,1599014114590944044400440			*****************
***************************************		141.***********************************	
************		413444444444444444	
**************************	14164946BBC0696949BB001VV-1477	(11   E   1   1   1   1   1   1   1   1	
	> # 40 4 m 40 4 m 10 4 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0		
	) # 4 # 5 E E 6 E E E 4 E E E E E E E E E E E E E	******************************	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
35	******************************		******************







A Line	ton and choose the correct at	nswer from	a, b, c or d:
--------	-------------------------------	------------	---------------

صوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب



- The walls of the houses were made of .....
  - a) wood

b) glass

c) iron

- d) bricks
- Which colour did people paint their houses with?
  - a) Red only.

b) White only.

c) White and red.

- d) Orange.
- What weren't at their houses?
  - a) Doors.

b) Kitchens.

c) Living rooms.

d) Bedrooms.

- Where did they sleep?
  - a) On the roof.

b) In the kitchen.

c) In the living room.

d) On the walls.

# B Language Functions )

# 2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed: Hi, Ashraf, would you like to go out with me this weekend?

Ashraf: Sure. (1) we do?

Ahmed: I don't know. Do you have any ideas?

Ashraf: How (2)..... to the cinema?

Ahmed: That sounds great. Which film shall we watch?

Ashraf : Let's (3) a comic film for Ade: Emain.

Ashraf: Really! Let's watch another one.

Ahmed: How about watching an action film?

Ashraf: Great (5).....





# ( Reading Comprehension )

# Read the following, then answer the questions:



Sarah loved drawing. She practised drawing a lot. She knew how to draw nature. She could draw people. She did not know how to draw animals. She decided it was time to learn. She searched for instructions online. She also borrowed books. She studied what she found, She looked at many images. She decided to practise. She wanted to start with something easy. She first chose a dog. After many tries, she finally got it. She traced the outline. She then coloured it. She was proud of herself. She decided to take a break. Tomorrow, she would learn how to draw a bear.

	ollowing quest barah's favourite		
<b>1</b> Which tech	nology helped S	arah to learn drawi	ng?
<b>3</b> Why was Sa	arah proud of he		***************************************
	orrect answer fi		#11MAMIAPE499866 YAAN DYEESEESONGESONGESONSESONSESONSESONSE
		c) mountains	•
		to	***
a) pictures	b) books	c) pieces	d) sites
6 Sarah decid	led to learn to dr	aw a	tomorrow.
a) bear	b) snake	c) monkey	d) giraffe
D	Vocabulary	y and Structur	e
Choose the corre	ct answer from	a, b, c or d:	10
My father likes	to listen to	music. He li	kes old songs.
	b) pop	c) jazz	d) rock
We went to the		and rode on the b	ig wheel.
almuseum	6) library	c) funfair	d) stadium.
My brother always	avs	mistakes, so my	father punishes him.
a) does	h) takes	c) gives	d) makes
When will you	ł	powling?	
	b) have	c) go	d) draw



My wife used the		to make us some cak	es.
a) oven	b) tap	c) stone	d) wool
6 How	is the Lake B	aikal in Russia?	
a) many	b) much	c) deep	d) high
The children sat on		on the floor while w	atching the film.
a) teaspoons	b) curtains	c) cushions	d) statues
Books *************************	of pap	er.	
a) made	b) are made	c) is made	d) are making
When I was in Alex		up early ever	y day.
a) am getting	<b>b</b> ) getting	c) get	d) got
Who is ***********************************	, Ali or	his sister?	
a) tall	b) more tall	c) taller	d) taller than
<b>5</b> Read and correct th	o undorlinad v	vorde.	
_			4
<ul><li>Next year, I spent</li><li>If I ate too many s</li></ul>			()
There weren't any			( ## 4 ## 5 Mardon 1-494 4 4 August 199 )
_		e.	(**************************************
@ People <u>must</u> smol	ke in nospitais.		(
	E W	riting )	
6 Write a paragraph	of EIGHTY (80)	words on	
			6
	nouses in	ancient Egypt"	
**************************	******************	######################################	
*************************			**************************************
********************************	~		· 供导 即服 取 我 难 新 数 数 图 技 电 建 有 遗 遗 物 智 生 最 在 斯 本 电 不 看 多期 电 图 化 化 化 化 化 化 化
***************************************	****************	;	**************************************
(++44++++4++++++++++++++++++++++++++++			# 4 4 9 4 4 4 4 4 5 5 5 6 6 4 4 4 4 5 5 7 4 4 4 5 6 7 6 6 6 7 6 6 6 7 6 6 7 6 6 7 6 6 7 6 6 7 6 6 7 6 6 7 6 6 7
) * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	), , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	LIII dagaa oo aa a
	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	#}4************************************	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
		444	
35	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		
	. 4 6 6 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7	日(春·日春·日日)十日日 下水(旬)十二八分 四四十四日 日子日 藤衛田子 金、男 李田田教学 B	电特特特朗特色传播器 经营销额 医皮肤硬变生物 经存货帐 医加克特奇氏病 医克克克氏病







## Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب What is the most dangerous sea animal in the ocean?

a) The turtle.

b) The shark.

c) The jellyfish.

- d) The octopus.
- 2 How many teeth does a shark use in its life?
  - a) 200.

**b)** 200,000.

c) 2,000.

- **d)** 20,000.
- A: What is the shark? B: It's a ...... animal.
  - a) desert

**b**) forest

c) sea

d) wild

- What is the text about?
  - a) The whale.

b) The shark.

c) The dolphin.

d) The jellyfish.

# B Language Functions

# 2 Complete the following dialogue:



Omar : Do you like sports, Khaled?

Omar : (2)...... do you prefer, a water sport or

a mountain one?

Khaled: I like water sports.

Omar : What kind of water sports do you like?

Khaled: I like sailing. What about you?

Omar : I prefer (3)......

Khaled: Why (4).....trekking?

Omar : Because I like the nature.

Khaled: I like the nature, (5)......

# (C) Reading Comprehension



Read the following, then answer the questions:

After graduating from the university, John knew he would need to find a job soon. The problem was that he wasn't sure what kind of work he wanted to do. One night, his father encouraged him to do what he liked most. His father said he had worked his whole life doing a job he didn't really enjoy,

John's favourite job was teaching. He was happy when he was helping others. John also learned that you should work at the job you like to do well at it. He wrote a book about his experiences, and today he tells his story to university students.

What was	f <mark>ollowing questio</mark> John's problem?		
	John's favourite jo	b?	
	John happy?		
S) Choose the o	correct answer fro		
<ul><li>a) chose h</li><li>c) didn't w</li></ul>		<ul><li>b) couldn't choos</li><li>d) loved his fathe</li></ul>	
<ul><li>a) he didn</li><li>c) he want</li><li>⑤ John wrote</li></ul>	't hate red e a	<ul><li>b) he enjoyed</li><li>d) he didn't enjoy</li><li>about his experi</li></ul>	ences.
		c) book	
	ect answer from a		10
a) himself	b) herself	c) yourself	d) myself
a) whom	b) when		d) who
My father will o	give me a prize if l . <b>b)</b> gets	c) not	full mark in the exam

You can usually paper, so don't throw it away.				
	a) recycle	b) cycle	c) heat	d) hit
	Two years ago,	I visited a	to see how it a	can protect animals.
	a) poster	b) radio station	c) pot	d) nature reserve
	6 She bought a working prope	new washing	becaus	e her old one isn't
	a) machine	b) meeting	c) article	d) engine
	Most windows	are made of	18394846Attinatenisekuroste (	_
	a) wool	b) glass	c) cotton	d) paper
	O The thief	my brot	her and stole his	s money.
	a) hit	b) stung	c) protected	d) poisoned
	My teacher alw	ays gives me a/an	present wh	nen I get high marks.
	a) bad	b) afraid	c) scary	d) special
	When we go ca	amping, we usually slee	ep in a	donovánia dama vidno - V
	a) room	b) bed	c) tent	d) flat
E		t the underlined word		A
		e water, it <u>turned</u> into i		(**************************************
	We're going to	hurt yourselves if we're	e not careful.	( *************************************
	Ali, whose join	ed the Faculty of Medi	cine, is my neigh	bour. ()
	My daughter is	quieter then my son.		()
		<b>E</b> Writin	ng )	
6	Write a paragrap	h of EIGHTY (80) wor	ds on:	6
		"A historic place	you visited"	_
	*****************	***************************************	# <b>**</b>	.05}5375448888888444446600000000000000000000000
	************************		# 44	母母 医乳腺素素 建四面 医西西耳耳神经神经 化二十分 化二氯化物 计合作 有名的 化化
	***********************		**********************	U 10 Y 1 P 10 9 E 10 P 10 Y 10 P 10 P 10 P 10 P 10 P 10 P
	*			1 5 5 5 5 4 4 1 6 4 4 6 5 7 7 7 4 5 4 5 6 6 5 7 7 7 4 6 6 5 7 7 7 7 7 8 8 8 8 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8
	#005EB##5+4016###24## > 0.40 **********************************			9454# 82 84 8994 69 = 6 > 1 4 4 4 8 8 4 6 8 4 4 8 4 4 8 4 4 8 4 4 8 4 4 8 4 4 8 4 4 8 4 4 8 4 4 8 4 4 8 4 4 8 4
		PRE		***************************************
		**************************************		***************************************
	35	Personal professional residence of the second secon		
		HAPIRAGREDIS   COSCOPIONO DE CONTROL O CANONIONI		





# A Listening

DListen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نصوص الاستمام في نماية الكتاب



- Where are the three places?
  - a) In Alexandria.

b) In Luxor.

c) In Assuit.

- d) In Tanta.
- What is the most popular place for tourists to visit?
  - a) Alexandria beach.

b) The Habu Temple.

c) The Karnak Temple.

- d) The Valley of the Kings.
- - a) the most popular place
- b) the quietest place

c) the biggest place

- d) the least crowded place
- A: Why is Habu Temple the quietest place? B: Because it is ......
  - a) less crowded

b) the most popular place

c) more crowded

d) the most interesting place

# B) Language Functions )

Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed: Where did you spend your last weekend?

Said : I went to the (1).....

Ahmed: Really! Who did you go with?

Said :1(2)..... with my cousins.

Ahmed: What did you do there?

Said : I rode (3)..... the big wheel.

Ahmed: (4) enjoy there?

Said: Yes, I had a nice time.

Ahmed: (5) going to spend the next weekend?

Said : We're going to visit the Grand Egyptian Museum.



# Reading Comprehension

# Read the following, then answer the questions:



Basmala loves to swim. She loves sea animals. Her friends bought her tickets to the aquarium as a present on her birthday. She was so happy. She took her camera to the aquarium. She was ready to take a lot of pictures. She saw twentyfive different types of fish. She saw a whale. She saw a turtle. She saw an octopus and a stingray. She saw a jellyfish and a shark. Her favourite were the whales. She thinks they are cute and friendly. She bought a picture album at th

	and the pict	wie arburn, what a	e album at the gift shop, good day!
Wallsmer rise i	ollowing questic esmala's friends bu	me.	· ·
	types of fish did s		
400400000000000000000000000000000000000	Basmala like whale		
B) Choose the c	orrect answer fr	om a, b, c or d:	00   \$0   \$0   \$0   \$0   \$0   \$0   \$0
Basmala lo	ves	animals	
a) forest	<b>b</b> ) desert	c) sea	d) wild
a) whale	avourite type of fi b) stingray	sh was the	
<b>6</b> The underl	ined pronoun "the	Cy octopus	d) turtle
a) turtles	b) sharks	c) whales	d) octopuses
D	Vocabulary		
Choose the corre	ect answer from a	h cord	
My little broth	er always	a, b, c or d:	10/
a) makes	b) does	c) takes	
	ns get their water	, takes	d) goes the Nile River
-, ut	D) into	c) for	d) from
When Santiago	returned to his l	home on the beac	h, he had no fish, only
a) skeleton		<b>b</b> ) glove	
c) rubbish bag		d) headpho	one

		terection.
(3 Technology will	our lives easier and more in	ricresurig,
(1) Technology Will	c) make	d)leave
a) have	has more space for	Objects,
a) have  b) take  The Grand Egyptian Museum	c) ugly	d) boring
a) valuable b) bad	man with a big stick and esca	ped.
a) valuable b) bad  The thief the	c) protected	d) poisoned
a) hit b) stung	things from the	
a) hit b) stung  At school, children like to buy	many things h	d) hall
At school, Children b) uniform	m of the museum is th	e entrance.
a) canteen b) uniform beauti	iful parts of the most	d) most
b) the mo	ore controller to several average and several average average and several average and several average aver	
a) more b) the mo	d left in the party yesterday.	<b>d</b> ) aren't
b) weren'	t c) isn't	ajarent
We moved to this house	2015.	allabic
niiai	c) ago	d) this
a) in	_	
6 Read and correct the underline	ed words:	•
Read and Correct Re He's	okav.	
A: How is Kareem feel? B: He's	sus sea animal.	(**************************************
The shark is the more dangero	does Walend?	( mp tdox g do stq hrostphin 4544)
• Waleed doesn't like eating tist	i, does waterd.	(
You shouldn't walking too mu	ch in the sun.	
(E)	Writing )	
	oo) words on:	5
6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (8		
"A na	ture reserve"	
	)\$	
	************************************	> p
	\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$	医甲磺丙酚 命 医如果 泰學 微微微微微微微微微微微微微
4,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,		· 表示 · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
***************************************		· 医数子医疗 电磁压力 除水 医水色电烙管 医有医水溶水 医54.5
2474-9-17->		· 硫甲汞磺胺 中國企業 化二甲汞化镍铁 医可克耳氏炎体 Pa. H
		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
25	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
39	***************************************	·查求下值查验程与传统信息中华和一





1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



- What is the widest pridge in the world?
  - a) 6th of October bridge.

b) El-Waraq bridge.

c) The American bridge.

- d) the Tahya Masr bridge.
- A: How many people worked to build it? B: More than
  - a) four hundred

b) four thousand

c) four million

- d) four men
- @ What is the floor made of?
  - a) Stone.

b) Ceramic.

c) Glass.

- d) Iron.
- What is the best time to cross the bridge?
  - a) At sunset.

b) At sunrise.

- c) in the early morning.
- d) At night.



2 Complete the following dialogue:





Sama : She is in (1).....

Menna: Why is she there?

Sama : (2) ......she had an accident.

Menna: (3) have the accident?

Sama : Last week.

Menna: Are you going to visit her?

Sama : | (4) her yesterday.

Menna: Why (5)..... tell me?

Sama : Because you were absent yesterday.



# ( Reading Comprehension )



# 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

One day, a lion put his foot on a mouse who climbed on the body of the lion. "Oh, please, sir, don't eat me!" shouted the little animal. "If you let me go, I will help you some time." The lion smiled, and let him go. Not long after that, some men put a net in the forest and the lion ran into it and could not get out. He knew that if he stayed there until morning the men would find him and kill him. The mouse heard him shouting and ran to help him. Lion still a while and I will help you," he said. Then he began to cut the net with his small teeth and soon cut the net in pieces. "You laughed at me once," he said, "as if you thought I was too little to help you. But I helped as I said." The lion thanked the mouse and they became friends.

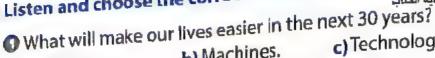
A) Answer the follo What is the ma	wing questions: in idea of the pas	,	
2 What does the	underlined prono	oun "it " refer to?	
Why do you thi	ink the lion smiled	1?	**************************************
B) Choose the corre	ect answer from a	a, b, c or d: to catch the lion.	P-1/AA-01145-19-0001-19-00-00-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-
<ul><li>a) animals</li><li>The mouse cut</li></ul>	b) lions	c) mice	d) men
a) feet  The lion	<b>b)</b> teeththe i	<b>c)</b> head mouse for his gre	d) leas
	<b>b)</b> laughed at		d) ate
D	ocabulary a	nd Structure	
Choose the correct a	answer from a, b	, c or d:	10
1'm going to travel	nearly 500 kilom	etres	the mountains.
a) through		•	d) cross
② I hope that I	my e	exams so that I car	go to the university.
a) succeed	b) pass	c) fail	d) get

		uco iba	1 -	-
	<b>6</b> Wind	Is truly to	to produce electricit	V
	• When we went to	the	We saw	a) planes
	a) exhibition	b) funfair	c) museum	aut tul fish.
	6 pertratitues and bertretten myneterities	my lunch with m	y friend because he v	d) aquarium
	a) shared	b) agreed	c) took	vas hungry.
	O We can get electri	city from	CITOOK	d) filled
	a) signs	D) rockets	-1	
	♠ The Grand Egyptia	an Museum	c) solar panels	d) drones
	a) walked	b) wolsomed	c) solar panels	itors in 2010
	↑ Nevt summer 1	b) welcomed	c) opened	d) made
	a) going to	h) and the	avel to England.	-/riage
	ar going to	□ dm doing to	-1 -	d\ anin
	o you will	to the mo	on one day	d) going
	a, go	D) Went	-1	83
	***************************************	year, I spent my l	oliday in Paris	d) went
	a) in	b) Ago	c) Last	
G	n .			d) Yesterday
U	Read and correct th	ne underlined word	ds:	
	Planes are fast the	an trains		4
	2 You mustn't look	after your health		(**************************************
	3 Ali, whose bough	it a new car, is my ne	-1-1-1	(
	There will be any	accidents in the fut	eighbour.	
		accidents in the fut	ure.	()
		111 40		
		(E) Writi		
6	Write			
	mite a paragraph	of EIGHTY (80) wor	rds on:	
		"The job you wou	المالية معماما	6
	4400100044	THE JOB YOU WOU	nd like to do	
			\$=#\$=\$=\$0\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$	*****************
		**************************		× p 44 0 € 2 \$00 0 ₹ 0 \$0 € 8 4 € 8 € 8 € 8 € 8
	**************************	***************************************		0 M M M D D D 1 4 3 4 1 4 2 4 2 4 2 4 2 4 2 4 2 4 2 4 2 4 2
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	*****************************	· 医皮肤皮肤 医乳腺 医乳腺 医乳腺 医乳腺 医乳腺 医多数	D # 0 C O O O O O O O O O O O O O O O O O O
				raddines addicabligator a
		****************************	**************************************	# 4 >>> # # ## 4 \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$
	35	74744417484741664746114141441441646744	4022702030220000000000000000000000000000	AANSPANNESSERVAAN PRANSESS
		********************************	distant the section of a distance of the section of	



# Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



- c) Technology. b) Machines.
- d) Apps.

- a) Changes. What will phones have in the next 30 years?
  - b) Images for everything.
  - a) Apps for everything. d) Cameras.
- c) a lot of changes
  - b) few changes a) no changes
- Will our lives be more interesting in 30 years' time?
  - b) No. a) Yes.
- c) Sorry.
- d) No way.

d) nothing

# Language Functions

Complete the following dialogue:

: Hi, Hossam! How are you now? Ali

Hossam : Fine! (1)......go out last night?

(2)Ali

Hossam: (3).....?

: Because it rained hard last night.

Hossam: What did you do then?

; I (4).....TV. Ali

Hossam: What was there on TV?

:There (5)...... a nice film for Ahmed Helmy. Ali

Hossam: Oh! I saw that film, too.





# Read the following, then answer the questions:

#### Dear Marwa,

I didn't hear from you for a long time. I hope you are well. I had a terrible day at school yesterday. My friends and I were playing volleyball in the playground when I suddenly fell. At first, I didn't feel much pain, but later on my leg started hurting badly. I couldn't walk, so my friends helped me around. They took me to a hospital and stayed with me until my mum and dad arrived. The doctor saidit was broken and I needed to rest for W kr

Ve came home last night and	I feel bottom and I needed to rest for a
now how valuable my friend	I feel better now. This accident also made me
nem. So I want to say I feel ve	I feel better now. This accident also made me s are. I don't know what I would do without ry happy to have such good friends like you.
Yours	maye such good friends like
Answer the following que	estions.
Million do an D	THE REAL PROPERTY OF THE PROPE

them. So I want to sa Yours Doaa	ay I feel very hap	ppy to have such	at I would do without good friends like you.
A) Answer the following Why does Doa	a feel happy?	s:	
2 When did that	accident happe	en?	·····································
3 What do you t	hink Doaa want	s us to know in h	Pre-mail
B) Choose the corr	O	B.A. q. a. 4. — 4. 1. 9.4. 4. 4. 4. 4. 4. 4. 4. 4. 4. 4. 4. 4.	
B) Choose the corr O She won't be a) week	of year	nool for a	Traidmen wadmin @
a) her lea	d pronoun "it" r	efers to	d) day
The accident	happened at	c) her dad	d) her friends
	-1 Hospital	c) school	d) street
	Vocabulary	and Structu	re
cile correct	answay fun		
(a) environment	rekking across S	inai. It's going to	be a big
c) development		<b>b)</b> advente	ure
② A/Ana) earthquake		d) experin	nent
a) earthquake	Caused da	mage to many bu	ıildings.
My brother likes twice a week,	<b>b)</b> aquarium i swimming, so	c) reserve he goes to the sv	d) alley vimming
a) ball We always put the	1.5		<b>d</b> ) aquarium
a) rubbish	b) planet	c) fishing	ine d) shell

PART (3)			
	tunlkind	the bridge.	
Many people e	njoy walking	c) a cross	d) course
a) across	b) cross	ent the seeds to grov	V.
G The	is where we pro	c) soil	d) gym
a) nature reser	ve b) stone	. the e	xams.
1'm very worrier	d about the results	c) by	d) with
a) of	b) from	the Karnak To	emple.
O The	place we went	to was the Karnak To	d) biggest
			a) Mygest
• We're going to	divir	ig in the	ts mate.
	A-1 14/E-1111	-, -	d) going
a) go  O When did Dina's	s family	to the restauran	t/
	b) went	c) going	d) gone
a) 90			
Poad and correct	the underlined w	ords:	4
O le my opinion t	he better and quie	etest place we visited	was
in my opinion, t	ne <u>better</u> dissi		()
the Habu Templ			()
2 You don't like fis			(
We mustn't arriv	eto work late.	eto coasso in the futu	re? ()
Will there being	rockets to traver in	nto space in the futu	t La i
	(F) Mei	tina )	
	(E) WA		
	CEICLIEV (CO)	anda ana	
Write a paragraph	or ElGHTY (80) W	oras on:	6
	"A great proj	ect in Egypt"	
	ppa, a p a 4 + 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2	***************************************	
			医红色素 医甲基氏 医水杨素 化合金 医甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基
<b>****************</b>		********************************	. 24. 24. 25. 26. 26. 27. 27. 27. 28. 28. 28. 28. 28. 28. 28. 28. 28. 28
		\$11011b944b941141144411541151555555	***************************************
	######################################		1 D 1 A BH 1 B 4 M 2 D L W 7 4 A 4 0 2 A 6 0 B 2 F 4 E 1 A 1 D E E E E
			化水子混合物 医自己含化物 医感染性 电电压管 医皮肤性 医皮肤性 化合金化合金
35	,		
****	**************************	***************************************	经有限 化甲基酚基 斯士斯 医肾清炎 电电流电子操作员 医甲状腺





1 Listen and choose 1 What is your unc	the correct ans	Mon 6	
What is your uncl	le's job?	wer from a, b, c or d;	
a) A teacher.		اع مَى نَعَايِةَ الكِتَابِ	נספסט וציינים
c) A doctor.		b) An engineer	
What's your aunt	's job?	d) A businesswor	nan.
a) A nurse.			
c) A doctor.		b) An engineer.	
<b>3</b> A: What kind of e	naines doss ver	d) A businesswor	man
a) ships	b) buses	d) A businesswor uncle design? B: Engine	es for
A: Where does v	OUr aunt works a	c) cars : In a/an	d) planes
a) office	b) bank	: In a/an	d) platies
	-/ Sank	c) school	d) hospital
(B	Languaga	e Functions	-/··ospital
	- ingula	e runctions	
2 Complete the folia	owing dialogue:		
and third of the	VOU doing Dask	a?	5
- In going	to buy a book		
pailitia: (1)		you going to buy a bo	2013
Samina (5)	eading is my favo	urite (2)	OCK?
Racha (3)		reading is useful?	***************************************
/ : 63 [11 ]:	N 311 11 6 MAY 1 1 1 1		
A OD IBLIAN	VOU think Lake	1	
Ido Altini	Dion vou chould	was 1 1 .	
: [(5)	N A —— 中心 — 10 图 电电子 X II 医腹膜 國際 电子系统检查器 医医疗检验检查检验检验检验	e sea is a good story. Do It's also very i	nterestina.

# ( Reading Comprehension )



# Read the following, then answer the questions:

Hossam and Ali are brothers, but they are different in everything. Hossam always helps his mother with the housework. When Hossam gets up, he quickly makes his bed. Then, he goes to the kitchen to help his mother prepare

PART (3)

breakfast. Before they eat, Hossam sets the table. When they finish eating, he washes up and dries the dishes. Moreover, he sweeps the floor instead of his mother. On the other hand, Ali gets up and waits until they prepare breakfast. He never makes his bed. He never sets the table. He does nothing at home, so their parents like Hossam more than Ali.

their parents like h		Ali.	2
A) Answer the fo			
-	lossam do after h		
② What does H	lossam help his m	other with?	
•		ossam or Ali? Why?	ocesede puesses se compensare da enerciosa
B) Choose the co		m a, b, c or d:	
•	never prepares	breakfast with his moth	ner.
a) Ali	b) Hossam		loda
Parents like	Alit	han Hossam.	**
a) more	<b>b)</b> better	c) less d) r	most
The underline	ned pronoun "the	ir" refers to	
a) Ali		<b>b)</b> Hossam	
c) father and	d mother	d) Ali and Hossam	
D	Vocabulary	and Structure	
Choose the corre			
Tou should be.		to your friends,	10
a) polite	<b>b</b> ) impolite		
-	2) impolite	<b>c)</b> bad other people's op nic	d) ugly
a) disagree	<b>b</b> ) refuse		
Car doors are r	nade of	c) respect	<b>d)</b> dislike
a) plastic	b) wood		
	• Wood	c) metal .	d) paper
THE ITEM TO THE	************************************	and saw an exhibition	about dolphins.

A ......is a building where tools and machines are used

c) stadium

c) theatre

d) aquarium

d) cinema

**b)** funfair

b) workshop

for making or repairing things.



a) museum

a) school

Jupiter is the large	25t	in the sola	r system,		
a) environment	-	<b>b</b> ) planet	•		
c) material		d) sports centre			
<b>7</b> A	stung my	hand while swimm	ning in the sea.		
a) shark	b) whale	c) turtle	d) iellyfish		
What did you	·····································	for lunch today?			
a) eat	<b>b</b> ) ate	c) eating	d) eaten		
What do you thir	nk is	dangerous ani	imal in the world?		
a) the most	.b) the more	c) most	d) more		
O Don't help us, D	ad! Sama and I can	wash the car by	***************************************		
a) yourselves	b) ourselves	c) himself	d) herself		
6 Read and correct t	he underlined wo	rds:			
1 It is raining outs	ide. We <u>shouldn't</u> u	se an umbrella.	()		
2 There were mea			()		
1 If we don't wate	r plants, they died.		(1112		
4 Mostafa will atte	end the party, will r	not he?	(*************************************		
	E Wri	ting )			
6 Write a paragrap	h of EIGHTY (80) v	vords on:	6		
	"Your favo	urite sport"			
Pointings.com/40) broken and to con-	***********************************	***************************************			
**********************	dbadbadbiipyy 2004 2004 airy 2011 yy 1004	<b>545+575</b> +4444455555555555555555555555555	***************************************		
		= 1 = 3 2 = 99 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00	2 d 5 м d ч + 2 d q 4 м и и и и и и и д д д д 2 м d q 2 х и и ч + 2 d 4 ф + 2 d 4 х ч		
+ + + + + + + + + + + + + + + + + + +					
******************	>>qqqq	\$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$ \$	***************************************		
	DESPERANTA O 10 00 00 00 00 EED 10 10 10 11 1 1 10 10 10 10 10				
		***************************************	14.5.4.14.14.14.14.14.14.14.14.14.14.14.14.1		
35					
			(91)		





1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب



- What is the most dangerous sea animal in the ocean?
  - a) The octopus.
- b) The stingray.
- c) The shark.
- d) The sea turtle.

- 2 How many teeth does a shark use?
  - a) 2 thousand.
- b) 2 hundred.
- c) 200 thousand.
- d) 20 thousand.
- What does a stingray do when it knows a shark is coming?
  - a) It goes underwater.
- b) It jumps in water.
- c) It jumps out of water.
- d) It swims fast.
- 4 How many legs does the octopus have?
  - a) 2 legs.
- b) 4 legs.
- c) 8 legs.
- d) 12 legs.

# **B** Language Functions

Complete the following dialogue:

Gamal: Which job would you like to do in the future?

Nora: I want to be an (1).....

Gamal: An architect! Why do you choose this job?

Gamal: Is your father an architect, too?

Nora: Yes, he is. And (3).....you?

Gamal: I'd like to be (4)

Nora : (5)_____?

Gamal: Because | like programming computers.

Nora: Wow! It's a fantastic job.

# (C) Reading Comprehension

# Read the following, then answer the questions:

6

Hello, my name is Samy. I am thirteen years old. I want to tell you about the new Water Park in my town. We are going to go there on Saturday. There are many scary slides there. But I am brave enough to ride them. There is an interesting pool. It makes its own waves and everybody tries to jump over



them. The park has many snack bars. They sell everything from fast food to ice cream. There is just one problem. The Water Park is very busy at the weekends. You need to wait in very long lines for the slides. They even allow pets, so I can take my puppy with me. We all have so much fun the

A) Answer the follows the property of the prop	wing questions oblem with the V	e. We all have so mi :: Vater Park?	actiful there.
What can you	buy at the Water		adpos poda barat ĝa dri di do i dovas sel val pad spovedavedo.
What is special	about the pool	 	**************************************
B) Choose the corr The underline	a word "there" re	<b>n a, b, c or d:</b> efers to the	P\$ 6 = Fing p 6 = 1 = 1 u d = 1 v 4 = Fin 4 P H 1 = 10 0 0 4 + 0 0 P\$ Two P D two D D T
3 Samy has a si	nall Representation of the control o	-1	d) town
6 Samy will vis	<b>b)</b> lion it the Water Park	c) cat	d) dog
u) satarday	b) Sunday	c) Monday	d) Tuesday
choose the correc	t answer from a	and Structur	
Crusoe wrote a		of what happens	ed to him on the island
a) dairy  2 We	MANAGER	- 1 701 4 - 1 1	
a) talked  My father is the	b) did	c) had	d) went
a) at a) A jellyfish	b) to	c) in	d) for
a) stings	b) hides	c) covers	d) protects d animals in the ocean
a) protect	b) prevent	c) kill	d) eat

6 My friend Salah to help this poor family. He is very						
a) volunteered	b) disagreed c) gave		d) refused			
1t's 2.3 kilometres	under the ground.		A2GQ			
a) high	<b>b</b> ) tall	c) wide	d) long			
O You aren't going	your cousin this week		9			
a) to visit	<b>b</b> ) visit	c) visiting	d) visited			
O I seemetteeteeteeteeteeteeteeteeteeteeteete	bowling this m	orning.				
a) go	<b>b</b> ) gone	c) went	d) going			
100 anglituresquires to a sentilimis of 1995 100 00 1500	. going to have a	holiday this year?				
a) Are they	<b>b</b> ) Do they	c) Have they	d) Will they			
6 Read and correct the		rds:	4			
This bag is heavy, i	This bag is heavy, is it?					
We enjoyed thems	We enjoyed themselves when we went sailing. These are the girls when attended the party last week.					
These are the girls						
You <u>must</u> eat too r	(					
	<b>E</b> Write	ing )				
<b>6</b> Write a paragraph o	f EIGHTY (80) wo	ords on:				
	"Electric	cars"	6			
Pacasitada/1	777714}12774291102241114474747454411	***************************************	ar, brace \$ 450 m p   \$1150 m   1+50			
\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$						
******************************	# 14 = 4 6 1 F 4 4 5 4 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	***************************************	· 图			
***************************************	*****************************	44444	*   4   7   2   2   2   4   4   4   5   6   5   6   6   6   6   6   6   6			
		***************************************	医多角菌素 医皮肤皮肤 化二甲甲基甲甲甲甲甲甲甲甲甲甲甲甲甲甲甲甲甲甲甲甲甲甲甲甲甲甲甲甲甲甲甲甲甲甲			
35	h:}	-4(1000000000000000000000000000000000000	g==0 m (m, d a d g = = 0 d a m ( ) d d a m (			
	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	>	海有 化水性溶解 化甲基甲基甲基甲基化二甲甲基甲基化甲基			





# Listening

# 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

الاستماع في تهاية الكتاب



- What didn't you practise when you were a child?
  - a) Drawing.
- b) Music.
- c) Reading.
- d) Sports.

- Are you good at sports?
  - a) No.
- b) Yes.
- c) Of course.
- d) Sure.

- What are you good at?
  - a) Running.

b) Swimming.

c) Walking.

d) Playing a sport.

- How often do you run?
  - a) Always.
- b) Never.
- c) Not often.
- d) Every day.

# Language Functions

# Complete the following dialogue:

Soha: Welcome to Egypt, your second country.

Tourist: Thanks a lot!

Soha : (1).....you from?

Tourist: I'm from Australia.

Soha : How long will you stay here?

Soha : What places will you visit?

Tourist: I'll visit (3)

: What do (4)..... Egypt?

Tourist: I think it's a (5)...... country.



Read the following, then answer the questions:

The Leaning Tower of Pisa is one of the most wonderful buildings in Europe. It is in the Italian town of Pisa, Pisa is one of the most visited European cities. It is close to other big cities of Italy, such as Florence and Lucca, Tower of Pisa is 60 metres high and it is an important tourist place.





Visitors can climb the tower and enjoy the wonderful view. They started to build the Tower of Pisa in 1173 and stopped in 1185 because Pisa had war with Florence. They finished building it in 1319. It opened to **the public** in 2001. In 2008, after engineers removed many hundred tons of earth below it the tower will remain for the next 200 years.

the tower will re	main for the next	200 years.	2
A) Answer the f	ollowing question	ins:	
• How high i	s the Tower of Pisa	a?	
2 What do pe	eople enjoy when	they climb the To	wer of Pisa?
3 When did t	hey finish building	g the Tower of Pis	a?
B) Choose the c	orrect answer fro	om a, b, c or d:	odo e de e el equi esta esta mán por e de esta de mor esta entre de entre de entre de entre de entre de entre d 
The underli	ned word "the pu	blic" refers to	PG d d time do not o
a) people	<ul><li>b) engineers</li></ul>	c) buildings	d) cities
• The pronou		Turaque de montena des	•
a) Lucca		c) bridge	d) tower
o the Leaning	g Tower of Pisa is i	n	1899- 4
a) Africa	<b>b</b> ) Europe	c) America	d) Asia
	Vocabulary	and Structu	re )
Choose the corre	ct answer from a	, b, c or d:	10/
<b>1</b> A/An	is a person w	ho works with mo	ney and numbers.
a) accountant	b) engineer	c) dentist	d) scientist
2 The party was	yeste	erday. We enjoyed	ourselves a lot.
u) bau	b) boring	c) terrible	d) amazing
We will all have	cars	in the future.	
a) space	b) electronic	c) driverless	d) rocket
The Tanta-Alexa	andria road is 100	kilometres	_,
a) high	b) tall	c) long	d) strong

		(	Final Tests	125
6 My friends are	going to go trekki b) across	ng	the	24
a) a cross		C) CIOSS		
@ Planes, ships a	and cars are	························· Of tran	d) co	ourse
a) frames	D) Tarms	<) firms		
The Egyptian	Museum is crowde	d	d) fo fouriete	orms
a) in	<b>b</b> ) with	c) of		
Mona	reading, doe	sn't she?	d) a	π
a) like	b) liked	c) likes	d) c	doesn't like
Oid your brot	her do this by	?	G/C	ioesii t like
a) yourself	b) yourselves	c) themselve	es d) h	nimself
① A:	sat next to you y	/esterday? <b>B:</b> M	-	•
	<b>b</b> ) Who was			Who does
6 Read and corre	ect the underlined	words:		4
1 They found t	he child <u>whom</u> was	s lost last week.		()
2 My wife is a	great teacher, <u>is no</u> t	she?		(,)
31 would get u	up early if I sleep ea	rly.		(,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
The journey	to Luxor going to s	tart in April.		()
	E	Vriting )		
6 Write a paragr	aph of EIGHTY (80	)) words on:		6
	"Your visit	to the aquariu	m"	
***********************	44088000480000800000000000000000000000	# # # # # # # # # # # # # # # # # # #	医克拉皮 医肾 医多性皮肤炎 医 医电子电影性性安慰 医多皮虫	
***********	******************************		\$ 1 4 D W 4 0 E D E PALE PULL E E E E E E E E E E E E E E E E E E	
***************************************	- }	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	·····································
***********************				古代 不得可与论 化合物 医视性血栓作为 医含色性体节
)101010 <mark>004001101</mark> 0111014410	******************************		\$4   1 m d 0 p d m 6 4 m d 4 m d 7 m d 9 m d 9 m d 7 m d 7 m d 7 m d 7 m d 7 m d 7 m d 7 m d 7 m d 7 m d 7 m	有關股份 (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1)
		***************************************	医骨髓性性病 医有髓中腺体管 医甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基	※ 日本なる中ではなるとなるようななのだか
	#44543999999944+++4754465#A	************	医医尿管管炎 医不管 医皮尔林氏氏征皮肤皮肤炎炎炎病毒	(07)
35	a raz pro derrar e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e	***************************************		3





1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

ومحص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب



- Who woke me up very early?
  - a) My baby brother.

b) My baby cousin.

c) My baby son.

- d) My baby girl.
- 2 What weren't there at breakfast?
  - a) Milk or water.

b) Milk or juice.

c) Milk or bread.

- d) Milk or cheese.
- **3** When did I go to the shop?
  - a) At quarter past six.

b) At half past six.

c) At quarter to six.

- d) At six o'clock.
- What homework did I try to do?
  - a) Science.
- b) History.
- c) Arabic.
- d) Maths.



Complete the following dialogue:

Jake: What will you do if you have a holiday?

John: I will go to (1)...... with my family.

Jake: (2)......go to Canada?

John: Because I love the mountains there.

Jake: Where will you stay there?

John: I will stay in (3).....

Jake: When will (4)_____?

John: I'll travel in the summer.

Jake: I hope you will have a nice holiday.

John: (5).....very much, my friend.





# Reading Comprehension

# Read the following, then answer the questions:



Really, we have a lot of great projects and achievements in Egypt, so we should be proud of our great country. One of the newest and greatest achievements is the Tahya Masr Bridge. It's the world's widest suspension bridge. It's a great project. More than 4,000 people helped to build it. They started building it in 2014. It opened in Cairo in May 2019. It is 67.36 metres wide. It's 540 metres long. It crosses the Nile's Warraq Island. Many people enjoy walking across the glass floor of the bridge. The Tahya Masr Bridge is

the greatest project in	n Egypt.	or the bridge. The T	Tahya Masr Bridge is			
A) Answer the follow	wing question					
• Why should we	be proud of Eg	ypt?				
O How wide is the	e Tahya Masr Br	idge?	93 = 95 3 76 5 1 5 A+W   1 10 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 0			
<b>3</b> What is the nan	ne of the island	mentioned in the	passage?			
Tow long did t	B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:  How long did the bridge take to be built?  a) 4 years. b) 5 years. c) 10 years. d) 15 years.					
6 How many peo	ple worked on	building the bridge	<b>d</b> ) 15 years. e?			
a) 4 b	) 40 thousand.	c) 4 hundred.	d) 4 thousand.			
6 The floor of the a) wood b	e bridge is mad o) stone	e of	d) fiber			
D	ocabulary/	and Structure				
Choose the correct	answer from a	, b, c or d:	10			
1 Nada sat on a	on t	he floor to watch tr	ie film.			
a) teaspoon	b) curtain	c) cushion	d) statue			
Kayaking is a		, It is very interestin	g. d) air			
a) mountain	b) water	c) cave				
(a) cold	ner in the oven in	c) easy	d) wealthy			

W A/An	is a person w	ho designs machines o	or engines.
a) businessman	b) pilot	c) engineer	d) accountant
My mother always	s advises me to	buy things from	5hops
a) nearing	<ul><li>b) nearby</li></ul>	c) near	d) nearly
6 A/An	is a big, flat fi	sh and it lives in the co	ral reef.
a) turtle	b) octopus	c) stingray	d) shall
When I was in Lond	on, I bought a/a	inand sent i	t to my best friend
n) bresentation	b) rock	c) postcard	d) advont
Where	your parent	s going to go tomorro	w evening?
d) 13	<b>b</b> ) are	e) do	d) door
O A: When	you play t	ennis? <b>B:</b> I play it on Fr	idays,
a) ale	<b>b</b> ) did	c) do	d) Were
• We went early bec	ause that is	time.	
a) the quietest		b) quietest	
c) quieter		d) quieter than	
Read and correct the	underlined v	vords:	
<b>1</b> A: Do you have any			4
2 My friend going pl	none her mum	hecause sho's late	()
Mona is most caref	ul than her litt	le cictor	
4 You <u>must to</u> take w			( -4+4000000+120010000000000000000000000000
	west writerry ou	go to the desert.	()
	(F) Wr	iting <b>S</b>	
<b>3</b>			
6 Write a paragraph of	EIGHTY (80) v	words on:	
"Hos	w can we save	the environment?"	•
*******************************	4984494444955549++44496F #1	****	
***************************************			
***************************************	*****************	P9444478414414444444444444444444444444444	
******************	##	,	
***************************************	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	. 410 0 7 1 7 6 7 6 4 4 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7	
774111	**********************	***************************************	
25	******************	 	
4.0			









# A Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Where is the British Museum?





- - b) London
- c) Mexico
- d) San Francisco

- @ When did the British Museum open?
  - a) 1759

a) Paris

- **b)** 2000
- c) 1795
- d) 1820
- The British Museum has more than ...... objects.
  - a) 130,000
- **b)** 13,000,000
- c) 13,000
- **d) 1,300**
- When did the Rosetta Stone arrive at the museum?
  - a) 1759
- d) 1802
- c) 1795
- d) 1820



# Complete the following dialogue:



**Teacher**: Why are you too late, Tamer?

Tamer : I came on foot.

Teacher: Is this the (3)......you come late?

: No, sir. It is my (4)..... time.

Teacher: Second time! Then you can't go into the class.

Tamer: I'm so sorry sir, but we have a test today.

Teacher: OK. You (5)...... leave home earlier next time.

Tamer : Sure, sir. Thank you.



# (C) Reading Comprehension

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Music is the thing that has the power to make everyone pleased. The poorest person can hear it played all around him on radios and loudspeakers. It fills you up with real happiness. All kinds of music are fantastic and it doesn't matter whether you listen to happy, sad, or joyful music because it helps to treat illnesses. No party is complete without it. Whether at a birthday party, or even a marriage. The first thing we hear is music, before our birth; when our mothers listen to music. Then, when we are born, we hear our mothers and fathers sing for us. Music becomes even more important when we become older.

more important	when we become	older.	us. Music becomes eve
	ollowing questio		
What power	er does music have	27	
O How can a			Ý 2 2 2 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1
O Flow can a	poor person enjoy	/ music?	
Mention so	me kinds of music	n doù 1 è 2 è 2 è 2 è 2 è 2 è 2 è 2 è 2 è 2 è	ká spodí kázz modeka prodomi se produm postopokom dos menotyp
pantig1199=rvf10a=a4611079	#\$\$***********************************	~~~	# 8000 à 8   1500 vuu 1964 kää 49000 DEE FOM (
B) Choose the c	orrect answer fro	m a, b, c or d:	
	oleased" means		
a) sad		c) happy	d) difficult
	s us to be		
a) ill	b) worried	c) angry	<b>d</b> ) healthy
	ned word "It" refer		44v B
a) music	b) a loudspeake	r c) a radio	d) a party
	Vocabulary	and Structu	Iro )
		and Structu	
hoose the corre	ct answer from a	, b, c or d:	10
Technology will	######################################	our lives easi	er and more interesting

c) make

c) easy

c) leg

d) leave

d) tooth

d) crowded

b) take

b) flat

b) line

3 We use a fishing ..... to catch fish.

Climbing mountains is _____ for old people.



a) have

a) food

a) dangerous

is an	area of land in whi	ich animat.	-
© A mature reserve	b) rubbish bin	C) Ground	d plants are protected.
a poctors use	to keep t	their hands at	d) soil
Doctors use	[6]	b) rubbish i	ean during surgeries.
c) posters		- Lappisu D	lags
c) posters	ts that you can	d) headpho	nes
6 Small flying object	that you call	control from	the ground are called
- none be died op paper but de contra de contr			
a) drones		c) parcels	d) rackets
My mum has a pla	L. L.	the next	weekend.
a) at	b) to		d) for
O People	speak i	oudly in publi	c libraries.
a) must	b) mustn't		d) will
O Did you take the	photo by		Aarwa?
a) itself	b) himself	c) herself	d) yourself
• A: When	you	play football?	B: I play it every Friday.
a) are	b) did		d) were
Read and correct the The children can'd When I'm hungry I'm not good at E	t look after <u>himsel</u> at work, l <u>eats</u> my nglish, <u>are</u> 1?	f. sandwiches.	()
	E Writ	ting )	
<b>6</b> Write a paragraph	of EIGHTY (80) w	ords on:	6
	"Your last	weekend"	
**************************************	************************	4244614424144444444	\$450-471.0044864100449002100-2040490490490490400
*****************	h = 1 = p = 0 0 0 = 0 0 = 1 0 = 1 0 = 1 0 0 0 0 0	************	4.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1
*************	4 = 4 0 0 00 0 = 4 4 4 0 4 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1		
E-20045056545546551450140444477777		***************************************	
*******************		*************************	1日 中田 中田 中華 日 中華 日 日 中 日 日 日 日 日 日 日 日 日 日 日 日 日
	**************************	********************	・ とうはなる   集後 中央 かなく 中央 本書 日本 中書 本名 日子 中央 マラ 中央 マラ マラマ マッシュ コード・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・
	4 % 6 % 6 8 8 8 8 9 8 8 8 8 9 9 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8	*********************	\$47054478885844475
35	**************************		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
		6 4 6 3 6 1 4 5 6 1 5 6 1 5 6 1 5 6 1 5 6 1 5 6 1 5 6 1 5 6 1 5 6 1 5 6 1 5 6 1 5 6 1 5 6 1 5 6 1 5 6 1 5 6 1	103)

# Al-Azhar Test (1)



# Language Functions

		A Lunguage van	
1	Finish the	following dialogue with these	words:
-		shouldn't - some - hole	
	Lama	: I'd like to grow a tomato plant.	
	Mariam	: (1), find a	sunny place in the garden.
	Lama	: Like this?	
	Mariam	: Yes, that's right. Second, the g have many stones in it.	round (2)
	Lama	:OK. What should I do after that	?
	Mariam	:Then, make a small (3)	in the ground,
	Lama	: How deep must it be?	
	Mariam	: About 2 cm. Next, put (4)hole so it is not too dry.	water in the
	Lama	: Should I water it now?	
	Mariam	: Yes, you should. Finally, put th with soil.	e seed in the hole and cover i
2	Finish the	following two mini-dialogues:	
	1. Menna	:What does an accountant do?	2
	Maya	•	rbirrrunnyn roman ar negoporungsyrseggyangunarssenskinber &
	2. Khaled	4	?
	Sayed	: No, I visited the Egyptian Muse	rum.
3	Match colu	ımn A with column B:	2.3
		Α '.	В
	1 The old	est museum in Caire	

- a) made of wool.

2. More than 160, 000 cars

b) who designs buildings

4. (.....)

5. (.....

3. The curtains are

c) cross the bridge every day.

4. A shark uses more than

d) opened in 1835.

3. (.....)

5. An architect is a person

- e) sick people's teeth
- f) 20,000 teeth in its life! Answer: 1. (.....)

2. (.....)

104

d) museum

# Reading Comprehension

Read the following, then answer the questions:

The British Museum in London is the oldest public museum in the world. It opened in 1759 and now has more than 13 million objects. About six million visitors go there every year. The museum has the largest collection of Egyptian objects outside Egypt. One of its biggest objects is the Rosetta Stone. This arrived at the museum in 1802. The writing on the stone is in three different languages. This allowed people to understand ancient Egyptian hieroglyphics for the first t me.

In my opinion, the most important part of the museum is the Great Court. Its big glass room makes it the most beautiful covered square in Europe.

t openea in 2000, s	o it is also the mo	ost modern part o	of the museum.
A) Answer the fo			laulygypysseddiadas Boborsbypjsespossyppsseddiadaulygypys
			every year?
B) Choose the co	rrect answer fro	m a, b, c or d:	
The Rosetta	Stone arrived at t	the museum in	
<b>a)</b> 1759	<b>b)</b> 2000	<b>c)</b> 1802	<b>d</b> } 1820
The British N	Auseum has more	e than	objects.
a) 130, 000	<b>b)</b> 13, 000,000	c) 13, 000	<b>d)</b> 1, 300
<b>6</b> "Hieroglyph	nics" is a	Madrichan &	
	b) subject		d) colour
	Vocabulary	and Structu	re )
Choose the corre	ect answer from	a, b, c or d:	5
<b>1</b> How	is the Cairo-Ale	exandria desert ro	ad?
a) high	b) long	c) tall	d) many
This is the	popular b	ook in the library	
a) least	b) less	c) more	d) little

a) valley

We learnt a lot about the Earth and the moon at the

b) planetarium

c) aquarium

Basmala	lunch in the ca	afé last Sunday.	
a) had	b) has	c) is having	d) have
6 His ship sar	nkthere was	s a terrible storm.	
	b) but	c) so	d) although
6 A/An annulum	has eight legs.		<b>J</b>
a) snake	_	c) coral reef	d) turtle
	cross a road, you	look left and ri	ght.
a) must		c) aren't	d) mustn't
	is a person	studies science.	
a) where	<b>b)</b> which		<b>d)</b> what
Your grand	lmother doesn't like fish,		
a) does	b) doesn't	c) don't	<b>d)</b> do
<b>1</b> A	is something you sle		camping.
a) camel	<b>b)</b> guide		d) journey
6 Read and co	errect the underlined w	ords:	2.5
You must v	walk on the grass.		()
	Dina's birthday?		(10000000000000000000000000000000000000
	ally enjoying yourselves.		(
	e on the moon?		()
That mour	ntain was <u>more high</u> than	n we thought.	()
		ting )	
Write a para	agraph of about (7) sen	tences about:	
		us place"	2
		- Piace	
******************			
•1111111454165114144146,	***************************************		
******	***************************************	***************************************	**************************************
#4#####################################	***************************************	***************************************	
	31)4144>14143;4033)7440044=4875440478444044		# \$ \$ \$   # # # # # # # # # # # # # # #
20	***************************************	f	医甲基甲酚 化工具 化双反射 化原生物 医多种性 医多种性 化二甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基
	+9+9++44(114111)  59)  594-2171141  100  44(17)  4	419410011111111111111100000000000000000	■ ■



# Al-Azhar Test (2)





1	Finish	the following	dialogue	with	these	words:



sure - did - Have - do

Mona : Do you like classical music, Dina?

Mona: When (2)......you last go to a concert?

pina : I last went to a concert last year. It was fantastic.

Mona: (3).....you got a ticket for the concert on Saturday?

Dina : Yes, I have!

Mona : Can I come with you?

Pina : Yes, you can. Are you happy about that?

Dina : Ok. That's great!

# 2) Finish the following two mini-dialogues:



2. Mona : .....?

**Sally**: My shoes are made of leather.

# Match column A with column B:



A	В
1. Mohamed Salah is a footballer	a) not with other people.
2. Díd you go	b) go kayaking?
3. The Tahya Masr Bridge	c) I don't know. I'm not very tall.
4. Why don't we	d) goes over the Nile in Cairo.
5. "Alone" means	e) shopping at the weekend?
	f) who scores a lot of goals.

Answer: 1. (.....)

2. (.....)

3. (.....)

4. (.....)

5. (.....)



# B Reading Comprehension )

Desidat	C 10 C			4 ha	questions:
Read the	tollowing,	then	answer	tne	dueznous.

I had a fantastic weekendl It was my friend Dalia's birthday and her family took us to some exciting places. In the morning, we went to the funfair. I did not go on the big wheel but I enjoyed my time there. In the afternoon, we visited a museum. We saw some very old statues. I remembered all the things that our teacher taught us in history! In the evening, I ate at Dalia's house and I came home very late!

The state of the s	agilt as in thisto	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	and dill
came home very la	ate!		
A) Answer the fo	ollowing quest	ions:	
• What does	the underlined	pronoun "her" refer t	:0?
2 Why do you	think the write	er didn't go on the bi	g wheel?
B) Choose the co	orrect answer	from a, b, c or d:	
She remem	bered all the thi	ngs that her teacher	taught in
a) maths	b) science	c) history	d) art
The writer of	didn't come hor	ne	
a) early	<b>b</b> ) late	c) slow	d) happy
S They saw o	ld	at the museum.	
a) wheels	b) trees	c) statues	d) people
	Vocabula	ry and Structu	re )
Choose the com	ect answer fro	m a, b, c or d:	5
1 You	play games i	n the road.	3
a) must	b) have	c) mustn't	d) should
My grandmoth	ner is 65. We all	what sh	e says.

# You ______ play games in the road. a) must b) have c) mustn't d) should My grandmother is 65. We all ______ what she says. a) respect b) weak c) worried d) read It was great at the ______ My team won 2-0! a) valley b) planetarium c) aquarium d) stadium When you put a stone in water, it ______ a) reads b) sinks c) floats d) cleans



O The teacher was a	ngry because all the	e students were ver	У
a) quite	b) noisy	c) interesting	d) quiet
O We all looked at			,
	b) themselves		d) himself
O There weren't mar	ny people at the ma	itch,th	iere†
a) weren't	b) were	c) wasn't	d) was
O There	trains in 1900, but	there weren't any 1	Vs.
a) was	b) were	c) wasn't	d) are
O The balls are very	heavy at the	Attinguistra &	
a) bowling alley	b) planetarium	c) aquarium	d) stadium
@ When I	tired, I usually go	to bed.	ST Madium
a) felt	b) feels	c) feel	d) feeling
Read and correct t	he underlined wo	rds:	
O Sara wants to be	a marine biologist,	sn't she?	(
What's your coat :			(
Off water is 100 °C.	it boiling.		( COMMANDE PROPERTY ( COMMAND)
O Hike this book all	hough it is funny.		( Annual Management of the Company
O The whale is the b			( Andrews Control of the Control of
Write an email of a	D Write		2
	"A fantastic da	y you had"	
Your name is	Amir(a) and your	friend's name is K	areem(a).
***************************************			
***************************************			******************************
***************************************			
11/01/11/11		entry tree (Attorner Carries and	The state of the s
20		······································	er-telementation incommendation
		THE PARTY OF THE P	etitican promonente manne



# Part 4



# ) Listening Texts

- نصوص استماع الاختبارات التراكمية. Cumulative Exams Listening Texts.
- 2) General Exams Listening Texts. تصوص استماع الاختبارات العامة على المنمج



# Listening Texts



#### **Cumulative Tests**

### Cumulative Test

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: The Tahya Masr Bridge is the world's widest suspension bridge. They started building it in 2014. More than 4,000 people helped to build it. They finished it in 32 months. It opened in Calro in May 2019. It is 67.36 m wide and 540 m long.

#### Cumulative Test 2

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: It is important to negotiate with other people when you decide something important. Remember, negotiation is not about winning an argument. Listen carefully to what other people say. You should try to get the best ideas from and for each other.

#### Cumulative Test 3

#### Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Ali goes to school on foot because it is very near. His favouritve subject is English. During the break, he talks to his friends in the playground. After doing his homework, he watches TV.

#### **Final Tests**

### Test 1

#### Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

The Grand Egyptian Museum welcomed its first visitors in 2019. It is only two kilometres from the Pyramids at Giza. One of the most beautiful parts of the museum is the entrance, with its big plants and statues. The biggest statue is the 12-metre statue of Ramses II.

#### Test 2

## Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

At the weekend, I went to Sami's house on Saturday and we played football in the park. I don't usually like football but all his brothers wanted to play. On Sunday, mum helped me with my homework. Then dad and I went to the sports centre, There is a really big swimming pool.

#### Test 3

# Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

In Egypt, some people make pottery in workshops or their own homes. It is traditional to make jewellery in Kenya. You can see the colourful jewellery in markets all over the country. Some local businesses also use social media and the internet to sell jewellery to people in different countries.

#### Test 4

#### Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, cor d:

In 2080, you won't go to the beach for your holiday. You will go to the moon! There will be rockets that leave Earth every day, and the journey will take only 12 hours. They will be very fast!

#### Test 5

#### Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

A sea turtle has a hard shell to protect it. Other animals can swim very fast. The octopus has got eight legs to help it! Some sea life, like the stingray, is poisonous. It stings you when you touch it.

#### Test 6

#### Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

In ancient Egypt, there was a village called Deir el-Medina. There were 68 houses. The walls of the houses were made of bricks and the doors were made of wood. The people painted their houses white, with red doors.

#### Test 7

#### Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, cor d:

Everyone should help save our planet. The air around us is full of pollution. You can plant a tree. Trees help to keep our air healthy. You can plant a nut or the seed of a fruit.

#### Test 8

# Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

In ancient Egypt, the people from the village worked in the Valley of the Kings. The walls of the houses were made of bricks and the doors

were made of wood. The people painted their houses white, with red doors. The houses had a kitchen and a living room, but there were not any bedrooms. People usually slept on the roof because it was very hot at night.



Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

The shark is one of the most dangerous sea animals in the ocean. If it loses a tooth, a new one grows. A shark uses more than 20,000 teeth in its life!



Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

These are three of the most interesting places in Luxor. The Valley of the Kings is the most popular place for tourists to visit. The biggest place is the Karnak Temple which is more crowded than the Valley of the Kings. The quietest place is Habu Temple because it is less crowded.



Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

The Tahya Masr Bridge is the world's widest bridge opened in Cairo in May 2019. More than 4,000 people helped to build it. They finished it in 32 months. Many people enjoy walking across the bridge. It has a glass floor. The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset, for a beautiful view of the city.



Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

In the next 30 years, there will be a lot of changes in our lives. Technology will make our lives easier and more interesting. Our phones will be even more important and we will have apps for everything.



Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My uncle is an engineer. He designs engines for planes. I'd like to be an engineer one day! My aunt is a businesswoman. She works in an office and goes to meetings.



Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

The shark is the most dangerous sea animal in the ocean. A shark uses more than 20,000 teeth in its life. A stingray is a big, flat fish and it lives in the ocean. If it knows a shark is coming, it jumps out of the water! A sea turtle has a hard shell to protect it. Other animals can swim very fast — the octopus has got eight legs to help it!



Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

A sport is something that I never really practised when I was a child, so I'm not really good at sports. But when people look at me, they always say, that I can run very well, but I don't do it often or played so many sports.



Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, cord:

Today was a terrible day! My baby brother woke me up at 5 am! I am so tired now. I went downstairs for breakfast, but we had no milk or bread. The shop was closed because it was only 6.30. I tried to do my maths homework but my laptop stopped working and I lost all my work.



Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, cord:

The British Museum in London is the oldest public museum in the world. It opened in 1759 and now has more than 13 million objects. One of the biggest objects is the Rosetta Stone. This arrived at the museum in 1802.

رقم الإيداع: ٢٠٢٠ / ٢٠٢٠ ترخيص وزارة التربية والتعليم رقم ١٠٩

